K. 181
625.c.28
6

Mr RUDDIMAN'S

RUDIMENTS

OF THE

LATIN TONGUE:

To which is annexed,

Short View of PROSODY, and of TROPES and FIGURES.

Which, with several ADDITIONS made throughout, will, it is hoped, make this small book answer all the purposes of a Grammar.

By Mr MOIR, Teacher of Languages, in Edinburgh.

Entered in Stationers Hall.

EDINBURGH:
Printed by MURRAY and COCHRAN.
For the AUTHOR,
and by him, and by the Booksellers in Town and Country.
MDCCLXXIX.

PREFACE.

MEN of letters and diſcernment have long complained of the practice, which, till of late, univerſally obtained in our ſchools, of teaching Etymology by the abſtruſe and intricate rules given in our Latin Grammars.

They apprehend, that few boys are ever prevailed upon to get theſe rules perfectly by heart; — that yet fewer underſtand the meaning of them; — that the rules are never regarded after the boys leave ſchool; — and that all the Etymology they then retain, is no more than what has been riveted in their minds by conſtant practice at ſchool.

Theſe gentlemen lament, that the trouble and perplexity occaſioned by ſuch rules, have often given youth, at their firſt ſetting out upon the ſtudy of Latin, an utter averſion to this valuable and noble language, which is not only the parent of our modern tongues, but the key to all polite literature, and the liberal ſciences.

They know, that for Syntax, which is the moſt important part of Grammar, the plain and eaſy rules, which Mr RUDDIMAN has left us in his *Rudiments*, are the only rules put into the hands of boys.

This eaſy method of acquiring Syntax has naturally led many judicious perſons to think, that nothing could have induced men of ſenſe to adopt the above-mentioned practice, which is now ſo much complained of, but a conviction, that Mr Rudiments were defective with regard to Etymology.

To obviate this complaint, and at the ſame time not deprive our ſchools of the advantage which they reap from Mr Ruddiman's Rudiments, I have retained in this publication the whole of that moſt excellent performance, and thrown in at proper places every other thing neceſſary for all the purpoſes of Grammar.

As to the Etymology, I have contented myſelf with the liſt of irregular Nouns given by Mr Ruddiman, leaving the reſt to be turned up by the boys, as they occur, in my *Scholar's Vade Mecum, or Latin Dictionary for ſchools*.

I have been pretty full in the Compariſon of *Adjectives*; but the ſcholar will find, in the Dictionary juſt now mentioned, a great number which are not here inſerted.

The Verbs are exhibited as Mr Ruddiman has given them in his Grammar; though I am perſuaded, that they can be

got ſooner in my Dictionary; in which all the verbs are phabetically arranged, the conjugations marked, and the p terites and ſupines, the primitives, and the ſignifications, ſerted.

To thoſe given by Mr Ruddiman, in the Syntax, I h added many uſeful Notes and Obſervations, which to ſeemed neceſſary in this the principal part of Grammar. is not however meant, that the ſcholar ſhould commit th all to his memory; it will be ſufficient with reſpect to m of them, that they be frequently read over with attenti and that the Teacher point out the note to his Pupils w an example of it ſhall occur in their leſſon.

The notes are all made to follow immediately after rules to which they reſpectively belong; becauſe by throw them to the foot of the page, as they formerly were, it is prehended they were very little, if at all, attended to.

I have added ſo much upon Proſody, as I hope will found ſufficient.

That nothing requiſite for making a Claſſic ſcholar m be omitted, I have attempted to form the taſte of youth the beauties and graces of the Ancients. With this vie have ſubjoined the chief Tropes and Figures of Rhet and ſhown, by a variety of examples, what uſe the Ro Writers made of them in imbelliſhing their works.—For I own myſelf indebted to Mr BLACKWALL's *Introductio the Claſſics*.

Upon the whole, I hope this ſhort treatiſe will leſſen ſcholar's trouble in the acquiſition of the *Latin Tongue*; I have paved for him a much eaſier way to it than that w our youth were formerly obliged to travel; and that he go on agreeably, till at length he arrive at the end o courſe, and be entertained by the Claſſic Authors; when great pleaſure and real advantage he will reap in conve with them, will amply recompenſe any labour and pai ſhall have undergone.

ERRATUM.

p. 19. 3d line before Special Rules, after Liv. read *al utrius, alteri utri.*

THE RUDIMENTS OF THE LATIN TONGUE.

PARS PRIMA.

De LITERIS et SYLLABIS.

Magiſter.

QUOT ſunt literæ apud Latinos?

Diſcipulus.

Quinque et viginti; *a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, i, j, k, l, m, n, o, p, q, r, s, t, u, v, x, y, z.*

M. Quomodo dividuntur?

D. In vocales et conſonantes.

M. Quot ſunt vocales?

D. Sex; *a, e, i, o, u, y.*

M. Quot ſunt conſonantes?

D. Novemdecim; *b, c, d, f, g, h, j, k, l, m, n, p, q, r, s, t, v, x, z.*

M. Quot ſunt diphthongi?

PART FIRST.

Of LETTERS and SYLLABLES.

Maſter.

HOW many letters are there among the Latins?

Scholar.

Five and twenty; a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, i, j, k, l, m, n, o, p, q, r, s, t, u, v, x, y, z.

M. How are they divided?

S. Into vowels and conſonants.

M. How many vowels are there?

S. Six; a, e, i, o, u, y.

M. How many conſonants are there?

S. Nineteen; b, c, d, f, g, h, j, k, l, m, n, p, q, r, s, t, v, x, z.

M. How many diphthongs are there?

D. Quinque ; *ae*, [vel *æ*], *oe*, [vel *œ*], *au*, *eu*, *ei* ; ut, *aetas* vel *ætas*, *poena* vel *pœna*, *audio*, *euge*, *hei*.	*S. Five ;* ae [*or* æ], oe œ], au, eu, ei ; *as* aetas *or* tas, poena *or* pœna, au euge, hei.

NOTES.

GRAMMAR is the art of ſpeaking any language rightly; as Heb Greek, Latin, Engliſh, &c.

Latin Grammar is the art of ſpeaking rightly the Latin tongue.

The RUDIMENTS of that grammar are plain and eaſy inſtructi teaching beginners the firſt principles, or the moſt common and nece rules, of Latin.

The *Rudiments* may be reduced to theſe four heads : treating, 1. of ters ; 2 of Syllables ; 3 of Words ; 4 of Sentences.

Theſe are naturally made up one of another ; for one or more le make a ſyllable, one or more ſyllables make a word, and two or words make a ſentence.

A *letter* is a mark or character repreſenting an uncompounded ſoun *k*, *y*, *z*, are only to be found in words originally Greek ; and *h* by is not accounted a letter, but an aſpiration, or breathing.

We reckon the *j*, called *Jod*, [or *Je*], and the *v*, called *Vau*, two le diſtinct from *i* and *u* ; becauſe not only their figures, but their p and ſounds, are quite different ; *j* ſounding like *g* before *e*, and *v* like *f*.

A *vowel* is a letter that makes a full and perfect ſound by itſelf.

A *conſonant* is a letter that cannot ſound without a vowel.

A *ſyllable* is any one complete ſound.

There can be no ſyllable without a vowel : and any of the ſix v alone, or any vowel with one or more conſonants before or after it, a ſyllable.

There are for the moſt part as many ſyllables in a word as the vowels in it : only there are two kinds of ſyllables in which it is wiſe, viz. 1. when *u* with any other vowel comes after *g*, *q*, or *s*, *lingua*, *qui*, *ſuadeo ;* where the ſound of the *u* vaniſhes, or is little h 2. When two vowels join to make a diphthong, or double vowel.

A *diphthong* is a ſound compounded of the ſounds of two vowels, both of them are heard.

Of diphthongs three are proper, viz. *au*, *eu*, *ei*, in which both v are heard ; and two improper, viz. *æ*, *œ*, in which the *a* and *o* a heard, but they are pronounced as *e* ſimple.

Some, not without reaſon, to theſe five diphthongs, add other as, *ai* in *Maia*, *oi* in *Troia*, *yi* or *ui* in *Harpyia* or *Harpuia*.

PARS SECUNDA.

De DICTIONIBUS.

Quot ſunt partes orationis ?

D. Octo ; nomen, pronomen, verbum, participium ; adverbium, præpoſitio, interjectio, conjunctio.

M. Quomodo dividuntur ?

D. In declinabiles et indeclinabiles.

M. Quot ſunt declinabiles ?

D. Quatuor ; nomen, pronomen, verbum, participium.

M. Quot ſunt indeclinabiles ?

D. Item quatuor ; adverbium, præpoſitio, interjectio, conjunctio.

PART SECOND.

Of WORDS.

M. HOW many parts of ſpeech are there ?

S. Eight ; noun, pronoun, verb, participle ; adverb, preposition, interjection, conjunction.

M. How are they divided ?

S. Into declinable and indeclinable.

M. How many are declinable ?

S. Four ; noun, pronoun, verb, participle.

M. How many are indeclinable ?

S. Likewiſe four ; adverb, preposition, interjection, conjunction.

A word [*vox* or *dictio*] is one or more ſyllables joined together, which men have agreed upon to ſignify ſomething.

Words are commonly reduced to eight claſſes, called *Parts of Speech* : ſome compriſe them all under three claſſes, viz. noun, verb, and adverb. Under *noun* they comprehend alſo pronoun and participle ; and under *adverb* alſo preposition, interjection, and conjunction. Others to theſe add a fourth claſs, viz. *adnoun*, comprehending adjectives under it, and reſtricting *noun* to ſubſtantives only. Theſe by ſome are otherwiſe called *names*, *qualities*, *affirmations*, and *particles*.

The declinable parts of ſpeech are ſo called, becauſe there is ſome change made upon them, eſpecially in their laſt ſyllables ; and this is what we call *declenſion*, or *declining* of words. But the indeclinable parts remain unchangeably the ſame.

The laſt ſyllable, on which theſe changes do fall, is called the *ending*, or *termination*, of words.

Theſe changes are made by what grammarians call *accidentia*, *i. e. the accidents* of words.

Theſe accidents are commonly reckoned ſix, viz. gender, caſe, number, mood, tenſe, and perſon. Of theſe, gender and caſe are peculiar to three of the declinable parts of ſpeech, viz. noun, pronoun, and participle ; and mood, tenſe, and perſon, are peculiar to one of them, viz. verb ; and *number* is common to them all.

Note 1. That perſon may alſo be ſaid to belong to noun or pronoun : but then it is not properly an accident, becauſe no change is made by the word.

NOTE 2. That figure, ſpecies, and compariſon, which ſome call *accidents*, do not properly come under that name, becauſe the words have a different ſignification from what they had before.—See chap. ix.

NOTE 3. That the changes that happen to a noun, pronoun, and participle, are, in a ſtricter ſenſe, called *declenſion* or *declination* of them, and the changes that happen to a verb are called *conjugation*.

CAP. I.

De NOMINE.

M. QUomodo declinatur nomen?

D Per genera, caſus, et numeros.

M. Quot ſunt genera?

D. Tria; maſculinum, fœmininum, et neutrum.

M. Quot ſunt caſus?

D. Sex; nominativus, genitivus, dativus, accuſativus, vocativus, et ablativus.

M. Quot ſunt numeri?

D. Duo; ſingularis, et pluralis.

M. Quot ſunt declinationes?

D. Quinque; prima, ſecunda, tertia, quarta, et quinta.

Regulæ Generales.

1. Nomina neutri generis habent nominativum, accuſativum, et vocativum, ſimiles in utroque numero: et hi caſus in plurali ſemper deſinunt in *a*.

2. Vocativus in ſingulari plerumque, in plurali ſemper, eſt ſimilis nominativo.

CHAP. I.

Of NOUN.

M. HOW is a noun declined?

S. By genders, caſes, and numbers.

M. How many genders are there?

S. Three; maſculine, feminine, and neuter.

M. How many caſes are there?

S. Six; nominative, genitive, dative, accuſative, vocative, and ablative.

M. How many numbers are there?

S. Two; ſingular, and plural.

M. How many declenſions are there?

S. Five; firſt, ſecond, third, fourth, and fifth.

General Rules.

1. *Nouns of the neuter gender have the nominative, accuſative, and vocative, alike in both numbers: and theſe caſes in the plural end always in*

2. *The vocative for the moſt part in the ſingular, [and] always in the plural, is like the nominative.*

3. Dativus et ablativus pluralis ſunt ſimiles.
4. Nomina propria plerumque carent plurali.

3. *The dative and ablative plural are alike.*
4. *Proper names for the moſt part want the plural.*

A Noun is that part of ſpeech which ſignifies the name or quality of a thing; as, *homo*, a man; *bonus*, good.

A noun is either ſubſtantive or adjective.

A *ſubſtantive noun* is that which ſignifies the name of a thing; as, *arbor*, a tree; *virtus*, virtue; *bonitas*, goodneſs.

An *adjective noun* is that which ſignifies an accident, quality, or property of a thing; as, *albus*, white; *felix*, happy; *gravis*, heavy.

A ſubſtantive may be diſtinguiſhed from an adjective theſe two ways: 1. A ſubſtantive can ſtand in a ſentence without an adjective, but an adjective cannot without a ſubſtantive; as, I can ſay, *A ſtone falls*, but I cannot ſay, *Heavy falls*. 2. If the word *thing* be joined with an adjective, it will make ſenſe; but if it be joined with a ſubſtantive, it will make nonſenſe: Thus we ſay, *A good thing*, *A white thing*; but we do not ſay, *A man thing*, *A beaſt thing*.

A ſubſtantive noun is divided into proper and appellative.

A *proper ſubſtantive* is that which agrees to one particular thing of a kind; as, *Virgilius*, a man's name; *Penelope*, a woman's name; *Scotia*, Scotland; *Edinburgum*, Edinburgh; *Taus*, the Tay.

An *appellative ſubſtantive* is that which is common to a whole kind of things; as, *vir*, a man; *fœmina*, a woman; *regnum*, a kingdom; *urbs*, a city; *fluvius*, a river.

Note, That when a proper name is applied to many, it becomes an appellative, as, *duodecim Cæſares*, the twelve Cæſars.

Gender in a natural ſenſe is the diſtinction of ſex, or the difference between male and female; but in a grammatical ſenſe, we commonly underſtand by it, the fitneſs that a ſubſtantive noun hath to be joined to an adjective of ſuch a termination, and not of another.—Therefore,

Of names of animals, the *hees* are of the maſculine, and the *ſhees* of the feminine gender: but of things without life, and where the diverſity of ſex is not conſidered, even of things that have life, ſome are of the maſculine, others of the feminine, and others of the neuter gender, according to the uſe of the beſt authors of the Latin tongue.

Beſides theſe three principal genders, there are reckoned alſo other three leſs principal; which are nothing elſe but compounds of the three former, viz. the gender common to two, the gender common to three, and the doubtful gender.

1. The *common gender*, or gender common to two, [*genus commune*, or *commune duúm*], is maſculine and feminine; and belongs to ſuch nouns as agree to both ſexes; as, *parens*, a father or mother; *bos*, an ox or cow.

2. The *gender common to three* [*genus commune trium*] is maſculine, feminine, and neuter; and belongs only to adjectives: Whereof ſome have three terminations, the firſt maſculine, the ſecond feminine, and the third neuter; as, *bonus*, *bona*, *bonum*, good: ſome have two, the firſt maſculine and feminine, and the ſecond neuter; as, *mollis*, *molle*, ſoft:

and ſome have but one termination, which agrees indifferently to a
the three genders; as, *prudens*, wiſe.

3. The *doubtful gender* [*genus dubium*] belongs to ſuch nouns as are fo
in good authors, ſometimes in one gender, and ſometimes in anot
as, *dies*, a day, maſc. or fem.; *vulgus*, the rabble, maſc. or neut.

To diſtinguiſh theſe genders we make uſe of theſe three words,
hæc, *hoc*, which are commonly, though improperly, called *articles*.
is the ſign of the maſc. *hæc* of the fem. *hoc* of the neuter gender; *hic*
of the common to two; *hic*, *hæc*, *hoc*, of the common to three; *hi*
hæc, *hic aut hoc*, &c. of the doubtful.

By CASES we underſtand the different terminations that nouns re
in declining: ſo called from *cado*, to fall, becauſe they naturally fa
flow from the nominative; which is therefore called *caſus rectus*,
ſtraight caſe; as the other five are named *obliqui*, crooked.

As to NUMBER, the ſingular denotes one ſingle thing; as, *ho*
man: the plural denotes more things than one; as, *homines*, men.

General Rules for the Genders of Nouns.

1. Names of males are maſculine.—This rule comprehends, 1.
per names: as, *Anchiſes*, a man's name; *Bucephalus*, the name of a h
Hylax, the name of a dog. 2. Appellatives: *vir*; *pater*; *equus*, a
3. Gentile names: *Perſa*, a Perſian; *Tros*, a Trojan. 4. Many n
which, although they include both ſexes, yet admit an adjective o
the maſc.; as, *homo*, a man or woman; *fur*, a thief. 5. Names of
and gods: *Michael*, the archangel; *Satanas*, Satan, or the devil;
the god of War.

2. Names of females are feminine.—This rule contains, 1. *M*
Mary; *Thoe*, the name of a mare; *Lyciſca*, a ſhepherd's dog. 2. *M*
a mother; *ſoror*, a ſiſter; *equa*. 3. *Troas*, a Trojan woman; *Sic*
woman of Sicily. 4. Goddeſſes: *Venus*; *Ceres*, the goddeſs of corn.

3. Nouns which apply ſo to men and women, that, when put for
they are maſc. and for women, fem. are of the common gender, i.
et hæc.—They are all contained in theſe ſix lines.

Conjux, atque *parens*, *infans*, *patruelis*, et *hæres*,
Affinis, *vindex*, *judex*, *dux*, *miles*, et *boſtis*,
Augur, et *antiſtes*, *juvenis*, *conviva*, *ſacerdos*,
Muniqueceps, *vates*, *adoleſcens*, *civis*, et *auctor*,
Cuſtos, *nemo*, *comes*, *teſtis*, *ſus*, *boſque*, *caniſque*,
Interpreſque, *cliens*, *princeps*, *præs*, *martyr*, et *obſes*.

Note. *Antiſtita*, *clienta*, *boſpita*, are ſaid, as well as *hæc antiſtes*,
boſpes.

4. Names of brute animals, which under one word, and one g
comprehend both ſexes, follow generally the rules of their termina
—as, *hæc balæna*, a whale; *hic elephantus*, an elephant; *paſſer*, a ſp
ſalmo, a ſalmon; *hæc vulpes*, a fox.

Note. Such names are commonly called *epicœne*, or *promiſcuous*.
ever, to diſtinguiſh the ſex with the more certainty, *mas* or *femina*
the moſt part added; as, Liv. bos *femina*; Ov. piſcis *femina*.

5. Names of months and winds are maſc.;—as, *hic Aprilis*, Ap
Aquilo, the north wind.

Note. The names of all months, and of moſt winds, are rather
tives than ſubſtantives.

Names of rivers and mountains are maſc.; — as, *hic Tiberis*, the Ti-
hic Othrys, a hill in Theſſaly.

Many of both, eſpecially when they end in *a*, *e*, and *um*, follow
gender of their terminations; as, *hæc Lethe*, a river in hell; *Matrona*,
iver Marne; *Styx*, a river in hell; *hoc Plemmyrium*, a river; *hæc Æt-*
Mandpe; *hoc Soracte*, *Pelion*, mountains.

As, its parts and compounds, of whatever termination, are maſc.; —
as, a pound, or what may be divided into twelve parts; *bes*, eight
mis; *ſemis*, and *ſemiſſis*, ſix ounces; *triens*, four ounces; *quincunx*, five
ces; *decuſſis*, ten aſſes; *centuſſis*, an hundred aſſes, &c.

Uncia, an ounce, is always feminine.

Names of countries and towns are fem.; — as, *hæc Britannia*, Bri-
Perſis, Perſia; *Carthago*, Carthage; *Roma*, Rome: alſo, *Egyptus*,
pt; *Corinthus*, Corinth; *Samos*, an iſland; *Pylos*, *Eleuſin*, *Lacedemon*,
ia, cities.

1. *Hic Agragas*, *Sulmo*; *hoc Æpy*, *Albion*, *Cære*, *Hiſpal*, *Ilion*, *Illitur-*
Laulinum, *Præneſte*, *Reate*, *Tibur*, *Zeugma*: alſo theſe plurals; *hi Pa-*
Veii; *he Athenæ*, *Gades*; *hæc Hieroſolyma*, *Suſa*. 2. *Argos*, *Gadir*,
are neut.; but *Argi*, *-orum* is maſc. 3. *Abydos*, *Marathon*, *Pharſalus*,
moſt frequently fem. yet ſometimes maſc. 4. Names of cities in *us*
the third declenſion, are commonly maſc.; as, *Hydrus*, *Peſſinus*, *Seli-*
s, *Pontus*, *Safon*, *Tecmon*, *Tanes*, are maſc. 6. *Canopus* is maſc.
alone has it fem. 7. *Auxur* is neut.; but ſometimes maſc.

Many of theſe are fem. becauſe *urbs* is underſtood; as, *Pulcher-*
Nerbo, *Præneſte ſub ipſa*.

Names of trees are feminine; as, *hæc pomus*, an apple-tree.

Hic *oleaſter*, a wild olive tree; *rhamnus*, the white bramble, or
thorn; *ſentes*, *-ium*, a brier, a thorn. *Cytiſus*, a kind of ſhrub; and
the bramble-buſh, are oftener maſc.; yet ſometimes fem. *Larix*,
larch-tree; *lotus*, the lot-tree; *cupreſſus*, the cypreſs-tree, are oftener
and but rarely maſc. Thoſe that end in *um* are neut.; as, *buxum*,
box-tree; *liguſtrum*, privet: as are alſo *hoc acer*, the mapple-tree; *ro-*
bur of the hardeſt kind; *ſiler*, the oſier; *ſuber*, the cork-tree.

Names of ſhips and poems are generally feminine; — as, *Argo*, the
Argo; *Centaurus*, the ſhip Centaur; *Æneis*, the Æneid; *Eunuchus*,
Comedy; *Ilias*, the Iliad.

1. Proper names retain their own gender; as, *Python undivagus*,
captivus. Alſo, *Ajax*, *Hippolitus*, *Oreſtes*, tragedies, are maſc.

2. Plural names of poems take their genders from their termina-
ſ; as, *hi Adelphi*; *hæc Argonautica*, *Bucolica*, *Georgica*.

Every indeclinable noun is neuter; — as, *hoc git*, a kind of cockle;
as, gum; *fas*, that which is lawful; *nefas*, what is unlawful.

Letters are neuter; alſo verbs, other parts of ſpeech, and words
without any ſignification, are neuter; — as, *a parvum*; *i longum*; *ſcire*
tua, i. e. ſcientia tua, *eſt nihil*; *cras iſtud*; *lux* (*viz.* the word *lux*) *eſt mo-*
ſculum. Letters, however, are often feminine, and then *litera* is un-
derſtood.

The general word very often gives its gender to other words compre-
hended under it. So Virg. has *ſola bubo*, *ſc. avis*, and Lucan *tepidum Iader*,
amnem; whence alſo, months, winds, rivers, and mountains, are
maſculine, and trees feminine; becauſe *menſis*, *ventus*, *fluvius*, *mons*, are
maſculine, and *arbor* feminine.

An adjective put for itſelf, and the ſubſtantive underſtood, takes

the gender of its ſubſtantive; — as, *hic molaris*, a mill-ſtone, *ſc. lap*
hæc patria, one's native country, *ſc. terra*; *hoc triſte*, a ſad thing, *ſc.*
gotium.

¶ Before the learner proceed to the declenſion of La
nouns, it may not perhaps be improper to give him a gene
view of

The Declenſion of Engliſh Nouns.

I. The Engliſh language hath the two genders of nature, viz. maſ
line and feminine; for animals in it are called *he* or *ſhe*, according to
difference of their ſex: and almoſt every thing without life is called
And becauſe all the adjectives of this language are of one termination
has no occaſion for any other genders.

II. The Engliſh, properly ſpeaking, has no caſes, becauſe there is
alteration made in the words themſelves, as in the Latin; but inſt
thereof we uſe ſome little words called *particles*.

Thus, the nominative caſe is the ſimple noun itſelf; the particle *of*
before it, or 's after it, makes the genitive; *to* or *for* before it, makes
dative; the accuſative is the ſame with the nominative; the vocative h
o before it; and the ablative hath *with*, *from*, *in*, *by*, &c.

NOTE 1. That when a ſubſtantive comes before a verb, it is ca
the nominative: when it follows after a verb active, without a prepoſi
intervening, it is called *the accuſative*.

NOTE 2. That the apoſtrophus, or ſign ['], is not uſed in the geni
plural; as, *Mens works*, *the Apoſtles creed*.

NOTE 3. That *to*, the ſign of the dative, and *o* of the vocative,
frequently omitted or underſtood.

Beſides theſe, there are other two little words called *articles*, which
commonly put before ſubſtantive nouns, viz. *a*, [or *an* before a vo
or *h*], called *the indefinite article*, and *the*, called *the definite*.

A or *an* ſignifies as much as the adjective *one*, and is put for it;
A man, that is, *One man*. *The* is a pronoun, and ſignifies almoſt the ſ
with *this* or *that*, and *theſe* or *thoſe*.

NOTE 1. That proper names of men, women, towns, kingdoms,
appellatives when uſed in a very general ſenſe, have none of theſe
ticles; as, *Man is mortal*, *i. e.* every man; *God abhors ſin*, *i. e.* all ſ
but proper names of rivers, ſhips, hills, &c. frequently have *the*; as,
Thames, *the Britannia*, *the Alps*.

NOTE 2. That the vocative has none of theſe articles, and the pl
wants the indefinite.

NOTE 3. That when an adjective is joined with a ſubſtantive, the
ticle is put before both; as, *A good man*; *The good man*: and the def
is put before the adjective when the ſubſtantive is underſtood; as,
juſt ſhall live by faith, i. e *the juſt man*.

III. The Engliſh hath two numbers, as the Latin; and the plu
commonly made by putting an *s* to the ſingular; as, *book*, *books*.

EXC. 1. Such as end in *ch*, *ſh*, *ſſ* and *x*; which have *es* added to
ſingular; as, *church-es*, *bruſh-es*, *witneſſ es*, *box-es*. Where it is to be
ted, that ſuch words have a ſyllable more in the plural than in the
gular number. Which likewiſe happens to all words ending in *ce*, *g*
ze; as, *faces*, *ages*, *houſes*, *mazes*. The reaſon of this proceeds fro

approach theſe terminations have, in their ſound, to an *s*; ſo that plural could not be diſtinguiſhed from the ſingular, without the ad- of another ſyllable. And, for the ſame reaſon, verbs of theſe ter- ations have a ſyllable added to them in their third perſon ſing. of the ent tenſe.

Rc. 2. Words that end in *f*, or *fe*, have their plural in *ves*; as, *calf*, ; *loaf*, *loaves*; *wife*, *wives*: but not always; for *hoof*, *roof*, *grief*, f, *dwarf*, *ſtrife*, *muff*, &c. retain *f*. *Staff* has *ſtaves*.

Rc. 3. Some have their plural in *en*: as, *man*, *men*; *woman*, *women*; *children*; *chick*, *chicken*; *ox*, *oxen*; *brother*, *brothers* or *brethren*; (which ſeldom uſed, but in ſermons, or in a burleſque ſenſe.)

Rc. 4. Some are more irregular; as, *die*, *dice*; *mouſe*, *mice*; *louſe*, *goſe*, *geeſe*; *foot*, *feet*; *tooth*, *teeth*; *penny*, *pence*; *ſow*, *ſows*, and ; *cow*, *cows*, (and *kine*, now obſolete.)

Rc. 5. Some are the ſame in both numbers; as, *ſheep*, *boſe*, *ſwine*, , *peaſe*, *deer*. —— *Fiſh* or *fiſhes*, *mile* or *miles*, and *horſe* or *horſes*, are in the plural.

RT. That as nouns in *y* do often change *y* into *ie*, ſo theſe have ra- than *ys* in the plural; as, *cherry*, *cherries*.

me nouns, from their nature, are uſed only in the ſingular, others in the plural; as, *gold*, *ſloth*, *ſciſſars*, *lungs*, *bowels*, &c.

An Engliſh noun is thus declined.

1. With the indefinite article.

A king.

Singular.		Plural.	
	a king.	Nom.	*kings.*
of	*a king.*	Gen. *of*	*kings.*
to (for)	*a king.*	Dat. *to (for)*	*kings.*
	a king.	Acc.	*kings.*
O	*king.*	Voc. *o*	*kings.*
with, from, in, by	*a king.*	Abl. *with, from, in, by*	*kings.*

2. With the definite article.

The king.

Singular.		Plural.	
	the king.	Nom.	*the kings.*
of	*the king.*	Gen. *of*	*the kings.*
to (for)	*the king.*	Dat. *to (for)*	*the kings.*
	the king.	Acc.	*the kings.*
		Voc.	
with, from, in, by	*the king.*	Abl. *with, from, in, by*	*the kings.*

Prima Declinatio.

. Quomodo dignoſcitur declinatio?

. Per genitivum et dati- ſingularem in *æ* diph- gon?

The Firſt Declenſion.

M. How is the firſt declenſion known?

S. By the genitive and dative ſingular in æ diphthong.

M. Quot habet terminationes ?
D. Quatuor; *a, e, as, es;* ut, *Hæc penna, Penelope; hic Æneas, Anchiſes.*

M. How many termina hath it ?
S. Four; a, e, as, es;

Sing.		*Plur.*		*Thus*
N. pennă,	*a pen,*	*N.* pennæ,	*pens,*	litera, *a let*
G. pennæ,	*of a pen,*	*G.* pennārum,	*of pens,*	via, *a way.*
D. pennæ,	*to a pen,*	*D.* pennis,	*to pens,*	galea, *a hel*
A. pennam,	*a pen,*	*A.* pennas,	*pens,*	tunica, *a co*
V. penna,	*O pen,*	*V.* pennæ,	*O pens,*	toga, *a gow*
A. pennā,	*with a pen.*	*A.* pennis,	*with pens.*	

A is a Latin termination; *e, as,* and *es,* are Greek.

RULE 1. Nouns in *a* and *e* are fem.; as, *hæc menſa,* a table; *ep* an abridgement; *Circe, Penelope,* names of women.

Exceptions in *a* are, 1. *hoc paſcha,* the paſſover; 2. *hic cometa,* a co *Adria,* the Adriatic ſea. 3. *Dama,* a doe; *talpa,* a mole, with Vir fem.; but all others have them maſc.

2. Nouns in *as* and *es* are maſc.; as, *hic aſterias,* a bird of the kind; *pareas,* a kind of ſerpent; *tiaras,* a turban; *achates,* an agate *aromatites,* hippocras; *cometes,* a comet.

Note. *Dea,* a goddeſs; *equa,* a mare; *filia,* a daughter; *liberta,* a woman; *mula,* a ſhe-mule; *nata,* a daughter; have *ābus* more freq than *is* in their dat. and abl. plur. to diſtinguiſh them from maſculi *us* of the ſecond declenſion.

In declining Greek nouns, obſerve the following rules.

1. Greek nouns in *as* and *a* have ſometimes their accuſative (wi poets) in *an;* as, *Æneas, Æneam* or *Ænean; Oſſa, Oſſam* or *Oſſan.*

2. Thoſe in *es* have their accuſative in *en,* and their voc. an in *e*; as

Nom.	Anchiſes,	*Acc.*	Anchiſen,
Gen.	Anchiſæ,	*Voc.*	Anchiſe,
Dat.	Anchiſæ,	*Abl.*	Anchiſe.

Thus nouns in *es,* and the patronymics, (*ſee* chap. ix.) *Æacides, nides,* &c.

3. Nouns in *e* are declined thus,

Nom.	Penelope,	*Acc.*	Penelopen,
Gen.	Penelopes,	*Voc.*	Penelope,
Dat.	Penelope,	*Abl.*	Penelope.

Thus *Arete, Circe,* and the patronymics, *Nerine,* &c.

[As to the dative of words in *e,* I have followed Probus and Priſc mong the ancients; Lilly, Alvarus, Voſſius, Meſſ. de Port Royal, Jo &c. among the moderns. And though none of them cite any ex yet I remember to have obſerved three ſuch datives, viz. *Cybele* i Æn. xi. 768.; *Penelope* in Martial, Epig. xi. 8. 9. and *Epigone* in R Syntag. Inſcript. claſſ. 14. num. 85. But Djomedes and Deſpaute to have been of opinion, that theſe nouns have *æ* in their dative. reaſon that moved the former is, becauſe they thought it incong that ſeeing nouns in *e* generally follow the Greek in all their other

should follow the Latin in their dative only, eſpecially ſince their ative, which anſwers to the Greek dative, ends in *e*: as, on the con- they maintain, that if ſuch nouns have *æ* in their dative, it muſt from a nominative in *æ*; of which there are ſome examples yet ex- : and then they may likewiſe have their accuſative in *am*; as, *Pene- Circam*, in Plautus; *Lycambam* in Terentianus Maurus. Thus *Helenæ Helenæ*, *Helenam* or *Helenen*, are frequently to be met with in poets; alſo turn ſuch words as commonly end in *a*, into *e* in the nomina- and vocative, when the meaſure of their verſe requires it. And here ay not be improper to remark, that even Greek words in *es*, have times their nominative and vocative in *a*, (whence comes their geni- and dative in *æ*): and, if Mr Johnſon's citations are right, both *es* have ſometimes their accuſative in *em*.]

Secunda Declinatio.

M. Quomodo dignoſcitur ſecunda declinatio?

D. Per genitivum ſingularem in *i*, et dativum in *o*.

M. Quot habet terminationes?

D. Septem; *er*, *ir*, *ur*, *us*, *um*, *os*, *on*; ut,

The Second Declenſion.

M. How is the ſecond declenſion known?

S. By the genitive ſingular in i, *and dative in* o.

M. How many terminations hath it?

S. Seven; er, ir, ur, us, um, os, on; *as*,

Hic liber, a book; *vir*, a man; *ſatur*, full; *dominus*, a ; *hoc regnum*, a kingdom; *hæc ſynodos*, a ſynod; *hoc Al-* , the iſland Albion, or Great Britain; *Ilion*, Troy.

Hic liber, *a book.*		Hic gener, *a ſon-in-law.*	
Sing.	*Plur.*	*Sing.*	*Plur.*
. liber,	libri,	*Nom.* gĕner,	generi,
. libri,	librorum,	*Gen.* generi,	generōrum,
. libro,	libris,	*Dat.* genero,	generis,
. librum,	libros,	*Acc.* generum,	generos,
. liber,	libri,	*Voc.* gener,	generi,
. libro.	libris.	*Abl.* genero.	generis.

ſing. The genitive ſing. is, for the moſt part, of the ſame number of bles with the nominative; as, *magiſter*, *-tri*, a maſter; *Alexander*, *-dri*, 's name, &c.

ic. *Adulter*, *-ĕri*, an adulterer; *gener*, *-ĕri*; *Liber*, *-ĕri*, the god Bacchus; *ber*, *-ĕri*, Vulcan; *puer*, *-ĕri*, a boy; *presbyter*, *-ĕri*, an elder; *ſocer*, a father-in-law; *veſper*, *-ĕri*, the evening. *Vir*, and its compounds, *riri*; and *ſatur*, an adjective, *ſatŭri*.

Hic dominus, *a lord.*

Sing.	*Plur.*	*Thus,*
Nom. dominus,	*Nom.* domini,	ventus, *the wind.*
Gen. domini,	*Gen.* dominōrum,	oculus, *the eye.*
Dat. domino,	*Dat.* dominis,	fluvius, *a river.*
Acc. dominum,	*Acc.* dominos,	puteus, *a well.*
Voc. domine,	*Voc.* domini,	focus, *a common fire*
Abl. domino.	*Abl.* dominis.	rogus, *a funeral pile*

RULE. The nom. in *us* makes the voc. in *e.*

EXCEPTIONS.

Filius, *a son.*

	Sing.	*Plur.*
Nom.	filius,	filii,
Gen.	filii,	filiōrum,
Dat.	filio,	filiis,
Acc.	filium,	filios,
Voc.	fili,	filii,
Abl.	filio.	filiis.

Deus, *God.*

	Sing.	*Plur.*
Nom.	Deus,	Dii, *v.* Dei,
Gen.	Dei,	Deōrum,
Dat.	Deo,	Diis, *v.* Deis,
Acc.	Deum,	Deos,
Voc.	Deus,	Dii, *v.* Dei,
Abl.	Deo.	Diis, *v.* Deis.

Note, 1. *Genius*, a tutelar angel, one's natural inclination; and pro names in *ius*, viz. *Julius*, *Propertius*, &c. lose *us* in the voc. as *filius* d

2. Greek nouns in *os*, which come from nouns of the Attic dialect *ως*, have sometimes their genitive in *o*; as, *Androgeos*, *-ei*, v. *-eo*, a m name.

3. *Pŏpŭlus*, a people, has *populc*, or *-us*, in the voc. The poets sometimes retain *us* in this case; as, *fluvius Latinus*, in Virg.

Hoc regnum, *a kingdom.*

Sing.	*Plur.*	*Thus,*
Nom. regnum,	*Nom.* regna,	templum, *a churc*
Gen. regni,	*Gen.* regnōrum,	ingenium, *wit.*
Dat. regno,	*Dat.* regnis,	horreum, *a barn.*
Acc. regnum,	*Acc.* regna,	canticum, *a song.*
Voc. regnum,	*Voc.* regna,	jugum, *a yoke.*
Abl. regno.	*Abl.* regnis.	

See first general rule, p. 4.

The most common terminations of this declension are, *er* and *us* the masc. and *um* and *on* of the neut. gender. There is only one noun *ir*, viz. *hic vir*, with its compounds; *levir*, a brother-in-law; *duum triumvir*, &c. and only one in *ur*, *hic satur* (of old *saturus*), an adject *Os* and *on* are Greek terminations, and generally changed into *us* and in their nominative. These, with other Greek nouns in *us*, have so times their acc. in *on*; as, *Delus* or *Delos*, has *Delum* or *Delon*, the isl Delos.

[We have excluded the termination *eus* from this declension, as belo ing more properly to the third; as, *Orpheus*, *-eos*, *-ei*, v. *-i*, *-ea*, voc. *-* for when it is of the second, it has *-eïs*, in two syllables; and falls un

the termination *us*; thus *Orphelis*, gen. *-ei*, v. *-ei*, dat. *-eo*, acc. *-eum*, v. *-on*, abl. *-eo*, with no voc.; for *-eu* is of the third.]

Exceptions from *us*, maſc. are, 1. *Hæc alvus*, the belly; *domus*, a houſe; *humus*, the ground; *vannus*, a fieve. 2. *Hoc pelagus*, the ſea; *ſecus* (nom. and acc.) for *ſexus*, a ſex; *virus*, poiſon. 3. Some Greek nouns in *os*, which the Romans commonly change into *us*, are feminine; as, *hæc abyſſus*, a bottomleſs deep; *antidotus*, an antidote; *carbaſus*, a ſail; *dialectus*, a dialect; *eremus*, a deſert; *pharus*, a watch-tower: alſo, *hæc arctus*, a conſtellation, the Boar; *diametros*, a diameter; *eos*, the morning; *perimetros*, the circumference of a circle; and, *hæc diphthongus*, a diphthong; *monophthongus*, a ſingle vowel; *methodus*, a method; *periodus*, a period; *ſynodos*. 4. Some names of gems and precious ſtones, (becauſe *gemma* is underſtood), are feminine; as, *hæc amethyſtus*, the amethyſt; *chryſolithus*, the chryſolite; *cryſtallus*, cryſtal; *chryſophraſius*, a kind of topaz; *leucochryſus*, a kind of jacinth ſtone; *ſapphirus*, the ſapphire; *topazius*, a topaz: — but *beryllus*, a beryl; *carbunculus*, the carbuncle; *opalus*, the opal; *pyropus*, a ruby; *ſmaragdus*, the emerald, are maſculine. 5. Some names of plants and fruits, (becauſe *planta* is underſtood), are alſo feminine; as, *hæc biblus*, an Egyptian reed of which paper was made; *byſſus*, the flax, or linen of it; *coſtus*, the herb coſtmary; *crocus* ſaffron; *byſſopus*, hyſſop; *nardus*, ſpikenard; *papyrus*, ſee *biblus*: — but, *aſparagus*, ſparagras; *elleborus*, ellebore; *intybus*, endive, or ſuccory; *raphanus*, radiſh, or colewort, &c. are maſculine, 6. *Chaos*, a confuſed maſs; *epos*, a heroic poem; *melos*, a ſong, are neuter. 7. *Hic* or *hæc balanus*, a date; *barbitus*, a harp; *groſſus*, a green fig; *penus*, a pantry, proviſions; *phaſelus*, a yacht, are of the doubtful gender. 8. *Atomus*, an atom, is fem. and but rarely maſc.; *vulgus*, is neut. and ſometimes maſc.; *colus* fem. but ſometimes maſc.; *camelus*, maſc. and but rarely fem.

Tertia Declinatio.

M. Quomodo dignoſcitur tertia declinatio?

D. Per genitivum ſingularem in *is*, et dativum in *i*.

M. Quot habet terminationes ſeu ſyllabas finales?

D. Septuaginta et unam.

M. Quot habet literas finales?

D. Tredecim; *a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, *y*, *c*, *d*, *l*, *n*, *r*, *s*, *t*, *x*; ut,

The Third Declenſion.

M. How is the third declenſion known?

S. By the genitive ſingular in is, *and dative in* i.

M. How many terminations or final ſyllables hath it?

S. Seventy and one.

M. How many final letters hath it?

S. Thirteen; a, e, i, o, y, c, d, l, n, r, s, t, x; *as*,

Hoc diadema, ſedile, hydromeli; *hic* ſermo; *hoc* miſy, lac; *hic* David; *hoc* animal; *hic* pecten, pater; *hæc* rupes; *hoc* caput; *hic* rex.

Hic ſermo, ſpeech.

Sing.	*Plur.*
N. ſermo,	ſermones,
G. ſermōnis,	ſermonum,
D. ſermoni,	ſermonĭbus,
A. ſermonem,	ſermones,
V. ſermo,	ſermones,
A. ſermone.	ſermonibus.

Hic ordo, an order.

Sing.	*Plur.*
N. ordo,	ordines,
G. ordĭnis,	ordinum,
D. ordini,	ordinĭbus
A. ordinem,	ordines,
V. ordo,	ordines,
A. ordine.	ordinibus

Hic pecten, a comb.

Sing.	*Plur.*
N. pecten,	pectines,
G. pectĭnis,	pectinum,
D. pectini,	pectinĭbus,
A. pectinem,	pectines,
V. pecten,	pectines,
A. pectine.	pectinibus.

Hic pater, a father.

Sing.	*Plur.*
N. pater,	patres,
G. patris,	patrum,
D. patri,	patrĭbus,
A. patrem,	patres,
V. pater,	patres,
A. patre.	patribus.

Hic rex, a king.

Sing.	*Plur.*
N. rex,	reges,
G. rēgis,	regum,
D. regi,	regĭbus,
A. regem,	reges,
V. rex,	reges,
A. rege.	regibus.

Hic nepos, a grandſon.

Sing.	*Plur.*
N. nepos,	nepotes,
G. nepōtis,	nepotum,
D. nepoti,	nepotĭbus
A. nepotem,	nepotes,
V. nepos,	nepotes,
A. nepote.	nepotibus

Hoc caput, a head.

Sing.	*Plur.*
N. caput,	capita,
G. capĭtis,	capitum,
D. capiti,	capitĭbus,
A. caput,	capita,
V. caput,	capita,
A. capite.	capitibus.

Hoc diadema, a crown.

Sing.	*Plur.*
N. diadema,	diademata
G. diademătis,	diadematu
D. diademati,	diadematĭ
A. diadema,	diademata
V. diadema,	diademata
A. diademate.	diadematib

NOTE. As *caput*, ſo its compounds *ſinciput* and *occiput*; but *oc* has *e*, or *i*, in the ablative.

Hoc carmen, a verſe.

Sing.	*Plur.*
N. carmen,	carmina,
G. carmĭnis,	carminum,
D. carmini,	carminĭbus,
A. carmen,	carmina,
V. carmen,	carmina,
A. carmine.	carminibus.

Hoc pectus, the brea

Sing.	*Plur.*
N. pectus,	pectora,
G. pectŏris,	pectorum,
D. pectori,	pectorĭbus
A. pectus,	pectora,
V. pectus,	pectora,
A. pectore.	pectoribus

In form, ſo moſt ſubſtantives of this declenſion in *a*, *e*, *c*, *d*, *n*, *t*, *x*, *er*, *on*, *as*, *os*, *us*, except their acc. and voc. when they are neuters, or when they want the plural number; alſo all words in *es*, and moſt of thoſe in *is*, when they have more ſyllables in their gen. than nom.

Hic animal, a living creature.

Sing.	*Plur.*
animal,	animalia,
animālis,	animalium,
animali,	animalĭbus,
animal,	animalia,
animal,	animalia,
animali.	animalibus.

Hoc ſedile, a ſeat.

Sing.	*Plur.*
N. ſedīle.	ſedilia,
G. ſedilis,	ſedilium,
D. ſedili,	ſedilĭbus,
A. ſedile,	ſedilia,
V. ſedile,	ſedilia,
A. ſedili.	ſedilibus.

Hoc calcar, a ſpur. *Hoc lac*, milk. *Hic David*, a man's name.

Sing.	*Plur.*	*Sing.*	*Sing.*
calcar,	calcaria,	*N.* lac,	*N.* David,
calcāris,	calcarium,	*G.* lactis,	*G.* Davĭdis,
calcari,	calcarĭbus,	*D.* lacti,	*D.* Davidi,
calcar,	calcaria,	*A.* lac,	*A.* Davidem,
calcar,	calcaria,	*V.* lac,	*V.* David,
calcari.	calcaribus.	*A.* lacte.	*A.* Davide.

Hæc rupes, a rock.

Sing.	*Plur.*
rupes,	rupes,
rupis,	rupium,
rupi,	rupĭbus,
rupem,	rupes,
rupes,	rupes,
rupe.	rupibus.

Hæc vallis, a valley.

Sing.	*Plur.*
N. vallis,	valles,
G. vallis,	vallium,
D. valli,	vallĭbus,
A. vallem,	valles,
V. vallis,	valles,
A. valle.	vallibus.

Hæc trabs, a beam.

Sing.	*Plur.*
trabs,	trabes,
trăbis,	trabium,
trabi,	trabĭbus,
trabem,	trabes,
trabs,	trabes,
trabe.	trabibus.

Hæc urbs, a town.

Sing.	*Plur.*
N. urbs,	urbes,
G. urbis,	urbium,
D. urbi,	urbĭbus,
A. urbem,	urbes,
V. urbs,	urbes,
A. urbe.	urbibus.

Hæc gens, a nation.

Sing.	*Plur.*
N. gens,	gentes,
G. gentis,	gentium,
D. genti,	gentĭbus,
A. gentem,	gentes,
V. gens,	gentes,
A. gente.	gentibus.

Hæc pars, a part.

Sing.	*Plur.*
N. pars,	partes,
G. partis,	partium,
D. parti,	partĭbus,
A. partem,	partes,
V. pars,	partes,
A. parte.	partibus.

Hic mas, a male.

Sing.	*Plur.*
N. mas,	mares,
G. măris,	marium,
D. mari,	marĭbus,
A. marem,	mares,
V. mas,	mares,
A. mare.	maribus.

Hic vas, a ſurety.

Sing.	*Plur.*
N. vas,	vades,
G. vădis,	vadium,
D. vadi,	vadĭbus,
A. vadem,	vades,
V. vas,	vades,
A. vade.	vadibus.

Hæc nox, night.

Sing.	*Plur.*
N. nox,	noctes,
G. noctis,	noctium,
D. nocti,	noctĭbus,
A. noctem,	noctes,
V. nox,	noctes,
A. nocte.	noctibus.

Hæc arx, a caſtle.

Sing.	*Plur.*
N. arx,	arces,
G. arcis,	arcium,
D. arci,	arcĭbus,
A. arcem,	arces,
V. arx,	arces,
A. arce.	arcibus.

Hæc navis, a ſhip.

Sing.	*Plur.*
N. navis,	naves,
G. navis,	navium,
D. navi,	navĭbus,
A. navem, *or* -im,	naves,
V. navis,	naves,
A. nave, *or* -i.	navibus.

Hæc buris, the beam of a plou

Sing.	*Plur.*
N. buris,	bures,
G. buris,	burium,
D. buri,	burĭbus,
A. burim,	bures,
V. buris,	bures,
A. buri.	buribus.

Of the final letters of the third declenſion, eight are peculiar to it, *y*, *c*, *d*, *l*, *t*, *x*; the other five are common to other declenſions, *a*, *e*, *n*, The copious final letters are, *o*, *n*, *r*, *s*, *x*. The copious final ſylla are, *io*, *do*, *go*, *en*, *er*, *or*, *as*, *es*, *is*, *os*, *us*, *ns*, *rs*, *ex*.

NOTE 1. That for the moſt part the gen. hath a ſyllable more the nom.; and where it is otherwiſe, the nouns generally end in *e*, *es*, o

NOTE 2. That whatever letter or ſyllable comes before *is* in the must run through the other caſes, (except the acc. and voc. ſing. of ters); as, *diadema*, *diademat-is*, *-i*; *iter*, *itiner-is*, *-i*; *judex*, *judic-is carmen*, *carmin-is*, *-i*.

Note 3. When the gen. plur. ends in *ium*, the acc. has *es*, *eis*, or *is*.

Rules to know the Genders of all Nouns in this Declenſion.

1. Nouns in *a*, or rather *ma*, are Greek ones, and all neuter; as, *hoc* [illegible], an opinion.

2. There are only two words in *c*, and they are neuter; *hoc lac*; *halec*, [illegible]ering.

3. Words in *d* are proper names of men, and ſo maſc. by the firſt gene[illegible]rule, p. 6.; as, *hic David*.

4. Nouns in *e* (alſo *i* and *y* Greek ones) are all neuter; as, *hoc mare*, [illegible]ea; *hydromeli*, mead; *miſy*, vitriol.

5. Nouns in *aus* and *ys* are all feminine; as, *hæc fraus*, fraud; *laus*, [illegible]ſe; *chelys*, a harp; *chlamys*, a ſoldier's cloak.

6. There are only three words in *t*, and all neuter, viz. *hoc caput*; *oc[illegible]t*, the hind head; *ſinciput*, the forehead.

7. Nouns in *er*, *or*, *os*, *o*, and *n*, are maſculine; as, *imber*, a ſhower; [illegible]r, heat; *flos*, a flower; *ſermo*, ſpeech; *pecten*, a comb.

Exceptions in *er*. 1. *Hoc cicer*, vetches; *papaver*, poppy; *piper*, pep[illegible]; *tuber*, a wen, &c. are neuter. 2. *Hoc cadaver*, a dead carcaſe; *iter*, [illegible]ourney; *ſpinther*, a broach, or claſp; *uber*, a pap, fatneſs; *ver*, the [illegible]ng-time, are alſo neuter. 3. *Hic* or *hæc linter*, a little boat.

Exceptions in *or*. 1. *Hæc arbor*, a tree. 2. *Hoc ador*, wheat; *æquor*, a [illegible]n, the ſea; *cor*, the heart; *marmor*, marble, are neuter.

Exceptions in *os*. 1. *Hæc arbos*, a tree; *cos*, a whetſtone; *dos*, a dow[illegible]are feminine. 2. *Hoc os*, *oris*, the mouth; *os*, *oſſis*, a bone, are [illegible]ter.

Exceptions *in o*. 1. *Hæc caro*, fleſh; *echo*, an echo; *halo*, a circle about [illegible]n or moon, are feminine. 2. Nouns in *io* (but only thoſe which [illegible]fy things without a body) are feminine; as well verbals, viz. *hæc ora[illegible]*, an oration; *opinio*, an opinion; as derivatives from nouns, viz. *hæc [illegible]nio*, communion; *perduellio*, treaſon; *rebellio*, rebellion; *talio*, like for [illegible]: but the numbers *ſenio*, ſix; *ternio*, three, are maſculine. 3. Nouns [illegible]*do* and *go* are feminine; as, *hæc arundo*, a reed; *imago*, an image. [illegible]wever *cudo*, a leather cap; *harpago*, a drag, or grapple; *ligo*, a ſpade; [illegible], order; *tendo*, a tendon; *udo*, a linen or woollen ſock, are maſculine. [illegible]*rgo*, the brink of a river or well, the margin of a book, is moſt fre[illegible]ently maſculine; only *Juv.* has it feminine. *Cupido*, the god of Love, [illegible]maſculine, by the firſt general rule, p. 8.—The poets, even when it ſig[illegible]ies *deſire*, often have it maſculine; but in this ſenſe the orators uſe it [illegible]ays in the feminine.

Exceptions in *n*. 1. Nouns in *men*; as, *hoc carmen*, a verſe: and *hoc [illegible]en*, glue; *inguen*, the groin; *pollen*, fine flour; *unguen*, ointment, are [illegible]uter. 2. *Hæc aëdon*, a nightingale; *alcyon*, the kingfiſher; *icon*, an i[illegible]age or picture; *ſindon*, fine linen, are feminine.

8. Nouns in *as*, *es*, *is*, *x*, and *s*, after a conſonant, are feminine, viz. [illegible]*pietas*, piety; *ſedes*, a ſeat; *avis*, a bird; *lex*, a law; *mens*, the [illegible]ind.

Exceptions in *as*. 1. *Hoc vas*, *vaſis*, a veſſel. 2. Greek nouns having [illegible]r genitive in *ădis*, are neuter, viz. *hoc artocreas*, a pie; *eriſipelas*, St [illegible]nthony's fire: but when they terminate in *antis*, they are maſculine, viz. [illegible]*adamas*, an adamant; *elephas*, an elephant.

Exceptions in *es*. 1. *Hic* or *hæc ales*, a bird; *hic* or *hæc palumbes*, a [illegible]ndove, or woodpigeon. 2. *Hic ames*, a fowler's ſtaff; *ceſpes*, a turf;

fomes, fewel; *gurges*, a whirlpool; *limes*, a bound or limit; *pal* vine-branch; *paries*, a wall; *pes*, the foot; *poples*, the ham of th *ſtipes*, the ſtock of a tree; *termes*, an olive-bough; *trames*, a pa maſculine. 3. *Hic acinaces*, a ſcymitar; *lebes*, a caldron or kettle *nes*, the loadſtone, are maſculine: but we have *hippomanes*, the in the forehead of a foal; *nepenthes*, the herb kill-grief; *panaces*, th all-heal; and alſo *æs*, braſs, neuter.

Exceptions in *is*. 1. Theſe are maſculine: — *Aqualis*, a water-p ewer; *axis*, an axletree; *callis*, a beaten rod; *cenchris*, a ſerpent; the ſtalk of an herb; *collis*, a hill; *cucumis*, a cucumber; *enſis*, a *faſcis*, a bundle; *follis*, bellows; *fuſtis*, a ſtaff; *glis*, a rat; *lapis*, a *menſis*, a month; *mugilis*, a mullet-fiſh; *orbis*, a circle, the world; a fiſh; *poſtis*, a poſt; *ſanguis*, blood; *torris*, a firebrand; *ungui* nail; *vectis*, a leaver; *vermis*, a worm; *vomis*, the ploughſhare: Latin nouns in *nis*; as, *hic crinis*, the hair; *panis*, bread 2. *Hic anguis*, a ſerpent; *canalis*, a conduit-pipe; *clunis*, the buttock; *fi* end; *ſcrobis*, a ditch; *torquis*, a chain, are of the doubtful gender *amnis*, a river; *cinis*, aſhes; *pulvis*, duſt, are maſculine, rarely fem *corbis*, a twig-baſket, is feminine, rarely maſculine.

Fines, in the plural, the limits of lands, is always maſculine.

Exceptions in *x*. 1. Nouns of more than one ſyllable in *ax* and maſculine; as, *frutex*, a ſhrub; *thorax*, the breaſt, or breaſtplate we have *hæc carex*, ſedge; *forfex*, ſciſſars; *fornax*, a furnace; *halex* ring, a kind of pickle; *panax*, the herb all-heal; *opopanax*, the j it; *ſmilax*, rope-weed; *ſupellex*, furniture, feminine. 2. *Hic bo* ſilkworm; *calix*, a cup; *calyx*, the bud of a flower; *coccyx*, a c *fornix*, a vault; *grex*, a flock; *onyx*, alabaſter, or a box of it; wild goat; *phœnix*, a bird ſo called; *tradux*, a graff, or off-ſet of are maſculine: *onyx*, a jewel; *bombyx*, ſilk, are feminine; *grex* an ſometimes feminine. 3. *Hic* or *hæc calx*, the heel, the goal; alſo bark; *hyſtrix*, a porcupine; *imbrex*, a gutter-tile; *obex*, a bar, *pumex*, a pumice-ſtone; *rumex*, ſorrel; *ſardonyx*, a precious ſtone a flint; *varix*, a ſwoln vein, are of the doubtful gender: *calx*, feminine; but *cortex*, *obex*, *pumex*, *varix*, are but rarely feminine. or *hic* more rarely, *limax*, a ſnail; likewiſe *lynx*, an ounce; *perdix* tridge; *ſandix*, a kind of red or purple colour. 5. *Atriplex*, the rage, is neuter, ſcarcely feminine.

Exceptions in *s*, with a conſonant before it. 1. *Hic chalybs*, ſtee a tooth; *fons*, a fountain; *gryps*, a griffin; *mons*, a mountain; bridge; *rudens*, a cable; *ſeps*, a ſerpent, are maſculine: Alſo more than one ſyllable in *ps*, viz. *hic epops*, a lapwing; *hydrops*, th ſy; *merops*, a kind of titmouſe: but *forceps*, tongs, is feminine and *Vitr.* have alſo *rudens* feminine. 2. *Hic* or *hæc adeps*, fatneſ *ſcrobs*, a ditch; *ſerpens*, a ſerpent; *ſtirps*, the ſtock of a tree: bu offſpring or extraction, is only feminine. 3. *Animans*, a living c is moſt frequently feminine; but is found alſo neuter and maſculi

9. Nouns in *l*, *ar*, *ur*, *us*, are neuter; as, *animal*, a living creatu *car*, a ſpur; *murmur*, noiſe; *pectus*, the breaſt.

Exceptions in *l*. 1. *Hic mugil*, a mullet fiſh; *hic ſol*, the ſun: *S* is maſculine and neuter; but *ſales*, in the plural, witty ſayings, i maſculine.

The only exception in *ar* is, *hic ſalar*, a trout.

ceptions in *ur*. *Hic furfur*, bran; *turtur*, a turtledove; *vultur*, a ture, are maſculine.

ceptions in *us*. 1. *Hæc incus*, an anvil; *juventus*, youth; *palus*, a r bog; *ſalus*, health, ſafety; *ſenectus*, old age; *ſervitus*, bondage; , a dovetail; *virtus*, virtue, are feminine. 2. *Hic lepus*, a hare; , a mouſe; and the compounds of *pus* or πους, i. e. *pes*, viz. *bic* , a brand-iron; *tripus*, any thing that has three feet, are maſcu- only *logopus*, a bird, the herb hare's-foot, is feminine; and *grus*, a feminine or maſculine.

10. *i*, *æ*, *a*, and *e*, plural.

uns in *i* are maſculine; as, *hi liberi*, children.

in *æ* are feminine; as, *hæ cunæ*, a cradle.

in *a* are neuter; as, *hæc arma*, arms.

Greek nouns in *e* are alſo neuter; as, *hæc mele*, (from *melos*), ; *hæc cete*, whales; *hæc Tempe*, a pleaſant place in Theſſaly.

Of the Declenſion of Nouns.

Compound nouns are declined as their ſimple ones, viz. *pes*, *pedis*, ; *bipes*, *bipedis*, two-footed.

Exſanguis has *is* in the genitive, although the ſimple *ſanguis* has *Capricornus* (from *cornu*) has *-i*: *angiportus* (from *portus*) with Cicero brace is of the fourth; but Pliny declines it in the ſecond declen- and Vitruvius uſes it both ways: alſo *unimanus*, (and the other com- of *manus* of the fourth), is of the ſecond declenſion.

In compounds, the nominative only is declined, whether it be in or both parts of the compound, viz. *juriſperitus*, *juriſperiti*, &c. *ca*, *reipublicæ*, &c.

Alter -uter, has *alter -utrius*, *alter -utri*, and Liv. *alterius -utrius*, *utri*; but this is not ſo common: and *olus -atrum*, *olus -atri*, and *utri* leſs frequently.

Special Rules.

i and *y*.

1. Nouns in *i* are moſt frequently indeclinable; as, *gummi*, gum.

2. Some Greek nouns compounded of *meli*, (or μελι, i. e. *mel*), have *is*, *hydromeli*, *-ĭtis*.

Nouns in *y* are Greek, and have *yos*; as, *miſy*, *miſyos*; *moly*, *molyos*.

o.

Nouns in *o*, add to it *nis*; as, *draco*, *dracōnis*, a dragon.

1. Feminines in *do* and *go* change *o* into *ĭnis*; as, *formido*, *-ĭnis*, fear; *-ĭnis*, darkneſs; alſo, *cardo*, a hinge; *cupido*, *margo*, *ordo*; and *A-* the god; *turbo*, the whirlwind; *homo*; *nemo*, nobody, take *ĭnis*; *malus*, the crab-tree, or its fruit, has *ōnis*. 2. *Caro* has *carnis*; and *Anĭēnis*, a river; *Nerio*, *Neriēnis*, the wife of the god Mars.

c, *d*, *l*.

Nouns in *c*, *d*, *l*, add *is*; as, *halec*, *halēcis*; *David*, *Davĭdis*; *Bogud*, , a man's name; *vectigal*, *-ālis*, cuſtom, or toll; *exul*, *exŭlis*, a ba- perſon.

Lac has *lactis*, and *mel*, honey, *mellis*; *fel*, gall, *fellis*.

n.

Nouns in *n* add *is*; as, *Titan*, *Titānis*, the ſun; *ſplen*, *ſplēnis*, the milt.

1. Some Greek nouns have *ontis*; as, *Laomedon*, *-ontis*, a king of 2. Neuters in *en* change it into *ĭnis*; as, *flumen*, *flumĭnis*, a river; *men*, as well neuter, a blaſt of wind, as maſculine, a prieſt, has

faminis: also *pecten*, a comb; and the compounds of *cano*, viz. *tibi* a piper; *tubicen*, a trumpeter; have *-inis*.

r.

6. Nouns in *r* add *is*; as, *par*, *păris*, equal; *anser*, *anseris*, a goo *Gadir*, *Gadiris*, Cadiz; *martyr*, *martyris*. a witneſs, or martyr.

Exc. *Far*, all kind of corn, takes *farris*; *Lar*, a man's name, *La* (but *lar*, a houſehold god, or the houſe, has *lăris*); *hepar*, (a G word), the liver, takes *hepătis* or *hepătos*. 2. Three adjectives in *cer cris*; as, *acer*, *acris*; *alacer*, *alacris*, chearful; *volucer*, *volucris*, ſ 3. Some nouns in *ber* make *bris*; as, *imber*, *imbris*; and the months *tember*, &c. *Septembris*, &c.; *Inſuber*, one of the Inſubres, has *Inſubris* ſo *celeber*, famous; *ſaluber*, wholeſome, have *celebris*, *ſalubris*. 4. nouns in *ter* give *tris*; as, *uter*, *utris*, a bottle; and *pater*, *mater*, (G words), *patris*, *matris*. The other Greek nouns take *ēris*; as, *cr cratēris*, a cup: alſo *later* (although a Latin word) has *latēris*. 5. *Cor* heart, has *cordis*; *iter*, *itinĕris*; *Jupiter*, *Jŏvis*. 6. Four in *ur* have as, *cbur*, *cbŏris*, ivory; *femur*, *femŏris*, the thigh; *jecur*, *jecŏris*, the l and *robur*, *robŏris*, a kind of hard oak, ſtrength.

as.

7. Nouns in *as* take *ātis*; as, *ætas*, *ætātis*, age.

Exc. *Mas* has *măris*; *as*, *aſſis*; *hoc vas*, *vāſis*; *hic vas*, *văd*. 2. culine Greek nouns take *antis*; as, *hic gigas*, *gigantis*, a giant; *-antis*, a man's name. 3. Feminine Greek nouns take *ădis*; as, *l -ădis*, a lamp; *Pallas*, *-ădis*, Minerva: alſo *Arcas*, *Arcădis*, an Arc 4. Neuter Greek nouns have *ătis*; as, *artocreas*, *-ătis*, a pie; *buceras*, the herb fenigreek.

es.

8. Nouns in *es* change it into *is*; as, *nubes*, *nubis*, a cloud; *rupis*, a rock.

Exc. Three Latin nouns have *ētis*; as, *manſues*, *-ētis*, gentle, *locuples*, *-ētis*, rich; *quies*, *-ētis*, reſt: alſo its compound *inquies*, r *-ētis*; but *requies*, reſt, has *-ētis* and *-ei*. Many Greek nouns hav *ētis*; as, *Cres*, *Crētis*, a Cretian: but the reſt are generally of t labes; as, *magnes*, *ētis*, a loadſtone; *tapes*, *ētis*, tapeſtry: likewiſe *Laches*, *Mendes*, names of men: of theſe, however, *Chremes* has *-e -is*; *Dares*, *-ētis*, or *-is*; *Thales*, *-ētis*, or *-is*; but they have moſ monly *-ētis*. 2. Theſe have *ĕtis*; *abies*, a fir-tree; *aries*, a ram; dull; *indiges*, a home-made god; *interpres*, an interpreter; *paries*, *perpes*, perpetual; *præpes*, ſwift-winged; *ſeges*, growing corn; mat or coverlet; *teres*, round and long. 3. Theſe have *ĭtis*; *abies antiſtes*, a high prieſt; *dives*, rich; *eques*, a horſeman; *merges*, a of corn; *miles*, a ſoldier; *palmes*, a vine branch; *ſoſpes*, ſafe; *alit Tudes*, a hammer, (its gender is not known), has *tudĭtis*, or *tudis*. compounds of *ſedeo* take *ĭdis*; as, *præſes*, *-ĭdis*, a preſident; *obſes*, hoſtage: *merces*, a reward, has *mercēdis*; *hæres*, an heir, *hærēdis*; *pes ais*: alſo its compounds *quadrupes*, four footed; *Ceres* has *Cerĕris*, and

is.

9. Nouns in *is* have their genitive like the nominative; as, *ov* a ſheep; *auris*, *auris*, the ear; *avis*, *avis*, a bird.

Exc. 1. Theſe Latin nouns take *ĭdis*, viz. *caſſis*, an helmet; ſtone; alſo *capis*, a pot for ſacrifice; *cuſpis*, a point of a ſpear; metheglin. 2. *Sanguis* has *ĭnis*, blood. 3. Three have *ĕris*; *cinis* *pulvis*, duſt; *vomis*, a plough-ſhare; *ciněris*, &c. But *pubis*,

marriageable, has *pubis*, yet oftener *pubĕris*; alſo its compound *impubis*, *impubes*, one under age; likewiſe *cucumis*, a cucumber, has *cucumis*, more frequently *cucumĕris*. 4. Four have *ītis*; as, *dis*, *dītis*, rich, the god of Riches; *lis*, *lītis*, ſtrife; *Quiris*, *-ītis*, a Roman; *Samnis*, *-ītis*, a Samnite. 5. *Glis*, a rat, has *glīris*; *hoc ſemis* is indeclinable; *ſemis* has *ſemiſſis*.

Greek nouns in *is*.

Three take *īdis*, viz. 1. *Pſophis*, *-īdis*, a town; *Crenis*, *-īdis*, *Neſis*, *-īdis*, iſlands. 2. Some have *īnis*; *Eleuſis*, *-īnis*, *Salamis -īnis*, towns. 3. Some *-entis*, viz. *Simois*, *-entis*, a river; *Pyrois*, *-entis*, one of the horſes of the ſun; *Opois*, *-entis*, *contr. Opus*, *Opuntis*, a town. 4. *Charis*, *-ĭtis*, one of the three Graces. —— See the reſt, p. 23. and 24.

os.

10. Nouns in *os* give *-ōtis*; as, *ſacerdos*, *-ōtis*, a prieſt; *nepos*, *-ōtis*.

Exc. 1. Theſe have *ōris*, viz. *glos*, *glōris*, the huſband's ſiſter, or brother's wife; *flos*, *flōris*; *mos*, *mōris*, uſe or cuſtom; *os*, *ōris*; *ros*, *rōris*, dew: alſo nouns which have alſo *or* in the nominative, viz. *colos*, or *color*, *colōris*, a colour; *honos*, or *honor*, *honōris*, honour; *labos*, or *labor*, *labōris*, labour; *odos*, or *odor*, *odōris*, a ſmell: — but *arbos*, or *arbor*, a tree, has *arboris*. 2. *Bos*, an ox, or cow, has *bŏvis*; *euſtos*, a keeper, *cuſtōdis*; *os*, a bone, *oſſis*.

us.

11. Nouns in *us* have *ŏris*; as, *pectus*, *pectŏris*, the breaſt.

Exc. 1. Comparatives have *ōris*; as, *minus*, *minōris*, leſs. 2. Theſe have *ĕris*; *acus*, chaff; *fœdus*, a league; *funus*, a burial; *genus*, a kind; *lebes*, a boyl; *latus*, the ſide; *munus*, a gift; *olus*, greens; *onus*, a burden; *opus*, work; *pondus*, a weight; *rudus*, rubbiſh; *ſcelus*, a crime; *ſidus*, a ſtar; *vellus*, a fleece; *Venus*, the goddeſs; *vetus*, old; *viſcus*, an entrail; *vulnus*, a wound: alſo *glomus*, (which takes ſometimes *glomi*), a clew, has *glomĕris*. 3. *Tellus*, the earth, or goddeſs of it, has *Tellūris*: alſo theſe monoſyllables have *ūris*; *crus*, the leg; *jus*, law, or right, broth; *mus*, a mouſe; *plus*, more; *pus*, the matter of a ſore; *rus*, the country; *thus*, frankincenſe; but *Ligus*, or *Ligur*, a Ligurian, takes *Ligŭris*: *grus*, a cran, has *gruis*; *ſus*, a ſwine, *ſuis*. 4. The compounds of *pus*, *pudis*, take *ŏdis*, viz. *tripus*, *-ŏdis*. 5. Greek names of towns take *untis*; as, *Trapezus*, *-untis*. 6. *Incus*, an anvil; *palus*, a moraſs; *ſubſcus*, a dovehouſe, have *ūdis*. 7. Theſe have *ūtis*; *juventus*, youth; *ſalus*, health; *ſenectus*, old age; *ſervitus*, bondage; *virtus*, virtue; but *intercus*, *ſc. aqua*, a dropſy, has *-ŭtis*.

æs, aus, eus.

11. *Æs* has *æris*; *præs*, a ſurety, *prædis*; *fraus*, *fraudis*; *laus*, *laudis*. For *eus*, ſee p. 24.

bs, ps, ls, ms,

12. Nouns in *bs* and *ps* put *i* between them; as, *trabs*, *trăbis*; *chalybs*, *-ybis*, ſteel; *ſeps*, *ſĕpis*, a hedge.

Exc. 1. *Cœlebs*, unmarried, changing *e* into *i*, has *cœlĭbis*: ſo alſo the monoſyllables in *-eps*; as, *adeps*, *adĭpis*, fat; *princeps*, *princĭpis*, a prince; *auceps*, a fowler, makes *aucŭpis*. 2. The compounds of *caput* take *-pitis*; as, *anceps*, *ancĭpĭtis*, doubtful; *biceps*, *bicĭpĭtis*, two-headed; *præceps*, *præcipitis*, headlong. 3. *Cinyps*, a river, and boy, makes *Cinўphis*; *gryps*, a griffon, *grўphis*. 4. *Puls*, pottage, has *pultis*; *hiems*, winter, *hiemis*.

ns, rs.

13. Nouns in *ns* and *rs* throw away *s*. and add *tis*; as, *gens*, *gentis*; *pars*, *partis*,

Exc. 1. Some have *dis*; as, *glans, glandis*, an acorn; *juglans, -d* walnut; *nefrens, -dis*, a weaned pig; *lens*, a nit, has *lendis*; but *lens*, tils, has *lentis*: *frons*, the leaf of a tree, has *frondis*; but *frons*, the head, takes *frontis*; *libripens, -dis*, an officer who weigheth to sold their pay: likewiſe the compounds of *cor* take *dis*; as, *concors, conco* agreeing, &c. 2. *Iens*, and *quiens*, the participles of *eo*, and *queo*, their compounds, have *-untis*; *euntis, queuntis*; *rediens, redeuntis*; *nequ nequeuntis*: but *ambiens*, from *ambio*, keeps *ambientis*. 3. *Tiryns*, a in Greece, makes *Tirynthis*.

x.

14. Nouns in *x* change it into *cis*; as, *fax, făcis*, a torch; *fax*, dregs; *merx, mercis*, merchandiſe; *nux, nŭcis*, a nut.

Exc. 1. Theſe four take *-gis*; as, *frux*, all kind of corn; *lex*, a l *grex*, a flock; *rex*, a king; *frŭgis*, &c.—Very many Greek nouns fo the rule; *Ajax, Ajācis*, a man's name: but ſeveral take *gis*; as, *ſtrĭgis*, a ſcreechowl; *Phryx, Phrўgis*, a Phrygian; *larynx, laryngis*, top of the windpipe. 2. *Onyx* has *onўchis*, and *ſardonyx, -ўchis*. 3. S have *actis*; as, *Hylax, Hylactis*; *Bibrax, Bibractis*. 4. Words of than one ſyllable in *ex*, change *e* into *ĭ*; as, *pellex, pellĭcis*, the thu *remex, remĭgis*, a rower; but *myrmex* a piſmire, has *myrmēcis*; *verv* wedder-ſheep, *vervēcis*; *aquilex*, a well-maker, *aquilĕgis*; *halex, hal Lelex, Lelĕgis*, the name of a man and people: and the compoun *ſeco, fœniſex, -ĕcis* a cutter of hay; *reſex, reſĕcis*, a branch cut off, r this *e*. 5. *Nix*, ſnow, takes *nĭvis*; *nox, noctis*; *ſenex*, an old man, *ſ ſupellex*, houſehold ſtuff, *ſupellectilis*; and *conjunx*, or *conjux*, a huſb or wife, has *conjŭgis*.

The dative ends in *i*: but we alſo find *e*; as, Virg. *Hæret pede pes.*

The accuſative ends in *em*; as, *panis, panem*.

Exc. 1. Theſe have *im*; *amuſſis*, a maſon's rule; *buris*; *cannabis*, he *cucumis*; *gummis*; *mephitis*, a damp or ſtrong ſmell; *ravis*, hoarſe *ſinapis*, muſtard; *ſitis*, thirſt; *tuſſis*, a cough; *vis*, ſtrength. Like not only Greek, but Latin, and foreign proper names, in *is*. (1) To and other places; as, *Bilbilis*, a city in Spain; *Mareotis*, a lake i gypt; *ſyrtis*, quickſands. (2) Rivers; *Tiberis*; *Bœtis*; *Thameſis*, Thames. (3) Gods; *Anubis, Apis, Oſiris, Serapis*; but they have often alſo *in*; *Bilbilin, Bœtin*, &c. 2. Thoſe in *is* have *im* and *turris*, a tower; *puppis*, the ſtern of a ſhip; *reſtis*, a rope; *ſecuris* ax: but *aqualis*, an ewer; *clavis*, a key; *cutis*, the ſkin; *febris*, a fe *navis*; *pelvis*, a baſon; *ſementis*, ſeed, or ſowing of it; *ſtrigilis*, a h comb; alſo *lens*, lentils, have *em* and *im*.

The ablative ends in *e*.

Exc. 1. Nouns in *e*, and neuters in *al* and *ar*, have *i*; as, *ov* ſheepfold; *cervical*, a bolſter, or pillow; *laquear*, a ceiled roof: but per names in *e* keep *e* in the ablative; as, *Cære, Præneſte, Reate, Sor* alſo *far* has *farre*; *hepar, hepate*; *jubar*, a ſunbeam, *jubăre*; *nectar*, of the gods, *nectăre*; *par*, the ſubſtantive, a pair, or couple, has and *ſal, ſăle*.

Note. The poets often uſe *e* inſtead of *i*; as Virg. *laqueare*; Ov. *m*

Exc. 2. Nouns in *is*, which have the accuſative in *im*, or *in*, have ly; as, *vis, vim, vi*. Yet we ſometimes ſee *Cannabi*, or *-e*; *Bœtis*, *-e*; *Tigris, Tigri, Tigre*, or *Tigrĭde*.

Exc. 3. Nouns in *is*, which have *em* or *im* in the accuſative, take *e*,

…, *turris*, *turre*, or *-i*. But *cutis*, *reſtis*, have only *cute*, *reſte*; and *ſecu-*
…, *ſementis*, *ſtrigilis*, have *i*, and ſeldom *e*; *ſecuri*, &c.

Exc. 4. Theſe, though the accuſative has *em* only, have *e* or *i*; *finis*, …, *rus*, *ſupellex*, *vectis*; alſo cities after *in* or *at*; as, He dwells in or …Carthage, *habitat Carthagine*, or *-i*. To which may perhaps be added, …, or *mugilis*, and *pugil*, a champion, *mugile*, or *-i*, *pugile*, or *-i*. But …e are more frequently found with *e*, *amnis*, a river; *anguis*, a ſer-…; *avis*; *civis*, a citizen; *claſſis*, a fleet; *fuſtis*, a ſtaff; *imber*, a ſhower; …, a poſt; *ſors*, a lot; *unguis*, a nail; *amne*, ſometimes *amni*, &c.

Exc. 5. *Canalis*, a water-pipe, has only *canali* in the ablative.

The moſt ancient writers have given ſometimes *im* and *i* to many other …s; as, *ovim*, *ovi*: but they are not to be imitated.

The nominative plural ends in *es*; as, *panes*.

Exc. 1. If the neuter has the ablative in *i*, or *e* and *i*, the nominative …al ends in *ia*; as, *mare*, *mari*, *maria*: but *rus* has only *a*, *rura*. 2. Neu-…s which have *e* only in the ablative, have *a*, never *ia*; as, *nemus*, *ne-*…*re*, *nemora*.

Genitive Plural.

Rule 1. If the ablative has *i*, or *e* and *i* together, the genitive plural …s in *ium*; as, *alveare*, *-i*, *-ia*, a bee-hive; *vis*, *vi*; plural *vires*, *vi-*…, &c.

Exc. *Mugil* and *occiput* have *um*.

Rule 2. Nouns which have *e* only in the ablative, make their genitive …al in *um*; as, *ſermo*, *-ne*, *-num*.

Exc. 1. Latin nouns in *as* have *-ium*; as, *as*, *aſſium*; *mas*, *marium*; …, *vadium*. But words of more than one ſyllable have rather *um* than …; as, *civitas*, a ſtate, a city, has *civitatum*, ſometimes *civitatium*.

Exc. 2. Nouns *is* and *es* not increaſing in the genitive, have *ium*; as, …, *boſtium*, an enemy; *ædes*, *ædium*, a temple, a houſe. But *canis* has …; *panis*, *panum*; *vates*, *vatum*.

Exc. 3. Nouns in *ns* have *-ium*; as, *cliens*, *clientium*; but *parens*, a pa-…, keeps *parentum*, rather than *-ium*.

Exc. 4. Theſe have *ium*; *caro*; *cohors*, a company; *cor*; *cos*; *dos*; *faucis*, …jaws, (from *faux* obſ.); *glis*, a rat; *lar*, a houſehold god, the houſe; …, *lis*, *mus*, *nix*, *nox*, *os*, *-ſis*, *Quiris*, *Samnis*, *uter*; *carnium*, &c.

Exc. 5. The compounds of *as* and *uncia*; *bes*, *ſextans*, *ſeptunx*, have alſo …; *beſſium*, &c.

Exc. 6. Words of one ſyllable, ending with two or more conſonants, …*-ium*; as, *arx*, *fors*, *ſtirps*, *urbs*; *arcium*, &c.

The moſt part of Greek nouns will be found in the order of the ter-…nations among the Latin ones; but I thought it would not be amiſs to …theſe that follow, with ſome other remarks, by themſelves.

Greek nouns have ſometimes their genitive in *os*: and theſe are, …ſuch as increaſe their genitive with *d*; as, *Arcas*, *Arcadis*, or *Arcados*; …*ſis*, *-eidis*, or *-eidos*. And, 2. ſuch as increaſe in *os* pure (with a vowel …ore it); as, *hæreſis*, *-eos*, or *-ios*. To theſe add, *Sphyngos*, *Strymonos*, …*Panos*.

Note. That *is* will be found more frequent; except in the ſecond kind, …in thoſe that have *os* pure, (but even theſe have *is* ſometimes); and …onymics of the firſt; as, *pyramis*, *-ĭdos*, v. *-ĭdis*. *See* chap. ix.

II. 1. Greek words which increaſe their genitive in *is*, or *os* not pure, …e. with a conſonant before it), have frequently their accuſative ſingu-…in *a*, and plural in *as*, viz. *lampas*, *-ădis*, or *-os*; *lampăda*, *lampădas*:

alſo *hēros*, *Minos*, *thos*, *Tros*, which are thus declined; *heros*, *herois*, *heroa*, *heros*, *heroe*; plural *heroes*, *-um*, *-ibus*, *-as*, &c.

Note. *Æther*, *delphin*, and *Pan*, have the accuſative in *a*, ſcarce *æthera*, *delphina*, *Pana*.

2. Words in *is*, or *ys*, which terminate their genitive in *os* pur thus declined; *hæreſis*, *-eos*, or *-ios*, (and ſometimes *is*) *-i*, *-im*, or lative *-i*; *Atys*, *Atyos*, *Atyi*, *Atym*, vocative *Aty*, ablative *Atye*, or

3. Maſculine words in *is* which have their genitive impure, clined thus; *Paris*, *-ĭdis*, or *-idos*, *-idi*, *-im*, or *-in*, and ſometimes vocative *Pari*, ablative *-ide*, and ſcarcely *Pari*. But feminines in *is* with their genitive impure, have theſe caſes; *Elis*, *Elĭdis*, or *Elĭdos*, *Elidem*, *Elida*, and rarely *Elin*, abl. *Elide*; *Aulis*, *-ĭdis*, or *ĭdos*, *-idi*, *-ida*, and rarely *Aulim*, ablative *-ide*; *chlamys*, *-ydis*, or *-ydos*, *-ydi*, or *-yda*, ablative *yde*; plural *-ydes*, *-ydum*, *-ydibus*, *-das*, &c.

III. Feminines in *o* havs *ûs* in their genitive, and *o* in their other as, *Dido*, *-ûs*, *-o*, &c.; or they may be declined after the Latin *Dido*, *-ōnis*, *-ōni*, &c.; which *Juno* (as being of a Latin original) follows.

IV. Greek nouns in *s* frequently throw it away in the vocativ *Calchas*, *Achilles*, *Paris*, *Tiphys*, *Orpheus*; *Calcha*, &c.

V. Greek nouns have *um*, and ſometimes *ôn*, in their genitive as, *epigrammatôn*, *hæreſeôn*: and very rarely *-ium*; as, *Thrax*, *Thra*

VI. Greek nouns in *ma* have moſt frequently *is* in their dative lative plural; as, *poëma*, *-atis*; becauſe of old they were declined *tum*, *-ati*; *bos* has *boum*, and *bōbus* or *būbus*.

VII. The poets terminate ſome Greek nouns in *ſin*, inſtead of *tibus*; as, *Troaſin*, *Chariſin*, for *Troadibus*, *Charitibus*.

VIII. Greek nouns in *eus* are thus declined; *Orpheus*, *-eos*, *-ei*, and vocative *-eu*, ablative *-eo*. *See* p. 12.

A little knowledge of Greek would make the declenſion of theſe nou which all who want to be ſcholars ſhould begin to, after they have be three years at moſt in the Latin.

Quarta Declinatio.

M. Quomodo dignoſcitur quarta declinatio.

D. Per genitivum ſingularem in *us*, et dativum in *ui*.

M. Quot habet terminationes?

D. Duas; *us* et *u*; ut,

Fructus, *fruit*; cornu, *a horn*.

The Fourth Declen

M. How is the fou clenſion known?

S. By the genitive in us, *and the dative in*

M. How many termi hath it?

S. Two; us *and* u;

Fructus, *fruit*, maſc.

	Sing.	*Plur.*
Nom.	fructus,	*Nom.* fructus,
Gen.	fructûs,	*Gen.* fructuum,
Dat.	fructui,	*Dat.* fructĭbus,
Acc.	fructum,	*Acc.* fructus,
Voc.	fructus,	*Voc.* fructus,
Abl.	fructu.	*Abl.* fructibus.

Thus,

vultus, *the coun*
manus, *the hand*
caſus, *a fall*, or
exercitus, *an ar*
ictus, *a ſtroke*.

Hoc cornu, *a horn,*

Sing.	*Plur.*	*Thus,*
cornu,	*N.* cornua,	genu, *the knee.*
cornu,	*G.* cornuum,	veru, *a ſpit.*
cornu,	*D.* cornĭbus,	tonitru, *thunder.*
cornu,	*A.* cornua,	*But* genu *and* veru *have*
cornu,	*V.* cornua,	-ĭbus *or* -ŭbus.
cornu,	*A.* cornibus.	

ns in *us* of this declenſion are generally maſculine; and thoſe in *u* ter, and indeclinable in the ſingular number.

ceptions in *us* are, 1. *hæc acus*, a needle; *ficus*, a fig-tree, or fig; *do-mus*; *porticus*, a gallery; *tribus*, are feminine. 2. *Hic* or *hæc pe-nus*, pantry, proviſions; *ſpecus*, a den, are of the doubtful gender: but (in nom. and acc.) is neuter; Virg. *Horrendum ſpecus.*

3. Some nouns have *ŭbus* in their dative and ablative plural, viz. a bow; *artus*, a joint; *lacus*, a lake; *acus*, a needle; *portus*, (but alſo *ĭbus*) a port or harbour; *partus*, a birth; *tribus*, a tribe; *veru*,

4. That, of old, nouns of this declenſion belonged to the third, declined as *grus, gruis*, a crane; thus, *fructus, fructuis, fructui, fructue; fructues, fructuum, fructuibus, fructues, fructues, fructui-bus* that all the caſes are contracted, except the dative ſingular, and plural. There are ſome examples of the genitive in *uis* yet ex-, on the contrary, there are ſeveral of the dative in *u*.

Sed name IESUS *declined:*	Domus, *a houſe*, fem. *is thus declined:*	
	Sing.	*Plur.*
IESUS,	*Nom.* dŏmus,	*Nom.* domus,
IESU,	*Gen.* domûs, *v.* -mi,	*Gen.* domōrum, *v.* -uum,
IESU,	*Dat.* domui, *v.* -mo,	*Dat.* domĭbus,
IESUM,	*Acc.* domum,	*Acc.* domos, *v.* -us,
IESU,	*Voc.* domus,	*Voc.* domus,
IESU.	*Abl.* domo.	*Abl.* domibus.

5. That the genitive *domi* is only uſed when it ſignifies, *At home;* dative is found in Horace, Epiſt. i. 10. 13.

Quinta Declinatio.

1. Quomodo dignoſcitur declinatio?

2. Per genitivum et dati-ſingularem in *ei.*

3. Quot habet terminatio-

4. Unam, nempe, *es;* ut,

The Fifth Declenſion.

M. How is the fifth declen-ſion known?

S. By the genitive and da-tive ſingular in ei.

M. How many terminations hath it?

S. One, namely, es; *as,*

Res, *a thing*, fem.

Hæc res, *a thing.*

Sing.	*Plur.*
Nom. res,	*Nom.* res,
Gen. rei,	*Gen.* rērum,
Dat. rei,	*Dat.* rēbus,
Acc. rem,	*Acc.* res,
Voc. res,	*Voc.* res,
Abl. re.	*Abl.* rebus.

Hic aut hæc dies, *a day.*

Sing.	*Plur*
Nom. dies,	*Nom.* die
Gen. diēi,	*Gen.* diē
Dat. diei,	*Dat.* diē
Acc. diem,	*Acc.* die
Voc. dies,	*Voc.* die
Abl. die.	*Abl.* die

Nouns of the fifth declenſion are not above fifty; and are all femi except *dies*, a day, maſculine or feminine, and *meridies*, the mid or noon, maſculine.

Note. *Dies* with the orators is moſt frequently maſculine; but it ſignifies *a long time*, it is generally with the poets feminine. plural it is always maſculine.

All nouns of this declenſion end in *ies*, except three; *fides*, faith hope; and *res*.

And all nouns in *ies* are of the fifth, except theſe four; *abies*, a fir *aries*, a ram; *paries*, a wall; and *quies*, reſt; which are of the third

Moſt nouns of this declenſion want the genitive, dative, and ab plural, and many of them want the plural altogether.

General Remarks on all the Declenſions.

1. The genitive plural of the firſt four is ſometimes contracted, cially by poets; as, *cœlicolûm*, *deûm*, *menſûm*, *currûm*; for *cœlico deorum*, *menſium*, *curruum*.

2. When the genitive of the ſecond ends in *ii*, the laſt *i* is ſom taken away by poets; as, *Tugurî* for *Tugurii*. We read alſo *aulai*, for *aulæ*, *pictæ*, in the firſt, and *fide* for *fidei* in the genitive, and times in the dative of the fifth; and ſo of other like words.

Moreover the moſt ancient authors, in imitation of the Greeks, alſo *as* in the genitive ſingular of the firſt declenſion, inſtead of *vias* for *viæ*. Nay, the compounds of *familia* ſtill retain this *as*; more frequently find *pater-familias*, the maſter of a family; *mater-fa* the miſtreſs of it, than *pater-familiæ*, &c.

Declinatio Adjectivorum.

Adjectiva ſunt vel primæ et ſecundæ declinationis, vel tertiæ tantùm.

Omnia adjectiva habentia tres terminationes (præter (*a*) undecim) ſunt primæ et ſecundæ; at quæ unam vel duas terminationes habent, ſunt tertiæ.

The Declenſion of Adjec

Adjectives are either o first and ſecond declenſio of the third only.

All adjectives having terminations (except (a) e are of the firſt and ſec but thoſe which have one o terminations, are of the t

(*a*) Viz. *acer*, *alacer*, *celer*, *celeber*, *ſaluber*, *volucer*, *campeſter*, e *pedeſter*, *paluſter*, *ſilveſter*; which are of the third, and have thei culine in *er* or *ris*, their feminine in *ris*, and neuter in *re*.

Adjectiva primæ et ſecundæ habent maſculinum in *us*, (*b*) *er*; fœmininum ſemper in a, neutrum ſemper in *um*;

Adjectives of the firſt and ſecond have their maſculine in us, (*b*) *or* er; *their feminine always in* a, *and their neuter always in* um; *as*,

bonus, bona, bonum, good; *Tener, tenera, tenerum*, tender.

Bonus, bona, bonum, *good*.

Sing.				*Plur.*		
bŏn-us,	-a,	-um,	*Nom.*	bon-i,	-æ,	-a,
bon-i,	-æ,	-i,	*Gen.*	bon-ōrum,	-ārum,	-ōrum,
bon-o,	-æ,	-o,	*Dat.*	bon-is,	-is,	-is,
bon-um,	-am,	-um,	*Acc.*	bon-os,	-as,	-a,
bon-e,	-a,	-um,	*Voc.*	bon-i,	-æ,	-a,
bon-o,	-a,	-o.	*Abl.*	bon-is,	-is,	-is.

Tener, tenĕra, tenĕrum, *tender*.

Sing.				*Plur.*		
tĕn-er,	-ĕra,	-ĕrum,	*N.*	ten-eri,	-eræ,	-era,
ten-eri,	-eræ,	-eri,	*G.*	ten erōrum,	-erārum,	-erōrum,
ten-ero,	-eræ,	-ero,	*D.*	ten-eris,	-eris,	-eris,
ten-erum,	-eram,	-erum,	*A.*	ten-eros,	-eras,	-era,
ten-er,	-era,	-erum,	*V.*	ten-eri,	-eræ,	-era,
ten-ero,	-era,	-ero.	*A.*	ten-eris,	-eris,	-eris.

Adjectives are declined as three ſubſtantives of the ſame terminations declenſions: as, in the examples above, *bonus*, like *dominus*; *tener*, *ener*; *bona* and *tenera*, like *penna*; *bonum* and *tenerum*, like *regnum*. erefore the ancients, as is clear from Varro, lib. 3. *De Anal.* declined gender ſeparately, and not all three jointly, as we now commonly And perhaps it may not be amiſs to follow this method at firſt, eſ- ally if the boy is of a ſlow capacity.

adjectives in *er*, ſome retain the *e*; as, *tener*. So *aſper*, *-ĕra*, *-ĕrum*, ſharp; *exter*, *-ĕra*, *-ĕrum*, foreign; *gibber*, *-ĕra*, *-ĕrum*, crook- ed; *Iber*, *-ĕri*, and *-ēris*, a Spaniard; *lacer*, *-ĕra*, *-ĕrum*, torn; *līber*, *-ĕrum*, free; *miſer*, *-ĕra*, *-ĕrum*, wretched The compounds in *ger* and laniger, *-ĕra*, *-ĕrum*, that bears wool; *opifer*, *-ĕra*, *-ĕrum*, that brings others loſe it; as, *pulcher*, *-chra*, *-chrum*, beautiful; *niger*, *nigra*, *-grum*, black; but *dexter*, right, has *-ĕra*, *-ĕrum*, and *-tra*, *-trum*.

ſe following adjectives, *unus*, one; *totus*, whole; *ſolus*, alone; *ul- us*, any; *nullus*, none; *alius*, another of many; *alter*, another, or one of neuter, neither; *uter*, whether; with its compounds, *uterque*, both; *uterlibet*, *utervis*, which of the two you pleaſe; *alteruter*, the one or the have their genitive ſingular in *ius* and dative in *i*. See p. 19.

The ancients declined *unus*, &c. as other adjectives of the firſt econd declenſion; we even find *Mihi ſolæ ridiculo fuit* in Terence.

For *ſatur*, full, was of old *ſaturus*.

Adjectiva tertiæ declinationis. | Adjectives of the third declension.

1. *Unius terminationis.* | 1. Of one termination.

Felix, *happy.*

Sing.			*Plur.*		
N. fēl-ix,	-ix,	-ix,	*N.* fel-ices,	-ices,	-icia
G. fel-īcis,	-icis,	-icis,	*G.* fel-icium,	-icium,	-iciu
D. fel-ici,	-ici,	-ici,	*D.* fel-icĭbus,	-icibus,	-icib
A. fel-icem,	-icem,	-ix,	*A.* fel-ices,	-ices,	-icia
V. fel-ix,	-ix,	-ix,	*V.* fel-ices,	-ices,	-icia
A. fel-ice, *vel* -ici, *&c.*			*A.* fel-icibus,	-icibus,	-icib

2. *Duarum terminationum.* | 2. Of two terminations.

Mitis, mite, *meek.*

Sing.			*Plur.*		
N. mītis,	mitis,	mite,	*N.* mites,	mites,	mitia,
G. mitis,	mitis,	mitis,	*G.* mitium,	mitium,	mitium,
D. miti,	miti,	miti,	*D.* mitĭbus,	mitibus,	mitibus
A. mitem,	mitem,	mite,	*A.* mites,	mites,	mitia,
V. mitis,	mitis,	mite,	*V.* mites,	mites,	mitia,
A. miti,	miti,	miti.	*A.* mitibus,	mitibus,	mitibus

Mitior, mitius, *meeker.*

Sing.			*Plur.*		
N. mīti-or,	-or,	-us,	*N.* miti-ores,	-ores,	-or
G. miti-ōris,	-oris,	-oris,	*G.* miti-orum,	-orum,	-or
D. miti-ori,	-ori,	-ori,	*D.* miti-orĭbus,	-oribus,	-ori
A. miti-orem,	-orem,	-us,	*A.* miti-ores,	-ores,	-or
V. miti-or,	-or,	-us,	*V.* miti-ores,	-ores,	-or
A. miti-ore, *vel* -ori, *&c.*			*A.* miti-oribus,	-oribus,	-ori

3. *Trium terminationum.* | 3. Of three terminatio

Acer *vel* acris, acris, acre; *ſharp.*

Sing.				*Plur.*		
N. ā-cer *vel*	cris,	-cris,	-cre,	*N.* a-cres,	-cres,	-cr
G. a-cris,		-cris,	-cris,	*G.* a-crium,	-crium,	-cr
D. a-cri,		-cri,	-cri,	*D.* a-crĭbus,	-cribus,	-cr
A. a-crem,		-crem,	-cre,	*A.* a-cres,	-cres,	-cr
V. a-cer *vel*	-cris,	cris,	-cre,	*V.* a-cres,	-cres,	-cr
A. a-cri,		-cri,	-cri.	*A.* a-cribus,	-cribus,	-cr

REGULÆ.

1. Adjectiva tertiæ declinationis habent *e* vel *i* in ablativo singulari.

2. At si neutrum sit in *e*, genitivus habet *i* tantùm.

3. Genitivus pluralis desinit in *ium*; et neutrum nominativi, accusativi, et vocativi, in *ia*.

4. Excipe comparativa, et vetus, quæ *um* et *a* postulant.

RULES.

1. *Adjectives of the third declension have* e *or* i *in the ablative singular.*

2. *But if the neuter be in* e, *the ablative has* i *only.* †

† The poets have sometimes *e*; as, *Specie cœleste resumptâ*, Ov.

3. *The genitive plural ends in* ium; *and the neuter of the nominative, accusative, and vocative, in* ia.

4. *Except comparatives, and* vetus, *old, which require* um *and* a.

MORE EXCEPTIONS.

Cælebs, unmarried; the compounds of *potis*, able, i. e. *potens*, (viz. that hath his desire; and *impos*, that hath not his desire); *dives*, rich; foreign, strange; *pauper*, poor; *pubes*, marriageable; *impubes*, unmarriageable; *sospes*, safe; *superstes*, surviving: also the compounds of *corpus*, and *pes*; *concolor*, of the same colour; *tricorpor*, three-bodied; *tripes*, three-footed; have *e*, not *i*, in the ablative.

Adjectives taken substantively retain the ablative of these adjectives; *bipennis*, *molaris*, *triremis*, have *i*. Also the names of months, *Aprilis*, *ember*, &c. *Quintilis*, and *Sextilis*, keep *i*. But *rudis*, a rod given to gladiators upon their discharge; *juvenis*, a young man; and proper names, *Clemens*, *Nobilis*, &c.; likewise nouns in *il*, *x*, *ceps*, and *ns*; as, *vigil*, a watchman; *index*, a discoverer; *senex*, an old man; *artifex*, an artificer; *nutrix*, a nurse; *princeps*, a prince; *particeps*, a partaker; *adolescens*, a youth; *infans*, an infant; *serpens*, a serpent; *torrens*, a brook, have only *e*: but *tridens*, Neptune's three-forked sceptre, has *tridente* or *tridenti*.

Some adjectives in *is*, (especially those that have relation to men), used substantively, have sometimes *e*, but oftener *i*, in the ablative; *familiaris*, a friend; *natalis*, a birth-day; *rivalis*, a rival; *sodalis*, a companion; *volucris*, a bird.

Note 1. These adjectives of one termination have seldom the neuter singular, and generally want the neuter in the nominative, accusative, and vocative, plural, viz.

Adjectives in *er*; as, *celer*, *degener*, *pauper*, *uber*.

-fex; *artifex*, *carnifex*.

-or; *memor*, *concolor*, *bicorpor*.

-es; *ales*, *deses*, *dives*, *hebes*, *præpes*, *reses*, *sospes*, *superstes*, *teres*.

-us; *compos*, *impos*, *exos*; and also *comis*, *inops*, *intercus*, *pubes*, *impubes*, *redux*, *sons*, *insons*, *supplex*, *vigil*; and perhaps more.

Memor has *memori*; *par*, *pari*: but its compounds have *e* or *i*; *dispar*, &c. *-e* or *-i*.

Plus (which hath only the neuter in the singular) has *plūre*; and

plures, *plura*, (ſometimes *pluria*), *plurium*: ſo *complūres*, *complūra*, -*ia*, -*ium*.

4. Comparatives, participles, and adjectives in *ns*, have more quently *e* than *i*; and participles in the ablative called *abſolute*, generally *e*; as, *Romulo regnante*, not -*i*.

5. Adjectives joined with ſubſtantives neuter, hardly ever have *e*, b as, *victrici ferro*, not -*e*.

Exceptions in the genitive plural, which have *um*, are, *celer*, ſw *conſors*, that hath the ſame lot; *inops*, poor; *memor*, mindful; *mugil* mullet; *pugil*, a champion; *ſupplex*, ſuppliant; *uber*, fruitful; *v* alſo the compounds of *capio*, *caput*, *facio*, and *genus*; as, *particeps*, partal of; *præceps*, forward, headlong; *artifex*, artificial; *degener*, unworth his anceſtors, degenerating; *celerum*, *conſortum*, &c.

The genitive ſingular of adjectives will be found under their reſpe terminations in the third declenſion.

Of NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

1. The ordinal and multiplicative numbers (ſee chap. ix.) are regu declined. The diſtributive want the ſingular; as doth alſo the cardi except *unus*, which is declined as in p. 27; and hath the plural, w joined with a ſubſtantive that wanteth the ſingular; as, *una litera*, letter; *una mœnia*, one wall; *unæ ſcalæ*, one ladder, Cæſ.: or when ſe particulars are conſidered complexly as having one compound; as, *ſex dies*, i. e. one ſpace of ſix days; *una veſtimenta*, i. e. one ſuit of a rel. *Plaut.*

Duo and *tres* are declined after this manner.

	Plur.				*Plur.*		
Nom.	duo,	duæ,	duo,	*Nom.*	tres,	tres,	tria,
Gen.	duōrum,	duārum,	duorum,	*Gen.*	trium,	trium,	trium,
Dat.	duōbus,	duābus,	duobus,	*Dat.*	trībus,	trībus,	tribus,
Acc.	duos *vel* -o,	duas,	duo,	*Acc.*	tres,	tres,	tria,
Voc.	duo,	duæ,	duo,	*Voc.*	tres,	tres,	tria,
Abl.	duobus,	duabus,	duobus.	*Abl.*	tribus,	tribus,	tribus.

Ambo, both, is declined as *duo*.

2. From *quatuor* to *centum* are all indeclinable.

3. From *centum* to *mille* they are declined thus: *ducenti*, *ducenta*, *d ta*; *ducentorum*, *ducentarum*, *ducentorum*, &c.

4. As to *mille*, Varro, and all the grammarians after him down t laſt age, make it (when it is put before a genitive plural) a ſubſta indeclinable in the ſingular, and in the plural declined, *millia*, *mil millibus*; but when it hath a ſubſtantive joined to it in any other they make it an adjective plural indeclinable. But Scioppius, and him Gronovius, contend, that *mille* is always an adjective plural; and der that termination, of all caſes and genders: but that it hath two neu *hæc mille*, and *hæc millia*; that the firſt is uſed when one thouſand i nified, and the ſecond when more than one; and that where it ſeem be a ſubſtantive governing a genitive, *multitudo*, *numerus*, *manus*, *pec pondus*, *ſpatium*, *corpus*, or the like, are underſtood. I own, that for ly I was of this ſentiment; but now the weighty reaſons adduce the moſt accurate Perizonius incline me rather to follow the ancient g marians.

Of IRREGULAR NOUNS.

THESE (for we cannot here make a full enumeration of them) may be reduced to the following ſcheme.

- **1. DEFECTIVE.**
  - 1. Subſtantives.
    - Wanting
      - 1. *Number*, { Sing.; as, *liberi, minæ, arma.* / Plur.; as, *aër, humus, ævum.*
      - 2. *Caſes*, { Nom. and Voc. Sing. as, *ditionis.* / Gen. Sing. as, *chaos.* / Dat. Sing. as, *plus.* / Voc. Sing. as, *ego.* / Gen. Dat. and Abl. plural; as, *mel.*
    - or having only { Three; as, *dica, dicam, dicas.* / Two; as, *ſuppetiæ, ſuppetias.* / One; as, *dicis, inficias, noctu.*
  - 2. Adjectives.
    - Wanting
      - 1. *Gender*, { Maſc.; as, *cætera, cæterum.* / Fem.; as, *quiſquis, quicquid.* / Neut; as, *compos.* / Maſc. and Fem.; as, *plus.* / Maſc. and Neut.; as, *Sicelis.* / Fem. and Neut.; as, *Tros.*
      - 2. *Number*, { Plur.; as, *unuſquiſque.* / Sing.; as, *centum.*
      - 3. *Caſe*, { Voc.; as, *nullus.* / Dat. and Abl.; as, *tantundem.*
    - or having the - - Voc. only; as, *mactè, macti.*
- **2. VARIABLE.**
  - 1. Too much.
    - In *Gender* having *Sing.* and *Plur.*
      - Maſc. / Neut.; as, *Manalus, Manala.*
      - Maſc. / Maſc. and Neut.; as, *locus, -ci,* and *-ca.*
      - Fem. / Neut.; as, *carbaſus, carbaſa.*
      - Neut. / Maſc.; as, *cœlum, cœli.*
      - Neut. / Fem.; as, *epulum, epulæ.*
      - Neut. / Maſc. and Neut.; as, *frenum, -ni,* and *-na.*
    - In *Declenſion* being of the
      - 2. and 1.; as, *delicium, deliciæ.*
      - 2. and 4.; as, *laurus, -ri,* and *-rus.*
      - 3. and 2.; as, *vas, -ſis; -ſa, -ſorum.*
  - 2. Too little, as, *Indeclinables*, { altogether; as, *fas.* / in the ſing.; as, *cornu.*
- **3. REDUNDANT.**
  - In *Termination* - { only; as, *Helena, Helene.* / and gender; as, *tonitrus, tonitru.* / and decl.; as, *materia, materies.* / gend. and decl.; as, *æther, æthra.*
  - In *Gender* - - - only; as, *hic et hoc vulgus.*
  - In *Declenſion* - { only; as, *fames, famis,* of the 3d; ablative, *fame,* of the 5th, becauſe the laſt ſyllable is always long with the poets.

Note, 1. That the *Defective* nouns are not ſo numerous as is comm
ly believed.

Note, 2. That thoſe which vary too little, may be ranked under
Defective; and thoſe which vary too much, under the *Redundant*;
cæli, *cælorum*, comes not from *cælum*, but from *cælus*; and *vaſa*, *vaſ*
not from *vas*, *vaſis*, but from *vaſum*, *vaſi*: but cuſtom, which
gives laws to all languages, has dropt the ſingular, and retained
plural; and ſo of others.

De Comparatione.

M. Quot ſunt gradus comparationis?

D. Tres; poſitivus, comparativus, et ſuperlativus.

M. Quotæ declinationis ſunt hi gradus?

D. Poſitivus eſt adjectivum primæ et ſecundæ declinationis, vel tertiæ tantùm; comparativus eſt ſemper tertiæ; ſuperlativus ſemper primæ et ſecundæ.

M. Unde formatur comparativus gradus?

D. A proximo caſu poſitivi in *i*, addendo pro maſculino et fœminino ſyllabam *or*, et *us* pro neutro; *ut*,

Of Compariſon.

M. How many degrees compariſon are there?

S. Three; the poſitive, c parative, and ſuperlative.

M. Of what declenſion theſe degrees?

S. The poſitive is an a tive of the firſt and ſecond clenſion, or of the third only; comparative is always of third; the ſuperlative al of the firſt and ſecond.

M. Whence is the comp tive degree formed?

S. From the next caſe o poſitive in i, *by adding for maſculine and feminine the lable* or, *and* us *for the ter;* as,

Doctus, learned, gen. *docti*, *doctior*, et *doctius*, more le
ed; *mitis*, meek, dat. *miti*, *mitior*, et *mitius*, more mee

M. Unde formatur ſuperlativus?

D. 1. Si poſitivus deſinat in *er*, ſuperlativus formatur addendo *rĭmus*; ut,

M. Whence is the ſupe tive formed?

S. 1. *If the poſitive en* er, *the ſuperlative is fo by adding* rimus; *as*,

Pulcher, fair, *pulcherrimus*, moſt fair; *pauper*, poor,
perrimus, moſt poor.

2. Si poſitivus non deſinat in *er*, ſuperlativus formatur a proximo caſu in *i*, addendo *-ſĭmus*; ut,

2. *If the poſitive ends in* er, *the ſuperlative is f ed from the next caſe in adding* -ſſimus; *as*,

Gen. *docti*, *doctiſſimus*, moſt learned; dat. *miti*, *mitiſſi*
moſt meek.

y grammatical Comparison we underſtand three adjective nouns, hich the two laſt are formed from the firſt, and import compariſon it, that is, heightening or leſſening of its ſignification.
onſequently thoſe adjectives only which are capable of having their ification increaſed or diminiſhed, can be compared.
he Positive ſignifies the quality of a thing ſimply and abſolutely; *durus*, hard; *parvus*, little.
he Comparative, heightens or leſſens that quality; as, *durior*, er; *minor*, leſs.
he Superlative heightens or leſſens it to a very high or very low ee; as, *duriſſimus*, hardeſt, *or* moſt hard; *minimus*, very little, *or* leaſt.
he poſitive hath various terminations; the comparative ends always and *us*; the ſuperlative always in *mus*, *ma*, *mum*.
The poſitive, properly ſpeaking, is no degree of compariſon, for it not compare things together: however, it is accounted one, becauſe ther two are founded upon and formed from it.]
he ſign of the comparative in our language is the ſyllable *er* added adjective, or the word *more* put before it.
he ſign of the ſuperlative is the ſyllable *eſt* added to an adjective, or words *very* or *moſt* put before it.
te. Monoſyllables are, for the moſt part, compared by *er* and *eſt*, iſſyllables by *more* and *moſt*; as, *mild*, *milder*, *mildeſt*; *frugal*, *frugal*, *moſt frugal*. Diſſyllables ending in *y*; as, *happy*, *lovely*, (but the *y* is changed into *i*); and in *le*; as, *able*, *ample*; or accented he laſt ſyllable; as, *diſcrete*, *polite*, eaſily admit of *er* and *eſt*. Words re than two ſyllables hardly ever have theſe terminations. In ſome words the ſuperlative is formed by adding the adverb *moſt* to the of them; as, *nethermoſt*, *uttermoſt* or *utmoſt*, *undermoſt*, *uppermoſt*, *ſt*.
he Latin comparative is ſometimes made by *magis* and the ſu- ive by *valde* or *maxime*, put before the poſitive. And theſe are par- ly uſed, when the poſitive ends in *us* with a vowel before it; as, godly; *arduus*, high; *idoneus*, fit; though not always.

Irregular Comparisons.

Bonus,	melior,	optimus,	*Good*,	*better*,	*beſt*.
Malus,	pejor,	peſſimus,	*Bad*,	*worſe*,	*worſt*.
Magnus,	major,	maximus,	*Great*,	*greater*,	*greateſt*.
Parvus,	minor,	minimus,	*Little*,	*leſs*,	*leaſt*.

lus, plurimus; multa, plurima; multum, plus, plurimum, *much*, *more*, *moſt*.
Facilis, *eaſy*; humilis, *low*; ſimilis, *like*, make their ſuperlative by ing it into *limus*; thus, *facillimus*, *humillimus*, *ſimillimus*.
xter, outward; *citer*, hither; *ſuperus*, above; *inferus*, below; *us*, behind; *vetus*, old; and *maturus*, ripe, have regular compara- ; but their ſuperlatives are, *extremus*, (or *extimus*), uttermoſt; *citimus*, moſt; *ſupremus*, (or *ſummus*), uppermoſt, higheſt, laſt; *infimus*, (or loweſt; *poſtremus*, (or *poſtumus*) lateſt or laſt; *veterrimus*; *maturrimus*, metimes *maturiſſimus*: *nequam*, naughty, has *nequior*, *nequiſſimus*, as *nequus*.
Compounds in *dicus*, *loquus*, *ficus*, and *volus*, have *entior* and *entiſſimus*; *ledicus*, one that raileth; *magniloquus*, one that boaſteth; *beneficus*, ficent; *malevolus*, malevolent. But theſe ſeem rather to come from

participles or nouns in *ens*. Beſides, the comparatives and ſuperl of adjectives derived from *loquor* and *facio* are very rare; and Terenc *mirificiſſimus*; and Plautus has *mendaciloquius*.

5. *Prior*, former, has *primus*, firſt; *ulterior*, farther; *ultimus*, farth laſt; *propior*, nearer, *proximus*, neareſt, or next; *ocior*, ſwifter, *oci* ſwifteſt; *deterior*, worſe, *deterrimus*; *interior*, more inward, *intimus*; poſitives being out of uſe, or quite wanting.

6 There are alſo a great many other adjectives capable of having ſignification increaſed, which yet want one or more of theſe degr compariſon; as, *ingens*, great, *ingentior*; *ſatur*, full, *ſaturior*; *dur* laſting, *-ior*; *adoleſcens*, *adoleſcentior*; *ſenex*, *ſenior*, *juvenis*, *junior*; inclined, *pronior*; *opimus*, rich, full, *opimior*: and almoſt all nou *-ālis*, *-bĭlis*, and *-īlis*; as, *regalis*, like a king, *regalior*; *flebilis*, lamen *flebilior*; *exilis*, ſmall, *exilior*: and many others; as, *arcanus*, ſecre *canior*; *declivis*, bending downward, *declivior*; *longinquus*, far off, *quior*; *propinquus*, near, *propinquior*, without the ſuperlative: *ſacer*, *ſacerrimus*; *nuperus*, late, *nuperrimus*; *meritus*, deſerving, *meritiſſimus* equal, *pariſſimus*; *novus*, new, *noviſſimus*, laſt; *invictus*, invincib *victiſſimus*; *perſuaſus*, perſuaded, *perſuaſiſſimus*; *inclytus*, renowned, *tiſſimus*, without the comparative: *anterior*, former; *ſatior*, but mo quently *ſatius*, better; and *ſequior*, worſe, without poſitive and ſu tive.

7. Theſe have no degree of compariſon; *almus*, gracious; mindful; *mirus*, wonderful; *egenus*, needy; *lacer*, torn; *degener*, d rating; *conſonus*, of like ſound, agreeable, &c.: likewiſe nouns *us* pure, *ĭcus*, *īnus*, *ĕvus* *ĭmus*, and *ōrus*, with many others.

[Theſe three degrees of compariſon, being nothing elſe but thre tinct adjectives, may be declined either ſeverally each by itſelf, or ly together, reſpect ſtill being had to their declenſions. But the fir is much eaſier, and will anſwer all the purpoſes of compariſon as the other.]

Almoſt all adverbs which come from nouns that are compare compared themſelves; as, *doctè*, *doctiùs*, *doctiſſimè*; *feliciter*, *felici ciſſimè*. Their poſitive ends for the moſt part in *è* and *ter*; as, *dur ter*: the comparative in *iùs*; as, *duriùs*, *acriùs*: and the ſuperlat *imè*; as, *duriſſimè*, *acerrimè*.

Poſitives which come from nouns irregularly compared, have ſelves an irregular compariſon; as, *benè*, *meliùs*, *optimè*; *malè*, *pej ſimè*; *parùm*, *minùs*, *minimè*, and *minimùm*; *multùm*, *plùs*, *plurimùm* *prè*, *propiùs*, *proximè*.

Theſe want the poſitive; *magis*, *maximè*; *ociùs*, *ociſſimè*; *priùs*, and *primùm* *potiùs*, *potiſſimùm*.

Theſe want the comparative; *penè*, *peniſſimè*; *novè*, *noviſſimè*.

Theſe want the ſuperlative; *excuſatè*, *excuſatiùs*; *ſecùs*, *ſeciùs*, *quiùs*, and perhaps more.

CAP. II.

De Pronomine.

Quot ſunt pronomina † ſimplicia ?

Octodecim ; *ego, tu, ſui; ipſe, iſte, hic, is, quis, meus, tuus, ſuus, noſter, ; noſtras, veſtras,* et *cu-*

Ex his tria ſunt ſubſtan- *ego, tu, ſui ;* reliqua decim ſunt adjectiva.

CHAP. II.

Of Pronoun.

M. HOW *many* †- *ſimple pronouns are there ?*

S. Eighteen; ego, tu, ſui ; ille, ipſe, iſte, hic, is, quis, qui ; meus, tuus, ſuus, noſter, veſter ; noſtras, veſtras, *and* cujas.

¶ *Of theſe three are ſubſtantives*, ego, tu, ſui ; *the other fifteen are adjectives.*

Ego, *I.*

Sing.		*Plur.*
ĕgo, *I*	*Nom.*	nos, *we*,
mei, *of me*,	*Gen.*	noſtrûm *vel* noſtri, *of us*,
mihi, *to me*,	*Dat.*	nōbis, *to us*,
me, *me*,	*Acc.*	nos, *us*,
——	*Voc.*	——
me, *with me :*	*Abl.*	nobis, *with us.*

Tu, *thou.*

Sing.		*Plur.*
tu, *thou*,		*Nom.* vos, *ye*, [*you*],
tui, *of thee*,		*Gen.* veſtrûm *vel* veſtri, *of you*,
tĭbi, *to thee*,	or *you.*	*Dat.* vōbis, *to you*,
te, *thee*,		*Acc.* vos, *you*,
tu, *O thou*,		*Voc.* vos, *O ye*, [*you*],
te, *with thee :*		*Abl.* vobis, *with you.*

Sui, *of himſelf, of herſelf, of itſelf.*

Sing.		*Plur.*
——	*Nom.*	——
ſui, *of himſelf*, &c.	*Gen.*	ſui, *of themſelves*,
ſĭbi, *to himſelf*,	*Dat.*	ſibi, *to themſelves*,
ſe, *himſelf*,	*Acc.*	ſe, *themſelves*,
——	*Voc.*	——
ſe, *with himſelf :*	*Abl.*	ſe, *with themſelves.*

† Pronoun is an irregular kind of noun : or, it is a part of ſpeech that has reſpect to, and ſupplies the place of a noun; as, inſtead of name, I ſay, *tu*, thou *or* you; inſtead of *Jacobus fecit*, James did it, ſay, *ille fecit*, he did it, viz. James.

See chap. ix.

Note, 1. That the dative *mihi* is ſometimes by the poets contra into *mî*.

Note, 2. That of old, the genitive plural of *ego* was *noſtrorum* and *ſtrarum*; of *tu*, *veſtrorum* and *veſtrarum*, (of which there are ſeveral amples in Plautus and Terence), which were afterwards contracted *noſtrûm* and *veſtrûm*.

Note, 3. That we uſe *noſtrûm* and *veſtrûm* after numerals, partiti comparatives, and ſuperlatives, and *noſtri* and *veſtri* after other no and verbs; though there want not ſome examples of theſe laſt wit *ſtrûm* and *veſtrûm*, even in Cicero himſelf, as Voſſius ſhews.

Ille, illa, illud; *he*, *ſhe*, *that* or *it*.

	Sing.				*Plur.*		
Nom.	ille,	illa,	illud,	*Nom.*	illi,	illæ,	illa,
Gen.	illius,	illius,	illius,	*Gen.*	illōrum,	illārum,	illoru
Dat.	illi,	illi,	illi,	*Dat.*	illis,	illis,	illis,
Acc.	illum,	illam,	illud,	*Acc.*	illos,	illas,	illa,
Voc.	ille,	illa,	illud,	*Voc.*	illi,	illæ,	illa,
Abl.	illo,	illa,	illo:	*Abl.*	illis,	illis.	illis.

Ipſe, ipſa, ipſum, *he himſelf*, *ſhe herſelf*, *itſelf*; and iſta, iſtud, *he*, *ſhe*, *that*, are declined as *ille*; ſave only *ipſe* hath *ipſum* in the nominative, accuſative, and voca ſingular, neuter.

Hic, hæc, hoc, *this*.

	Sing.				*Plur.*		
Nom.	hic,	hæc,	hoc,	*Nom.*	hi,	hæ,	hæ
Gen.	hūjus,	hujus,	hujus,	*Gen.*	hōrum,	hārum,	hor
Dat.	huic,	huic,	huic,	*Dat.*	his,	his,	his
Acc.	hunc,	hanc,	hoc,	*Acc.*	hos,	has,	hæ
Voc.	hic,	hæc,	hoc,	*Voc.*	hi,	hæ,	hæ
Abl.	hoc,	hāc,	hoc:	*Abl.*	his,	his,	his

Is, ea, id; *he*, *ſhe*, *it* or *that*.

	Sing.				*Plur.*		
Nom.	is,	ea,	id,	*Nom.*	ii,	eæ,	ea,
Gen.	ejus,	ejus,	ejus,	*Gen.*	eōrum,	eārum,	eorum
Dat.	ei,	ei,	ei,	*Dat.*	iis, *vel* eis,		
Acc.	eum,	eam,	id,	*Acc.*	eos,	eas,	ea,
Voc.	———			*Voc.*	———		
Abl.	eo,	ea,	eo:	*Abl.*	iis, *vel* eis.		

Quis, quæ, quod *vel* quid? *who, which, what?*

Sing.				*Plur.*		
quis,	quæ,	quod *vel* quid,	*N.* qui,	quæ,	quæ,	
cujus,	cujus,	cujus,	*G.* quōrum,	quārum,	quorum,	
cui,	cui,	cui,	*D.* queis, *vel*	quibus,		
quem,	quam,	quod *vel* quid,	*A.* quos,	quas,	quæ,	
—	—		*V.* —	—		
quo,	qua,	quo:	*A.* queis, *vel*	quibus.		

Qui, quæ, quod; *who, which, that.*

Sing.				*Plur.*		
qui,	quæ,	quod,	*N.* qui,	quæ,	quæ,	
cujus	cujus,	cujus,	*G.* quōrum,	quārum,	quorum,	
cui,	cui,	cui,	*D.* queis, *vel*	quibus,		
quem,	quam,	quod,	*A.* quos,	quas,	quæ,	
—	—		*V.* —	—		
quo,	qua,	quo:	*A.* queis, *vel*	quibus.		

Meus, my *or* mine; *tuus*, thy *or* thine; *ſuus*, his own, her own, its own, their own, are declined like *bonus*, *-a*, *-um*; *noſter*, our, *or* ours; *veſter*, your, *or* yours, like *pulcher*, *-chra*, *-chrum*, of the firſt and ſecond declenſion. But *meus*, *ſuus*, and *veſter*, want the vocative; *noſter* and *meus* have it, in which this laſt hath *mi*, (and ſometimes *meus*) in the maſculine ſingular.

Noſtras, of our country; *veſtras*, of your country; *cujas*, of what *or* which country? are declined like *felix*, of the 3rd declenſion, genitive *noſtratis*, dative *noſtrati*, &c.

Note, 1. That all nouns and pronouns which one cannot call upon, or addreſs himſelf unto, want the vocative. In conſequence of which there are many nouns, as, *nullus*, *nemo*, *qualis*, *quantus*, *quot*, &c. and ſeveral pronouns, as, *ego*, *ſui*, *quis*, &c. want the vocative; but not ſo many, either of the one or the other, as is commonly taught. For which reaſon we have given vocatives to *ille*, *ipſe*, *hic*, and *idem*, therein following the judgement of the great Voſſius, Meſſ. de Port Royal, and Johnſon, which they ſupport by the following authorities.

Eſto nunc, Sol, teſtis, et hæc mihi terra precanti. Virg. Æn. 12.

Tu mihi libertas illa paterna vale. Tibul. lib. 1. el. 4.

O nox illa, quæ pene æternas huic urbi tenebras attuliſti. Cic. pro Flacc.

And the vocative of *idem* ſeems to be confirmed by that of Ovid, Met. 15.

——— *quique fuiſti*
Hippolytus, dixit, nunc idem Virbius eſto.

Though all authors before them will only allow four pronouns, viz. *tu*, *ego*, *noſter*, and *noſtras*, to have the vocative.

Note, 2. That *qui* is ſometimes uſed for *quis*; as, Cic. *Qui tantus fuit?* Ter. *Qui erit rumor populi, ſi id feceris?*

Note, 3. That *quod*, with its compounds, *aliquod*, *quodvis*, *qu* &c. are uſed when they agree with a ſubſtantive in the ſame caſe; with its compounds, *aliquid*, *quidvis*, *quiddam*, &c. either have no ſu tive expreſſed, or govern one in the genitive: whence it is that the are commonly reckoned ſubſtantives. But that *quid*, as well as *q* originally an adjective, its ſignification plainly ſhews; otherwiſe we make *multum*, *plus*, *tantum*, *quantum*, &c. alſo ſubſtantives, when govern the genitive; which yet moſt grammarians agree to be adje having the common word *negotium* underſtood.

Note, 4. That *qui* the relative hath oftentimes *qui* in the ablative that (which is remarkable) in all genders and numbers, as Mr John vinces by a great many examples out of Plautus and Terence; to he might have added one out of C. Nepos, iii. 3.

Note, 5. That *noſtras*, *veſtras*, and *cujas*, are declined like gent national nouns in *as* of the third declenſion, in imitation of which are formed; as, *Arpinas*, *Fidenas*, *Privernas*, a man, woman, *or* of *or* belonging to the towns of Arpinum, Fidenæ, or Privernum may have the neuter as well as theſe; (for as Cic. has *Iter Arpina* Liv. *Bellum Privernas*; ſo Colum. has *Arbuſtum noſtras*, and Cic. *tia verba*), contrary to what Linacer teaches.

[I paſs over taking notice, that in old authors, eſpecially Plautu find *quis* and *quiſquis* ſometimes of the feminine gender; *mis* and *mei* and *tui*; *biſce* for *hi*; *hibus*, *ibus*, for *his*, *iis*; *illæ*, *ipſæ*, *iſtæ*, in the genitive or dative ſingular feminine; *em* for *eum*; *iſtes* for *quoius*, *quoi*, for *cujus*, *cui*, becauſe they are extraordinary]

Of Compound Pronouns.

1. Some are compounded of *quis* and *qui*, with ſome other w ſyllable. In theſe *quis* is ſometimes the firſt and ſometimes the la of the word compounded: but *qui* is always the firſt.

1. The compounds of *quis*, when it is put firſt, are, *quiſnam*, *quiſpiam*, *quiſquam*, any one; *quiſque*, every one; *quiſquis*, whoſ which are thus declined.

Nom.			*Gen.*	*Da*
Quiſnam,	quænam,	quodnam, *vel* quidnam;	cujuſnam,	cuin
Quiſpiam,	quæpiam,	quodpiam, *vel* quidpiam;	cujuſpiam,	cuipi
Quiſquam,	quæquam,	quodquam, *vel* quidquam;	cujuſquam,	cuiqu
Quiſque,	quæque,	quodque, *vel* quidque;	cujuſque,	cuiqu
Quiſquis,	———	quidquid, *vel* quicquid;	cujuſcujus,	cuicu

And ſo forth in their other caſes, according to the ſimple *quis*. Bu *quis* has no feminine at all, and the neuter only in the nominati accuſative. *Quiſquam* has alſo *quicquam* for *quidquam*; accuſative *que* without the feminine. The plural is ſcarcely uſed.

2. The compounds of *quis*, when it is put laſt, are, *aliquis*, ſome *quis*, who? To which ſome add, *nequis*, *ſiquis*, and *numquis*; but are more frequently read ſeparately, *ne quis*, *ſi quis*, *num quis*. The thus declined.

Nom.			*Gen.*	*D*
Aliquis,	aliqua,	aliquod, *vel* aliquid;	alicujus,	ali
Ecquis,	ecqua, *vel* ecquæ,	ecquod, *vel* ecquid;	ecujus,	ecc
Si quis,	ſi qua,	ſi quod, *vel* ſi quid;	ſi cujus,	ſi c
Ne quis,	ne qua,	ne quod, *vel* ne quid;	ne cujus,	ne
Num quis,	num qua,	num quod, *vel* num quid;	num cujus,	nu

Note, That theſe, and only theſe, have *qua* in the nominative ſingular feminine, and nominative and accuſative plural neuter.

The compounds of *qui* are *quicunque*, whoſoever; *quidam*, ſome; *libet*, *quivis*, any one, whom you pleaſe; and are thus declined.

	Nom.		*Gen.*	*Dat.*
cunque,	quæcunque,	quodcunque;	cujuſcunque,	cuicunque.
dam,	quædam,	quoddam, *vel* quiddam;	cujuſdam,	cuidam.
libet,	quælibet,	quodlibet, *vel* quidlibet;	cujuſlibet,	cuilibet.
vis,	quævis,	quodvis, *vel* quidvis;	cujuſvis,	cuivis.

Some of theſe are twice compounded; as, *ecquiſnam*, who? *unuſquiſque*, every one. The firſt is ſcarce declined beyond its nominative, and the laſt wants the plural.

Note, 1. That all theſe compounds want the vocative, except *quiſque*, *quis*, *quilibet*, *unuſquiſque*, and perhaps ſome others. *Vid.* Voſſ. p. 335.

Note, 2. That all theſe compounds have ſeldom or never *queis*, but *quibus*, in their dative and ablative plural

Note, 3. That *quidam* hath *quendam*, *quandam*, *quoddam*, vel *quiddam*, in the accuſative ſingular, and *quorundam*, *quarundam*, *quorundam*, in the genitive plural, *n* being put inſtead of *m*, for the better ſound; as it is for the ſame reaſon in theſe caſes of *idem*.

I. Some reckon among compound pronouns, *ego*, *tu*, and *ſui*, with *met*; but in the beſt books they are generally read ſeparately; which is neceſſary, becauſe of *te ipſe* and *ſe ipſe*, where the two words are of different caſes.

II. *Is* is compounded with the ſyllable *dem*, and contracted into *idem*, the ſame; which is thus declined.

Sing.				*Plur.*		
Idem,	eadem,	ĭdem,	*Nom.*	īidem,	eædem,	eădem,
ejuſdem,	ejuſdem,	ejuſdem,	*Gen.*	eōrundem,	eārundem,	eorundem,
eidem,	eidem,	eidem,	*Dat.*	eiſdem, *vel* iiſdem,		
eundem,	eandem,	idem,	*Acc.*	eoſdem,	eaſdem,	eadem,
idem,	eadem,	idem,	*Voc.*	iidem,	eædem,	eadem,
eodem,	eadem,	eodem:	*Abl.*	eiſdem, *vel* iiſdem.		

III. Moſt of the other compound pronouns are only to be found in certain caſes and genders; as,

Of *iſte* and *hic* is compounded, nominative *iſthic*, *iſthæc*, *iſthoc*, vel *iſtic*; accuſative *iſthunc*, *iſthanc*, *iſthoc*, vel *iſthuc*; ablative *iſthoc*, *iſthac*, &c. Nominative and accuſative plural neuter, *iſthæc*.

Of *ecce* and *is* is compounded *eccum*, *eccam*; plural *eccos*, *eccas*: and of *ecce* and *ille*, *ellum*, *ellam*; *ellos*, *ellas*, in the accuſatives.

Of *modus* and *is*, *hic*, *iſte*, and *quis*, are compounded theſe genitives, *hujuſmodi*, *iſtiuſmodi*, *cujuſmodi*; and ſometimes with the ſyllable *ce* in the middle, *ejuſcemodi*, *hujuſcemodi*, &c.

Of *cum* and theſe ablatives, *me*, *te*, *ſe*, *nobis*, *vobis*, *quî*, or *quo*, and *qui*, are compounded *mecum*, *tecum*, *ſecum*, *nobiſcum*, *vobiſcum*, *quîcum*, *quocum*, and *quibuſcum*.

To theſe add ſome pronouns compounded with theſe ſyllabical adjections, *met*, *te*, *ce*, *pte*, *cine*, to make their ſignification more pointed and emphatical; as, *egomet*, *tute*, *hujuſce*, *meapte*, *hiccine*.

I cannot think that *cine* put after *hic*, &c. is a ſyllabical adjection; for *hiccine*, *hunccine*, *huccine*, *nunccine*, *ſiccine*, &c. always mark a queſtion: but *ne*, the ſign of a queſtion, being put after *hic*, *ci* is interpoſed only for the better ſound; thus, *Hiccine fecit? Nihilne eſt?*

After the declenſion of ſubſtantives and adjectives ſeparately, not be improper to exerciſe the learner with ſome examples of a tive and adjective declined together; which will both make hi ready in the declenſions, and render the dependence of the adje on the ſubſtantive more familiar to him. Let the examples at fi the ſame terminations and declenſions; as, *dominus juſtus*, a juſt lo *na bona*, a good pen; *ingenium eximium*, an excellent wit. Afterw them be different in one or both; as, *puer probus*, a good boy; *cilis*, an eaſy leſſon; *poëta optimus*, an excellent poet; *fructus dulci* fruit; *dies fauſtus*, a happy day; *eadem virgo*, the ſame virgin, &c if the boy has been taught writing, let him write them either ſchool, or at home, to be reviſed by the maſter next day.

Remarks on English Pronouns.

1. In the nominative, or *foregoing ſtate* (as the Engliſh grammari it) we uſe, *I, thou, he, ſhe, we, ye, they*, and *who:* but in the o ſes (which they name *the following ſtate*) we uſe, *me, thee, him, her, them*, and *whom*.

2. When we ſpeak of a perſon, we uſe *who* and *whom*, whether a queſtion or not; as, *Who did it? The man who did it.* But if w of a thing, with a queſtion, we uſe *what?* as, *What book is that?* out a queſtion, we uſe *which*; as, *The book which you gave me.* A it is frequently underſtood; as, *The book you gave me.*

Note, That *what* is often uſed, even without a queſtion, in *The thing which*, or *That which*; as, *I know what you deſign*, i. e. *which*, or *that which* you deſign. As, on the contrary, when it r ſome particular thing mentioned before, we make uſe of *which*, ev a queſtion; as, *Give me the book, Which book? Which of the books?*

3. *This* makes in the plural *theſe*, and *that* makes *thoſe*.

Note, That *that* is frequently uſed inſtead of *who, whom*, or *wh The man that told you, The man that we ſaw, The book that I lent you.*

4. We uſe *my, thy, her, our, your, their*, when they are joined w ſtantives, or the word *own*; and *mine, thine, hers, ours, yours, their* the ſubſtantive is left out or underſtood; as, *My book, This book* &c.

Note, That with *own*, or a ſubſtantive beginning with a vo ſometimes uſe *mine* and *thine*; as, *My eye*, or *Mine eye*; *Thy own*, *own*.

5. We often uſe *here, there, where*, compounded with theſe parti *by, upon, about, in, with*, inſtead of *this, that, which*, and *what*, wi ſame particles; as, *hereof, hereby, hereupon, hereabouts, herein, herewi of this, by this, upon this, about this place, in this, with this*, &c.

6. *Whoſe* (improperly applied to things) and *its* are genitives, of, *of whom, of it*; and it is a fault to uſe *it's* for *'tis*, or *it is*, do.

CAP. III.

De Verbo.

M. QUomodo declinatur verbum?

CHAP. III.

Of Verb.

M. HOW *is a verb ned?*

Per voces, modos, tem-
umeros, et perſonas.

Quot ſunt voces ?

Duæ; Activa et Paſ-

Quot ſunt modi ?

Quatuor; Indicativus,
ivus, Imperativus, et
us.

Quot ſunt numeri ?

Duo; Singularis et Plu-

Quot ſunt tempora ?

Quinque; Præſens, Præ-
imperfectum, Præteri-
fectum, Præteritum-
perfectum, et Futu-

Quot ſunt perſonæ ?

Tres; Prima, Secunda,

S. By voices, moods, tenſes, numbers, and perſons.

M. How many voices are there ?

S. Two; the Active and Paſſive.

M. How many moods are there ?

S. Four; Indicative, Subjunctive, Imperative, and Infinitive.

M. How many numbers are there ?

S. Two; Singular and Plural.

M. How many tenſes are there ?

S. Five; the Preſent, the Preter-imperfect, the Preter-perfect, the Preter-pluperfect, and the Future.

M. How many perſons are there ?

S. Three; Firſt, Second, Third.

s is a part of ſpeech which ſignifies to be, to do, or to ſuffer: rb is that part of ſpeech which expreſſes what is affirmed or ſaid

may be diſtinguiſhed from any other part of ſpeech theſe two 1. A verb being the moſt neceſſary and eſſential part of a ſen- ithout which it cannot ſubſiſt; whatever word with a ſubſtantive kes full ſenſe, or a ſentence, is a verb; and that which does not ſenſe with it, is not a verb. 2. Whatever word, with *he* or *it* e it, makes ſenſe, is a verb, otherwiſe not.

moſt verbs there are two forms or voices, the active, ending in *o*, paſſive, in *or*. The former expreſſes what is done by the nomi- perſon before it; the latter, what is ſuffered by or done to the e or perſon before it; as, *Amo*, I love; *Amor*, I am loved.

e Moods are divided into finite and infinite. The firſt three, ndicative, ſubjunctive, and imperative, are called *finite*, becauſe certain fixed terminations, anſwering to certain perſons, both nd plural. The laſt is called *infinitive*, or *infinite*, becauſe it is ed to one number or perſon more than another.

e Indicative Mood affirms or denies poſitively; as, *Amo*, I love; I do not love: Or elſe aſks a queſtion; as, *An amas?* Doſt thou *non amas?* Doſt thou not love?

2. The Subjunctive Mood generally depends upon another verb i ſame ſentence, either going before or coming after; as, *Si me ametis, cepta mea ſervate*, If ye love me, keep my commandments.

[This mood is commonly branched out into three moods, viz. the tive, the ſubjunctive more ſtrictly taken, and the potential. 1. It i ed *optative*, when a word importing a wiſh, as, *Utinam*, Would to *O ſi*, O if, goes before it. 2. It is named *ſubjunctive*, when it is ſu ed to ſome other conjunction or adverb, or to interrogatives becomi definites, (ſee chap. ix.). 3. It is called *potential*, when with the affirmation of the verb is alſo ſignified ſome modification or affecti it, ſuch as a power, poſſibility, liberty, duty, will, &c.; the ſigns of in our language are, *may*, *can*, *might*, *could*, *would*, *ſhould*, and *ha would have* or *ſhould have*; as, *They had repented*, for *would have*). B cauſe the terminations of theſe moods are the ſame, we have compre ed them all under one, viz. the ſubjunctive, to which, with ſma culty, they may be reduced: Otherwiſe, if we will conſtitute as moods as there are various modifications wherewith a verb or affir can be affected, we muſt multiply them to a far greater number, we ſhall have a promiſſive, hortative, precative, conceſſive, man interrogative mood; nay, a volitive and debitive, which is commo cluded in the potential. As for the optative, it is plain that the not in the verb itſelf, (which ſignifies only the matter of it, or wiſhed), but in the verb *opto*, which is underſtood, with *ut*, *uti*, *nam*, which really ſignify no more but *that*; and it is very probabl in like manner ſome verb, or other word, may alſo be underſtood is called the *potential mood*; ſuch as, *Ita eſt*, *Res ita eſt*, *Fieri poteſt*, as Voſſius, Sanctius, Perizonius, and others, do contend; tho' Mr J is of another opinion.]

3. The Imperative Mood commands, exhorts, or intreats; as, Love thou.

4. The Infinitive Mood expreſſes the ſignification of the verb i ral, and is Engliſhed by *to*; as, *Amare*, to love.

III. The Tenſes are either ſimple or compound. The ſimple are, the preſent, the preter-perfect, and the future.

1. The preſent
2. The preter-perfect } tenſe ſpeaks of time now { preſent. paſt.
3. The future { to come.

The Compound Tenſes are, the preter-imperfect and the pret perfect.

4. The preter-imperfect refers to ſome paſt time, and impor the thing was preſent and unfiniſhed then; as, *Amabam*, I did lov then]

5. The preter-pluperfect refers to ſome paſt time, and imports, thing was paſt at or before that time; as, *Scripſeram epiſtolam*, I ha ten a letter [i. e. before that time.]

There is alſo a compound future tenſe, called the *future-perf exact*, which refers to ſome time yet to come; and imports, that as yet future, ſhall be paſt and finiſhed at or before that time; a *cœnavero, tu leges*, When I ſhall have ſupped, [i. e. after ſupper], y read. This future is only in the ſubjunctive mood; and the ſign *ſhall have*; as the other future, called the *future-imperfect*, is only indicative; which, when joined with another future, imports, t things yet future ſhall be contemporary, or exiſt at one time; a

…ab, *tu leges*, When I ſhall ſup, [i. e. in time of ſupper], you ſhall …

…ſhall not only the tenſes, but even the moods themſelves, may be di… into ſimple and compound. I call the Indicative a ſimple mood, …ſe it ſimply affirms ſomething of its perſon or nominative. But the …e three moods I call compound, becauſe they have ſome other ideas …odifications of our thoughts, ſuperadded to the ſimple ſignification of …verb; ſuch as, a command, a deſire, prohibition, poſſibility, liberty, …, duty, wiſh, conceſſion, ſuppoſition, condition, purpoſe, &c. Theſe …ifications are either really included in the verb; as a command, &c. …e imperative; and, according to Johnſon, power, will, duty, &c in …mood called *potential*; or cloſely interwoven with it, by the help of a …nction, adverb, or other verb expreſſed or underſtood: And becauſe …e alſo generally connote time, they very frequently make all the tenſes …eſe moods to become compound tenſes. For, with reſpect to their …ution, they are generally future; but with reſpect to their modal fig…ation, they may fall under any of the other diſtinctions of time, as …s the future. Thus, for inſtance, *Lege*, Read thou, with reſpect to …ecution, is future; but with reſpect to the command, it is preſent. …, in *Legam*, I may or can read, the action (if done at all) muſt be …e; but the liberty or poſſibility are preſent; and ſo of others. Now, …ſeems evident, that from theſe modifications of the verb, more than …e bare execution of it, the tenſes of theſe moods have at firſt been …guiſhed; ſo I am of opinion, that had grammarians taken their mea… accordingly, they had not rendered this matter ſo intricate as they …done. For ſome of them, as Sanctius, &c determining the times …eſe moods by the execution only, have made the whole imperative …ſubjunctive of the future time; and the infinitives and participles of …es, or rather of no time. Others, viz. Voſſius, Linacer, Alvarus, …ens, &c though they will not go ſo far as Sanctius, yet upon the …grounds make *Utinam legam* the future of the optative, *Utinam legerem* …reſent of it. By the ſame rule, they make a future of the potential …; as, *Citiùs crediderim*, I ſhould or ſhall ſooner believe; and ano… of the ſubjunctive in *iſſem*; as, *Juravit, ſe illum ſtatim interfecturum, …jurandum ſibi dediſſet*, He ſwore, he would preſently kill him, if he …d not ſwear to him, Cic. But, with all imaginable deference to …great men, I humbly think, that theſe tenſes may be more eaſily ac…ted for, if we conſider them as compound, i. e. reſpecting one time …their execution, and another as to the various modifications, ſuper…ded to, or involved in their ſignification. To inſtance in the two laſt …ples, (becauſe they ſeem to have the greateſt difficulty), *Citiùs credi…* ſeems to import theſe two things: 1ſt, That *I have, and continue to …a reaſon why I ſhould not believe it*; which reaſon is of the imperfect …e time: and, 2dly, That *I ſhall ſooner have believed it than another* …with reſpect to which it ſhall be paſt: For there are a great many …ples, where the preterite in *rim* hath the ſame ſignification with the …-perfect in *ro*; as, *Si te inde exemerim*, Terent. for *exemero*. See *Voſſ. …. cap.* 15. and *Aul. Gell. lib.* 18. *cap.* 2. As to the other example, …mpoſition of two times is yet more evident: for though *jusjurandum* …be poſterior, and conſequently future, with reſpect to *juravit*; yet …prior, not only to the time of the relation, but to *interfecturum*; to …t which, it behoved neceſſarily to be paſt: and ſo of others. The

ſame rule, in my opinion, will likewiſe hold in the infinitive and p
ciples, which of themſelves have always one fixed time; and when
ſeem to be of another time, that is not in them, but in the verb that
before them, or comes after them. Thus, for inſtance, *ſcribere* is al
preſent, or co-exiſtent with the verb before it; and *ſcripſiſſe* is al
prior to the ſame verb in all its tenſes; as, *Dicit*, *dixit*, or *dicet*; *j*
juvit, or *juvabit*, *me ſcribere*, and *me ſcripſiſſe*. So alſo the participles
a fixed time, preſent, paſt, or future; and when any part of the ver
is joined with them, they retain their own time, and have thoſe of
verb ſuperadded to them. But becauſe there are innumerable occaſio
ſpeaking, wherein the nice diſtinctions of times are not neceſſary, t
fore it frequently happens that they are promiſcuouſly uſed; as I cou
vince by a great many examples, not only in the paſſive, but active v
both in the Latin and other languages, if there were place for it; w
yet, in my judgement, does not hinder but that every part of a verb
formally, and of its own nature, a certain time, ſimple or compoun
which it is fixed and determined.]

IV. There are two numbers, the ſingular and the plural, anſweri
the ſame numbers of a noun or pronoun.

V. There are three perſons in each number: the firſt ſpeaks of i
the ſecond is ſpoke to; and the third is ſpoken of. The firſt hath
ego and *nos*; the ſecond only *tu* and *vos*; and the third any ſubſtantive
ſingular and plural, put before the reſpective terminations of the verb
ſwering to them through all voices, moods, and tenſes.

[A verb hath the ſame reſpect to its nominative that an adjective
to its ſubſtantive; and therefore, as an adjective hath not properly
genders or numbers, but certain terminations fitted for thoſe of its
ſtantive, ſo a verb hath properly neither perſons nor numbers, bu
tain terminations anſwering to the perſons and numbers of its n
native.]

NOTE 1. That *ego* and *tu* are ſeldom expreſſed, becauſe the ter
tions of the verb immediately diſcover them, without any hazard of a
take.

NOTE 2. That if a ſubſtantive noun be joined with *ego* or *tu*, the
is of the perſon of theſe pronouns, not of the noun.

NOTE 3. That in the continuation of a diſcourſe, the third per
alſo frequently underſtood, becauſe eaſily known by what went be
and theſe pronouns, *ille*, *ipſe*, *iſte*, *hic*, *is*, *idem*, *quis*, and *qui*, do often
ply the place of it.

The ENGLISH SIGNS of the TENSES are,

Preſent. { Act. the theme of the verb, and *eſt*, *eth*, or *s*; or, for the g
er emphaſis, *do*, *doſt*, *doth*, or *does*, before it.
Paſſ. *am*, *art*, *is*, *are*, *be*, *beeſt*, with a word in *ed*, *en*, *t*, &c.

Imperf. { Act. *ed*, *edſt*, &c; or, for the greater emphaſis, *did*, *didſt*, bef
Paſſ. *was*, *waſt*, *were*, *wert*, with a word in *ed*, *en*, &c.

Perfect. { Act. *have*, *haſt*, *hath*, or *has*, with a word in *ed*, *en*, &c. or a
imperfect.
Paſſ. *have been*, *haſt been*, *hath* or *has been*, with a word in *ed*, *en*

Pluper. { Act. *had*, *hadſt*, with a word in *ed*, *en*, &c.
Paſſ. *had been*, *hadſt been*, with a word in *ed*, *en*, &c.

Future. { Act. *ſhall*, *will*, *ſhalt*, *wilt*, with the verb.
Paſſ. *ſhall be*, *will be*, *ſhalt be*, *wilt be*, with a word in *ed*, *en*

The Subjunctive Mood Active has frequently theſe ſigns:

Preſent. *may* or *can.*
Imperf. *might, could, would, ſhould.*
Perfect. *may have,* or *might have, could have, would have, ſhould have.*
Pluperf. *might have, could have, would have, ſhould have,* or *had.*
Future. *ſhall have.*

The paſſive has frequently the ſame ſigns with *be* or *been.*

De Conjugationibus.

M. Quot ſunt conjugationes?

D. Quatuor; prima, ſecunda, tertia, et quarta.

M. Quæ ſunt notæ harum conjugationum?

Of Conjugations.

M. How many conjugations are there?

S. Four; firſt, ſecond, third, and fourth.

M. What are the marks of theſe conjugations?

D.				S.			
Prima Secunda Tertia Quarta	habet	*a* longum *e* longum *e* breve *i* longum	ante *re* infinitivi.	*First* *Second* *Third* *Fourth*	*hath*	a *long* e *long* e *ſhort* i *long*	*before* re *of the infinitive.*

The common characteriſtic or mark by which theſe conjugations are diſtinguiſhed from one another, is one of theſe three vowels, — *a, e, i,* before the *re* of the infinitive active, though they alſo may be known by the ſame vowels in ſeveral other parts of them; for *a* long is moſt frequent in the firſt, *e* long in the ſecond, *e* or *i* ſhort in the third, and *i* long in the fourth: only *e* before *bam, bas, bat,* &c. and before *mus* and *tis,* and *mur* and *mini,* is always long in whatever conjugation it is found.

But it is to be obſerved, that the preterites and ſupines, and all the words formed from them, (becauſe of the great irregularity of their middle ſyllables, and conſtant agreement in their laſt vowel, and in the terminations ariſing from it in all conjugations), cannot properly be ſaid to be of any one conjugation more than another; for there is nothing, for example, in *fricui, docui, elicui, amicui,* or in *frictum, doctum, elicitum, amictum,* or in the parts that come from them, whereby to diſtinguiſh their conjugations.

Prima Conjugatio.

Amo.

Vox activa.

Præcipuæ partes.

Præſ. Indic.	*Perfect.*	*Sup.*	*Præſ. Infin.*
Am-o,	am-āvi,	am-ātum,	am-āre.

The Firſt Conjugation.

To love.

The active voice.

The principal parts.

	Indicativus Modus.	The Indicative Mood.
	Præſens.	The Preſent.
Sing.	1 *Ego* ăm-o,	1 *I love*, or *do love*,
	2 *Tu* am-as,	2 *Thou loveſt*, or *doſt love*,
	3 *Ille* am-at :	3 *He loveth*, or *doth love* * :
Plur.	1 *Nos* am-āmus,	1 *We love*, or *do love*,
	2 *Vos* am-atis,	2 *Ye* (or *you*) *love*, or *do love*
	3 *Illi* am-ant.	3 *They love*, or *do love*.
	Imperfectum.	The Imperfect.
Sing.	1 Am-ābam,	1 *I loved*, or *did love*,
	2 Am-abas,	2 *Thou lovedſt*, or *didſt love*
	3 Am-abat :	3 *He loved*, or *did love* :
Plur.	1 Am-abāmus,	1 *We loved*, or *did love*,
	2 Am-abatis,	2 *Ye loved*, or *did love*,
	3 Am-abant,	3 *They loved*, or *did love*.
	Perfectum.	The Perfect.
Sing.	1 Am-āvi,	1 *I have loved* †,
	2 Am-aviſti,	2 *Thou haſt loved*,
	3 Am-avit :	3 *He hath loved* :
Plur.	1 Am-avĭmus,	1 *We have loved*,
	2 Am-aviſtis,	2 *Ye have loved*,
	3 Am-avērunt *vel* -avēre.	3 *They have loved*.
	Pluſquamperfectum.	The Plu-perfect.
Sing.	1 Am-avĕram,	1 *I had loved*,
	2 Am-averas,	2 *Thou hadſt loved*,
	3 Am-averat :	3 *He had loved* :
Plur.	1 Am-averāmus,	1 *We had loved*,
	2 Am-averatis,	2 *Ye had loved*,
	3 Am-averant,	3 *They had loved*.
	Futurum.	The Future.
Sing.	1 Am-ābo,	1 *I ſhall* or *will love*,
	2 Am-abis,	2 *Thou ſhalt* or *wilt love*,
	3 Am-abit :	3 *He ſhall* or *will love* :
Plur.	1 Am-abĭmus,	1 *We ſhall* or *will love*,
	2 Am-abitis,	2 *Ye ſhall* or *will love*,
	3 Am-abunt.	3 *They ſhall* or *will love*.

* Or, *loves*, or *does love*.

† Or, *I loved*, or *did love*, *Thou lovedſt*, or *didſt love*, &c. as in the perfect.

Subjunctivus. **The Subjunctive Mood.**

Præsens. **The Preſent.**

Sing. 1 Am-em,	1 *I may* or *can love,*	
2 Am-es,	2 *Thou mayſt* or *canſt love,*	
3 Am-et:	3 *He may* or *can love:*	
Plur. 1 Am-ēmus,	1 *We may* or *can love,*	
2 Am-etis,	2 *Ye may* or *can love,*	
3 Am-ent.	3 *They may* or *can love.*	

Imperfectum. **The Imperfect.**

Sing. 1 Am-ārem,	1 *I might, could, would,* or *ſhould,*	*love.*
2 Am-ares,	2 *Thou mightſt, couldſt, wouldſt, &c.*	
3 Am-aret:	3 *He might, could, would,* or *ſhould,*	
Plur. 1 Am-arēmus,	1 *We might, could, would,* or *ſhould,*	
2 Am-aretis,	2 *Ye might, could, would* or *ſhould,*	
3 Am-arent.	3 *They might, could, would,* or *ſhould,*	

Perfectum. **The Perfect.**

Sing. 1 Am-avĕrim,	1 *I may have loved,*	
2 Am-averis,	2 *Thou mayſt have loved,*	
3 Am-averit:	3 *He may have loved:*	
Plur. 1 Am-averĭmus,	1 *We may have loved,*	
2 Am-averitis,	2 *Ye may have loved,*	
3 Am-averint.	3 *They may have loved.*	

Plusquamperfectum. **The Plu-perfect.**

Sing. 1 Am-aviſſem,	1 *I might, could, would,* &c. *have* or	*had loved.*
2 Am-aviſſes,	2 *Thou mightſt, couldſt,* &c. *have* or	
3 Am-aviſſet:	3 *He might, could,* &c. *have* or	
Plur. 1 Am-aviſsēmus,	1 *We might, could,* &c. *have* or	
2 Am-aviſſetis,	2 *Ye might, could,* &c. *have* or	
3 Am-aviſſent.	3 *They might, could,* &c. *have* or	

Futurum. **The Future.**

Sing. 1 Am-avĕro,	1 *I ſhall have loved,*
2 Am-averis,	2 *Thou ſhalt have loved,*
3 Am-averit:	3 *He ſhall have loved:*
Plur. 1 Am-averĭmus,	1 *We ſhall have loved,*
2 Am-averitis,	2 *Ye ſhall have loved,*
3 Am-averint,	3 *They ſhall have loved.*

	Imperativus Modus.	The Imperative Mood.
	Præſens.	The Preſent.
Sing. 2	Am-a *vel* am-āto *tu*,	2 *Love thou*, or *do thou lov*
Sing. 3	Am-ato *ille*:	3 *Let him love*:
Plur. 2	Am-ate *vel* am-atōte *vos*,	2 *Love ye*, or *do ye love*,
Plur. 3	Am-anto *illi*.	3 *Let them love*.
	Infinitivus Modus.	The Infinitive Mood.
Præſ.	Am-āre.	Preſ. *To love*.
Perf.	Am-aviſſe.	Perf. *To have*, or *had loved*
Fut.	Am-atūrum eſſe *vel* fuiſſe.	Fut. *To be about to love*.
	Supina.	The Supines.
Prius,	Am-ātum,	Firſt, *To love*,
Poſterius,	Am-ātu.	Laſt, *To love*, or *to be love*
	Participia.	The Participles.
Præſ.	Am-ans.	Of the Preſent, *Loving*.
Fut.	Am-atūrus, -a, -um.	Of the Future, *About to lo*
	Gerundia.	The Gerunds.
Nom.	Am-andum,	Nom. *Loving*,
Gen.	Amandi,	Gen. *Of loving*,
Dat.	Am-ando,	Dat. *To loving*,
Acc.	Am-andum,	Acc. *Loving*,
Abl.	Am-ando:	Abl. *From*, *in*, or *by lovi*

Before the ſcholar attempt the paſſive, he ſhould be made to turn over to the irregular verb *ſum*, and get it perfectly, becauſe it is uſed an auxiliary in that voice.

	Vox Paſſiva.	The Paſſive Voice.
	Amor, amātus, amāri.	
	Indicativus Modus.	The Indicative Mood.
	Præſens.	The Preſent.
Sing. 1	Am-or,	1 *I am loved*,
Sing. 2	Am-āris, *vel* -āre,	2 *Thou art loved*,
Sing. 3	Am-atur:	3 *He is loved*:
Plur. 1	Am-amur,	1 *We are loved*,
Plur. 2	Am-amĭni,	2 *Ye are loved*,
Plur. 3	Am-antur.	3 *They are loved*.
	Imperfectum.	The Imperfect.
Sing. 1	Am-abar,	1 *I was*
Sing. 2	Am-abāris *vel* -abāre,	2 *Thou waſt*
Sing. 3	Am-abatur:	3 *He was* } love
Plur. 1	Am-abamur,	1 *We were*
Plur. 2	Am-abamĭni,	2 *Ye were*
Plur. 3	Am-abantur.	3 *They were*

Perfectum. The Perfect.

Am-ātus	1 ſum *vel* fui,	1 *I have been*	loved.
	2 es *vel* fuiſti,	2 *Thou haſt been*	
	3 eſt *vel* fuit,	3 *He hath been*	
Am-āti	1 ſūmus *vel* fuimus,	1 *We have been*	
	2 eſtis *vel* fuiſtis,	2 *Ye have been*	
	3 ſunt fuerunt *vel* fuere,	3 *They have been*	

Pluſquamperfectum. The Plu-perfect.

Am-atus	1 ĕram *vel* fuĕram,	1 *I had been*	loved.
	2 eras *vel* fueras,	2 *Thou hadſt been*	
	3 erat *vel* fuerat,	3 *He had been*	
Am-ati	1 erāmus *vel* fuerāmus,	1 *We had been*	
	2 eratis *vel* fueratis,	2 *Ye had been*	
	3 erant *vel* fuerant,	3 *They had been*	

Futurum. The Future.

1 Am-ābor,	1 *I ſhall* or *will be*	loved.
2 Am-abĕris *vel* -abĕre,	2 *Thou ſhalt* or *wilt be*	
3 Am-abĭtur,	3 *He ſhall* or *will be*	
1 Am-abĭmur,	1 *We ſhall* or *will be*	
2 Am-abĭmĭni,	2 *Ye ſhall* or *will be*	
3 Am-abuntur,	3 *They ſhall* or *will be*	

Subjunctivus Modus. The Subjunctive Mood.

Præſens. The Preſent.

1 Am-er,	1 *I may* or *can be*	loved.
2 Am-ēris *vel* ēre,	2 *Thou mayſt* or *canſt be*	
3 Am-etur,	3 *He may* or *can be*	
1 Am-emur,	1 *We may* or *can be*	
2 Am-emĭni,	2 *Ye may* or *can be*	
3 Am-entur,	3 *They may* or *can be*	

Imperfectum. The Imperfect.

1 Am-ārer,	1 *I might, could, would,* &c.	be loved.
2 Am-arēris *vel* -arēre,	2 *Thou mightſt, couldſt,* &c.	
3 Am-aretur,	3 *He might, could,* &c.	
1 Am-aremur,	1 *We might, could,* &c.	
2 Am-aremĭni,	2 *Ye might, could,* &c.	
3 Am-arentur,	3 *They might, could,* &c.	

Perfectum. The Perfect.

Am-atus	1 ſim *vel* fuerim,	1 *I may have been*	loved.
	2 ſis *vel* fueris,	2 *Thou mayſt have been*	
	3 ſit *vel* fuerit,	3 *He may have been*	
Am-ati	1 ſīmus *vel* fuerĭmus,	1 *We may have been*	
	2 ſitis *vel* fueritis,	2 *Ye may have been*	
	3 ſint *vel* fuerint,	3 *They may have been*	

Pluſquamperfectum. The Plu-perfect.

Plur. Sing. Am-atus	1 eſſem *vel* fuiſſem,	1 *I might, could, &c. have* or
	2 eſſes *vel* fuiſſes,	2 *Thou mightſt, &c. have* or
	3 eſſet *vel* fuiſſet,	3 *He might, &c. have* or
Plur. Am-ati	1 eſſēmus *vel* fuiſſēmus,	1 *We might, &c. have* or
	2 eſſetis *vel* fuiſſetis,	2 *Ye might, &c. have* or
	3 eſſent *vel* fuiſſent,	3 *They might, &c. have* or

Futurum. The Future.

Plur. Sing. Am-atus	1 fuĕro,	1 *I ſhall have been*	lo
	2 fueris,	2 *Thou ſhalt have been*	
	3 fuerit,	3 *He ſhall have been*	
Plur. Am-ati	1 fuerĭmus,	1 *We ſhall have been*	
	2 fueritis,	2 *Ye ſhall have been*	
	3 fuerint,	3 *They ſhall have been*	

Imperativus Modus. The Imperative Mood

Præſens. The Preſent.

Plur. Sing. 2 Am-āre *vel* -ātor,	2 *Be thou loved,*
3 Am-ator,	3 *Let him be loved:*
2 Am-amĭni,	2 *Be ye loved,*
3 Am-antor,	3 *Let them be loved.*

Infinitivus Modus. The Infinitive Mood.

Præſ.	Am-āri,	*To be loved.*
Perf.	Am-ātum eſſe *vel* fuiſſe,	*To have* or *had been loved*
Fut.	Am-ātum īri,	*To be about to be loved.*

Participia. The Participles.

Perfecti temporis, Am-atus, -a, -um, Of the Perfect, *Lo*
Futuri, Am-andus, -a, -um, Of the Fut. *To be lo*

Secunda Conjugatio.

Vox activa.

Moneo, monui, monitum, monēre, *to adviſe.*

Indicativus.

	Sing.			*Plur.*		
	1	2	3	1	2	3
Pr.	Mŏn-eo,	-es,	-et:	-ēmus,	-ētis,	-ent
Im.	Mon-ēbam,	-ebas,	-ebat:	-ebāmus,	-ebātis,	-eba
Perf.	Mon-ui,	-uiſti,	-uit:	-uĭmus,	-uiſtis,	-uēr / -uēr
Pluſ.	Mon-uĕram,	-ueras,	-uerat:	-uerāmus,	-uerātis,	-uer
Fut.	Mon-ēbo,	-ebis,	-ebit:	-ebĭmus,	-ebitis,	-ebu

Subjunctivus.

Pr.	Mon-eam,	-eas,	-eat:	-eāmus,	-eatis, -eant.
Im.	Mon-ērem,	-eres,	-eret:	-erēmus,	-erētis, -erent.
Perf.	Mon-uĕrim,	-ueris,	-uerit:	-uerĭmus,	-ueritis, -uerint.
Plus.	Mon-uiſſem,	-uiſſes,	-uiſſet:	-uiſſēmus,	-uiſſētis, -uiſſent.
Fut.	Mon-uĕro,	-ueris,	-uerit:	-uerĭmus,	-uerĭtis, -uerint.

Imperativus.

Pref.	Mon. { -ē, / -ēto,	-eto:	{ -ete, / -etōte,	-ento.

Infinitivus.	*Supina.*	*Participia.*	*Gerundia.*
Pref. Mon-ēre.	1 Mon-itum.	*Pr.* Mon-ens.	Mon-endum,
Perf. Mon-uiſſe.	2 Mon-itu.	*Fut.* Mon-ĭturus.	Mon-endi,
Fut. Mon-ĭturum eſſe *vel* fuiſſe.			Mon-endo.

Vox paſſiva.

Moneor, monĭtus, moneri.

Indicativus.

	Sing.		*Plur.*
Pr.	Mon-eor, { -ēris, / -ēre,	-etur:	-emur, -emĭni, -entur.
Im.	Mon-ēbar, { -ebāris, / -ebāre,	-ebātur:	-ebāmur, -ebamĭni, -ebantur.
Perf.	Monĭtus ſum *vel* fui, *&c.*		
Plus.	Monĭtus eram *vel* fueram, *&c.*		
Fut.	Mon-ebor, { -ebĕris, / -ebĕre,	-ebĭtur:	-ebĭmur, -ebĭmĭni, -ebuntur.

Subjunctivus.

Pr.	Mon-ear, { -eāris, / -eāre,	-eatur:	-eāmur, -eāmĭni, -eantur.
Im.	Mon-ērer, { -erēris, / -erēre,	-eretur:	-eremur, -eremĭni, -erentur.
Perf.	Monitus ſim *vel* fuĕrim, &c.		
Plus.	Monitus eſſem *vel* fuiſſem, &c.		
Fut.	Monitus fuĕro, &c.		

Imperativus.

Pref.	Mon- { -ēre, / -ētor,	-etor:	-emĭni,	-entor.

Infinitivus.	*Participia.*
Pref. Mon-ēri.	*Perf.* Mon-ĭtus, -a, -um.
Perf. Mon-ĭtum eſſe *vel* fuiſſe.	*Fut.* Mon-endus, -a, -um.
Fut. Mon-ĭtum iri.	

Tertia Conjugatio.

Vox activa.

Lĕgo, lēgi, lectum, legĕre, *to read.*

Indicativus.

	Sing. 1	2	3	*Plur.* 1	2	3
Præſ.	Lĕg-o,	-is,	-it:	-ĭmus,	-ĭtis,	-unt.
Imp.	Leg-ēbam,	-ēbas,	-ebat:	-ēbāmus,	-ēbātis,	-ēbant.
Perf.	Lēg-i,	-iſti,	-it:	-ĭmus,	-iſtis,	-ērunt, -ēre.
Pluſ.	Lĕg-ĕram,	-eras,	-erat:	-erāmus,	-erātis,	-erant.
Fut.	Lĕg-am,	-es,	-et:	-ēmus,	-ētis,	-ent.

Subjunctivus.

Præſ.	Lĕg-am,	-as,	-at:	-āmus,	-ātis,	-ant.
Imp.	Lĕg-ĕrem,	-erēs,	-eret:	-erēmus,	-erētis,	-erent.
Perf.	Leg-ĕrim,	-eris,	-erit:	-erĭmus,	-erĭtis,	-erint.
Pluſ.	Leg-iſſem,	-iſſes,	-iſſet:	-iſſēmus,	-iſſetis,	-iſſent.
Fut.	Leg-ĕro,	-eris,	-erit:	-erĭmus,	-erĭtis,	-erint.

Imperativus.

Præſ.	Leg-	-e, / -ĭto,	-ĭto:	-ite, / -itōte,	-unto.

Infinitivus.	*Supina.*	*Participia.*	*Gerundia.*
Præſ. Lĕg-ĕre.	1 Lec-tum.	*Pr.* Leg-ens.	Lĕg-endum
Perf. Leg-iſſe.	2 Lec-tu.	*Fut.* Lec-turus.	Leg-endi,
Fut. Lec-turum eſſe *vel* fuiſſe.			Leg-endo,

Vox paſſiva.

Legor, lectus, legi.

Indicativus.

	Sing.		*Plur.*		
Pr. Leg-or,	-ĕris, / -ĕre,	-ĭtur:	-ĭmur,	-imĭni,	-untur.
Im. Leg-ēbar,	-ebāris, / -ebāre,	-ebātur;	-ebāmur,	-ebāmĭni,	-ebantur.
Perf. Lectus ſum *vel* fui, &c.					
Pluſ. Lectus ĕram *vel* fuĕram, &c.					
Fut. Leg-ar,	-ēris, / -ēre,	-etur:	-ēmur,	-emĭni,	-entur.

Subjunctivus.

Pr. Leg-ar,	-āris, / -āre,	-atur:	-amur,	-amĭni,	-antur.
Im. Leg ĕrer,	-erēris, / -erēre,	-erētur:	-erēmur,	-eremĭni,	-erentur.

Perf. Lectus ſim *vel* fuerim, &c.
Pluſ. Lectus eſſem *vel* fuiſſem, &c.
Fut. Lectus fuero, &c.

Imperativus.

Præſ. Leg- {-ĕre, -ĭtor, -itor: imĭni, -untor.

Infinitivus.
Præſ. Leg-i.
Perf. Lec-tum eſſe *vel* fuiſſe.
Fut. Lec-tum iri.

Participia.
Perf. Lec-tus, -a, -um.
Fut. Leg-endus, -a, -um.

Quarta Conjugatio.

Vox activa.

Audio, audīvi, auditum, audīre, *to hear*,

Indicativus.

	Sing.			*Plur.*		
	1	2	3	1	2	3
Pr.	Aud-io,	-is,	-it:	-īmus,	-ītis,	-iunt.
Im.	Aud-iēbam,	-iebas,	-iebat:	-iebāmus,	-iebātis,	-iebant.
Perf.	Aud-īvi,	-iviſti,	-ivit:	-ivĭmus,	-iviſtis,	{-ivērunt, -ivēre.
Pluſ.	Aud-ivĕram,	-iveras,	-iverat:	-iverāmus,	-iverātis,	-iverant.
Fut.	Aud-iam,	-ies,	-iet:	-iēmus,	-ietis,	-ient.

Subjunctivus.

Pr.	Aud-iam,	-ias,	-iat:	-iāmus,	-iatis,	-iant.
Im.	Aud-īrem,	-ires,	-iret:	-irēmus,	-irētis,	-irent.
Perf.	Aud-ivĕrim,	-iveris,	-iverit:	-iverĭmus,	-iverĭtis,	-iverint.
Pluſ.	Aud-iviſſem,	-iviſſes,	-iviſſet:	-iviſſēmus,	-iviſſētis,	-iviſſent.
Fut.	Aud-ivĕro,	-iveris,	-iverit:	-iverĭmus,	-iverĭtis,	-iverint.

Imperativus.

Pr. Aud- {-ī, -īto, -īto: {-īte, -itōte, -iunto.

Infinitivus.	*Supina.*	*Participia.*	*Gerundia.*
Præſ. Aud-īre.	1 Aud-itum.	*Pr.* Aud-iens.	Aud-iendum.
Perf. Aud-iviſſe.	2 Aud-itu.	*Fut.* Aud-iturus.	Aud-iendi.
Fut. Aud-ītūrum eſſe *vel* fuiſſe.			Aud-iendo.

Vox paſſiva.

Audior, auditus, audīri.

Indicativus.

	Sing.		*Plur.*
Pr. Aud-ior,	-īris, -īre,	-ītur:	-īmur, -imĭni, -iuntur.
Im. Aud-iēbar,	-iebāris, -iebāre,	-iebātur:	-iebāmur, -iebāmĭni, -iēbantur.

Perf. Auditus ſum *vel* fui, &c.
Pluſ. Auditus eram *vel* fueram, &c.

Fut. Aud-iar,	-iēris, -iēre,	-iētur:	-iēmur, -iēmĭni, -ientur.

Subjunctivus.

Præſ. Aud-iar,	-iāris, -iāre,	-iātur:	-iāmur, -iāmĭni, -iantur.
Im. Aud-īrer,	-irēris, -irēre,	-irētur:	-irēmur, -irēmĭni, irentur.

Perf. Auditus ſim *vel* fuerim, &c.
Pluſ. Auditus eſſem *vel* fuiſſem, &c.
Fut. Auditus fuero, &c.

Imperativus.

Præſ. Aud-	-īre, -itor,	-itor:	-imĭni, -iuntor.

Infinitivus.	*Participia.*
Præſ. Aud-iri.	*Perf.* Aud-itus, -a, -um
Perf. Aud-itum eſſe *vel* fuiſſe.	*Fut.* Aud-iendus, -a, -um
Fut. Aud-itum, iri.	

It is carefully to be obſerved, that in the paſſive voice, the participle perfect, which, with the verb *ſum*, makes the perfect and plu-perfect of both moods, and the future of the ſubjunctive, being an adjective, must agree in gender, number, and caſe, with its ſubſtantive, or (which is the ſame thing) with the perſon before it.

Of the formation of Verbs.

In every complete verb, there are commonly four principal parts, viz. the preſent of the indicative, in *o*; the preterite or perfect, in *i*; the firſt ſupine, in *um*; and the preſent of the infinitive, in *re*. The firſt, which is therefore called the *theme* or *root* of the verb, gives origin to the whole verb, either mediately or immediately. The preterite, the firſt ſupine, and the preſent of the infinitive, come from it immediately, and all the reſt from them; except the future of the indicative, in *am*, and the preſent of the ſubjunctive, in *em* or *am*, which are alſo formed immediately from the preſent, in *o*.

All the other parts of the verb are regularly formed from the principal parts, after one fixed and uniform manner, thus:

Amo, amavi, amatum, amare.

Am-o, -em; Amav-i, -eram, -erim, -iſſem, -ero, -iſſe; Amat-um, -urus

-us, -u; Am-are, -abam, -abo, -a, -arem, -andum, -andi, -ando, -ans, -andus.

Moneo, monui, monitum, monere.

Mone-o, -am; Monu-i, -eram, -erim, -iſſem, -ero, -iſſe; Monit-um, -urus, -us, u; Mon-ere, -ebam, -ebo, -e, -erem, -endum, -endi, -endo, -ens, -endus.

Lego, legi, lectum, legere.

Leg-o, -am; Leg-i, -eram, &c.; Lect-um, -urus, us, u; Leg-ere, -ebam, -e, -erem, -endum, -endi, -endo, -ens, endus.

Audio, audivi, auditum, audire.

Audi-o, -ebam, -am, -endum, -endi, -endo, -ens, -endus; Audiv-i, -eram, &c.; Audit-um, -urus, -us, -u; Aud-ire, -i, -irem.

Note. In the ſame manner as *audio*, and its infinitive, ſo all verbs in *io* of the third conjugation are formed, thus.

Capio, cepi, captum, capere.

Capi-o, -ebam, -am, -endum, -endi, -endo, -ens, -endus; Cap-ere, -e, -erem.

Nay, the formations from *fero* and *ferre* will anſwer beſt the ſame way, thus: Fer-o, -ebam, -am, -endum, -endi, -endo, -ens, -endus; Fer-re, fer, fer-rem.

** I thought it unneceſſary here to name the moods and tenſes, becauſe the ſcholar will ſoon diſcover them himſelf.

Note 1. That the paſſive voice is formed from the ſame tenſes of the active, (except where *ſum* is uſed), by adding *r* to *o*, or changing *m* into *r*.

Note 2. That the preſent of the infinitive active and the ſecond perſon of the indicative and imperative paſſive, in *re*, are always the ſame.

Note 3. That the ſecond perſon plural of the preſent of the indicative, and of the imperative, are the ſame in the paſſive voice.

Note 4. That where any of the principal parts are wanting, theſe parts are commonly wanting that come from them. For which reaſon, grammarians give ſupines to a great many verbs, which yet are not to be found in any author, becauſe the participles formed from them are found; and they ſuppoſe likewiſe, that all deponent verbs of old had the active voice, and conſequently ſupines, though now loſt.

Note 5. In all verbs the imperfect ſubjunctive is found by adding *m* to the infinitive in the active voice.

Note 6. That all verbs of the ſecond conjugation end in *eo*, and all verbs of the fourth in *io*, except *eo* and *queo*. There are eight verbs in *eo* of the firſt conjugation, viz. *beo, creo, ſtreo, meo, calceo, laqueo, nauſeo, cacheo*. There are twenty-four in *io* of the firſt, viz. *amplio, baſio, concilio, aſſilior, crucio, furio, glacio, hio, lanio, luxurio, macio, nuncio, pio, propitio, udio, repudio, ſatio, ſaucio, ſocio, ſomnio, ſpolio, ſuavio*, or rather *ſuaviôr, ario, vitio*; with ſome others leſs common; as, *brevio, decurio, ſuccentuio, ſaſcio, retalio, ſtrio, tertio*, &c. And twelve of the third, viz. *capio, cupio, jacio*, the compounds of *lacio* and *ſpecio*; *fodio, fugio, cupio, rapio, ſapio, pario, quatio*, with their compounds.

** The reſpective changes in the moods, tenſes, numbers, and perſons, of every verb, are obvious from the examples above; in which I have diſtinguiſhed them from the body, or eſſential part, by a hyphen: and to conjugate one verb by the example of another, we have no more to do, but, inſtead of the eſſential parts, (which is all that ſtands before *o*,

or *io* of the preſent of the indicative), to ſubſtitute the eſſential parts of the other; and then to add to it the additional ſyllables it receives in conjugation, as before. Only we are to advert, that in the preterites and ſupines, and the parts that come from them, we are to reckon all before *i* and *um* for the body of the verb, as will be ſeen in the formation of the verbs of the four conjugations.

Of the Preterites and Supines of Verbs.

General Rules.

1. Compound verbs for the moſt part have the ſame preterites and ſupines as ſimple verbs; as, *Amo*, ſo *Redamo*.

2. Although the ſimple verb ſhould double the firſt ſyllable of its preterite, its compound does not; as, *Pello, pĕpŭli, pulſum*, to beat; *Repello, repŭli, repulſum*, to beat back.

Exc. Some, however, retain that ſyllable; as, *Præcurro, præcŭcurri, præcurſum*; *Repungo, repŭpŭgi* and *repunxi, repunctum*, to prick again: alſo the compounds of *do, ſto, diſco*, and *poſco*; as, *Addo, addĭdi, additum*, to add; *Aſto, aſtĭti, aſtātum* and *aſtĭtum*, to ſtand by; *Ediſco, edĭdĭci*, to learn by heart; *Depoſco, depŏpoſci*, to demand.

3. If the compound change *a* of the ſimple into *i*, the ſupine takes it; as, *Făcio, fēci, factum*, to make; *Perficio, perfēci, perfectum*, to perfect.

Exc. Plăceo, placui, placĭtum, to pleaſe; *Diſplĭceo, diſplicui, diſplicĭtum*, to diſpleaſe. So verbs ending in *do* and *go*; as, *Cădo, cĕcĭdi, cāſum*, to fall; *Recĭdo, recidi, recaſum*, to fall back; *Ăgo, ēgi, actum*, to do, to drive; *Adĭgo, adēgi, adactum*, to drive to; likewiſe the compounds of *habeo*, to have, *ſapio*, to be wiſe, which retain *i* in the ſupine; as, *prohibeo, prohibitum*, to forbid; *desĭpio*, (if it has the ſupine), *desĭpĭtum*, to play the fool; alſo thoſe of *ſalio*, to leap, and *ſtatuo*, to ſet up, which have *u* in the ſupine; as, *inſilio, inſultum*, to leap upon; *inſtituo, inſtitutum*, to appoint.

4. If the preſent has *a*, the ſupine retains it; as, *capio, cepi, captum*, to take; *fallo, fĕfelli, falſum*, to deceive.

Of the Firſt Conjugation.

Rule. The preterite has *āvi*, the ſupine *ātum*; as, *voco, -avi, -atum*.

Exc. 1. *Do, dedi, dătum*, to give; ſo *venundo*, to ſell; *circundo*, to go round; *peſſundo*, to overthrow; *ſatiſdo*, to give ſurety; *ſto, ſtĕti, ſtātum*, to ſtand; its compounds thus: *exſto, exſtĭti, exſtātum* and *exſtĭtum*, to ſtand out; *præſto, præſtiti, præſtātum* and *præſtĭtum*, to perform: So *ad-, con-, ob-, per-, pro-, re-, ſto-*. 2. *Lăvo, lāvi, lautum, lōtum* and *lăvātum*, to waſh; *pōto, -āvi, pōtum* or *potatum*, to drink; *jŭvo, jūvi, jutum*, to help; ſo *adjuvo*, whence *jutus* and *adjutus*; but the laſt is more frequent. 3. *Cŭbo, cubāvi, -ĭtum*, to lie; ſo its compounds; *accubo*, to lie nigh; *excubo*, to watch; *recubo*, to lie all along. When they are of the third conjugation, they take *m*; as, *incumbo*, to lie upon; *ſuccumbo*, to yield; *dŏmo, -ui, -ĭtum*, to tame: ſo *e-, per-domo*; *ſŏno, -ui, -ĭtum*, to ſound; ſo *as-, circum-, dif-, ex-, in-, per-, præ-, re-, ſono*; *tŏno, -ui, -ĭtum*, to thunder; ſo *al-, circum-, in-, ſuperin-, re-tono*: *vĕto, -ui, -ĭtum*, to forbid; *crĕpo, -ui, ĭtum*, to make a noiſe; ſo *con-, in-, per-, re-crepo*. But *diſcrepo* has *āvi, ātum*. *Mĭco, -ui, —*, to glitter; ſo *inter-, pre-mico*. But *emico, -ui, —*, to ſhoot forth; *dimico, -āvi, raro -ui, -atum*, to fight; *plico, —, —*, to fold. Its compounds, as well with a noun as *ſub* and *re*, have only *āvi* and *ātum*;

duplico, to double; *multiplico*, to multiply; *ſupplico*, to intreat humbly; *explico*, to unfold, reply. All the reſt, with prepoſitions, have either *ui*, *ĭtum*, or *āvi*, *ātum*; as, *applico*, to join, apply; *implico*, to fold in, intangle. *Complico* has *-āvi*; *-ātum*, rarely *-ui*, *-ĭtum*, to fold together; *explico*, to unfold, unravel, or the like, has *ui*, and *ĭtum* moſt frequently; when it means, to explain, interpret, it has *āvi*, *ātum*. 6. *Frĭco*, *-ui*, *frictum*, to rub; ſo *af-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *de-*, *ef-*, *in-*, *per-*, *re-frico*; *sĕco*, *secui*, *sectum*, to cut; ſo *circum-*, *con-*, *de-*, *diſ-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *inter-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *re-*, *ſuſ-seco*; *neco*, *necavi*, ſometimes *necui*, *necatum*, to kill; *eneco*, *-āvi*, *-ātum*, and *-ui*, *enectum*, to put to death; *interneco*, *-avi*, *-atum* and *ectum*, to put all to the ſword; *labo*, —, —, to fall or faint; *nexo*, —, —, to bind, have neither preterite nor ſupine.

Of the Second Conjugation.

Verbs in this conjugation have *ui*, *ĭtum*; as, *habeo*, *-ui*, *-ĭtum*, to have. *Exc. Doceo*, *-ui*, *doctum*, to teach; ſo *ad-*, *con-*, *de-*, *e-*, *per-*, *ſub-doceo*: *tĕneo*, *-ui*, *tentum*, to hold; ſo *con-* *de-*, *diſ-*, *ob-*, *re-*, *ſuſ-tineo*: but *attineo*, *detineo*, have no ſupine; even *abſtineo* has it rarely. *Miſceo*, *-ui*, *miſtum* or *mixtum*, to mix; ſo *ad-*, *com-*, *im-*, *inter-*, *per-*, *re-miſceo*: *censeo*, *-ui*, *cenſum*, to judge or think; ſo *ac-*, *per-*, *re-*, *ſuc-cenſeo*: *torreo*, *-ui*, *toſtum*, to roaſt; ſo *ex-torreo*: *ſorbeo*, *-ui*, *ſorptum*, to ſup; ſo *ab-*, *ex-*, *re-ſorbeo*. Lucan has *abſorpſi*, Seneca *exſorpſi*, without ſupines.

Neuter verbs which have *ui* want the ſupine; as, *ſplendeo*, *-ui*, to ſhine; *candeo*, *-ui*, to be moiſt; ſo *areo*, *candeo*, &c. Alſo theſe two active verbs, *taceo*, *-ui*, to fear, whence *per-*, *ſub-timeo*; and *tĕneo*, *-ui*, to conceal.

But theſe neuters have *ui* and *ĭtum*: *Văleo*, to be in health; and *æqui-*, *con-*, *e-*, *in*, *præ-valeo*: *plăceo*, to pleaſe; and *com-*, *per-placeo*: *căreo*, to want; *liceo*, to be valued; *pāreo*, to appear, obey; and *ap-*, *com-pareo*: *careo*, to lie; and *ad-*, *circum-*, *inter-*, *ob-*, *præ-*, *ſub-*, *ſuper-jaceo*: *căleo*, to be warm; and *con-*, *in-*, *ob-*, *per-*, *re-caleo*: *nŏceo*, to hurt; *dŏleo*, to be grieved; and *con-*, *de-*, *in-*, *per-doleo*: *coălco*, to grow together; *mereo*, to deſerve; and *com-*, *de-*, *e-*, *per-*, *pro-mereo*, or *mereor*: *oleo*, to ſmell; *arceo*, *-ui*, —, to drive away; but *coërceo*, *-ui*, *-ĭtum*, to reſtrain; *exerceo*, *-ui*, *-ĭtum*, to exerciſe; *tăceo*, *-ui*, *-ĭtum*, to conceal; but *con-*, *ob-*, *re-ticeo*, have no ſupine: *lăteo*, *-ui*, *-ĭtum*, to lurk; but *inter-*, *ſub-lateo*, and *de-liqueo*, want the ſupine.

Prandeo, *-di*, *-ſum*, to dine; *vĭdeo*, *vīdi*, *viſum*, to ſee; ſo *in-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *pro-*, *re-videō*: *sĕdeo*, *sēdi*, *ſeſſum*, to ſit; ſo *aſ-*, *con-*, *de-*, *diſ-*, *in-*, *ob-*, *poſ-*, *præ-*, *re-*, *ſub-ſideo*: *circumſideo*, or *-ſedeo*, *ſuperſedeo*; but *de*, *diſ-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *ſub-ſideo*, have no ſupine: *strīdeo*, *idi*, —, to make a noiſe; *mordeo*, *momordi*, *morſum*, to bite: ſo *ad-*, *com-*, *de-*, *ob-*, *præ-*, *re-mordeo*: *pendeo*, *pependi*, *penſum*, to hang; ſo *de-*, *im-*, *pro-*, *ſuper-pendeo*: *ſpondeo*, *ſpŏpondi*, *ſponſum*, to promiſe; ſo *de-*, *re-ſpondeo*: *tondeo*, *tŏtondi*, *tonſum*, to clip; *at-*, *circum-*, *de-tondeo*. ——*Note*. The compounds have no reduplication.

Mŏveo, *mōvi*, *motum*, to move; ſo *a-*, *ad-*, *com-*, *de-*, *di-*, *e-*, *per-*, *pro-*, *re-*, *ſub-*, *tranſ-moveo*: *fŏveo*, *fōvi*, *fōtum*, to cheriſh; ſo *con-*, *re-foveo*: *vŏveo*, *vōvi*, *votum*, to vow or wiſh; ſo *con-*, *de-vovco*: *fāveo*, *fāvi*, *fautum*, to favour; *căveo*, *cāvi*, *cautum*, to avoid, beware of; ſo *præcaveo*.

Neuters in *veo* want the ſupine; as, *păveo*, *pāvi*, —, to be afraid; ſo

ex-paveo: but *ferveo*, to boil, has *ferbui*, —; ſo *de-*, *ef-*, *in-*, *per-*, *re-*, *ferveo*.

Connīveo, *-nīvi* or *nixi*, —, to wink.

Dēleo, *-ēvi*, *-ētum*, to blot out; *compleo*, *-ēvi*, *-ētum*, to fill; and the other compounds of *pleo obſ.* viz. *de-*, *ex-*, *im-*, *adim-*, *op-*, *re-*, *ſup-pleo*. *fleo*, *flēvi*, *flētum*, to weep; ſo *af-*, *de-fleo*: *neo*, *nēvi*, *nētum*, to ſpin; *per-neo*: *vieo*, *viēvi*, *vietum*, to hoop a veſſel; *cieo*, —, *cītum*, to ſtir up, to rouſe; ſo *ac-*, *con-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *per-cieo*: *oleo*, *olui*, *olītum*, of old alſo *olēvi*, *oletum*, to ſmell. It forms its compounds two ways: 1. Thoſe that ſignify to ſmell have *ui*, *ĭtum*; as, *ob-*, *per-*, *red-*, *ſub-oleo*. 2. Thoſe that recede from the ſignification of the ſimple verb have *ēvi*, *ētum*; as, *exoleo*, *obſoleo*, to fade, to grow out of uſe; *inoleo*, *ēvi*, *ētum* and *ĭtum*, to come in uſe, to grow upon: but *aboleo* has *-ēvi* and *ĭtum*, to aboliſh; *adoleo*, *-ēvi*, *-ultum*, to grow up, to burn; *ſuadeo*, *-ſi*, *-ſum*, to adviſe; ſo *diſ-*, *perſuadeo*: *rīdeo*, *riſi*, *riſum*, to laugh; ſo *ar-*, *de-*, *ir-*, *ſub-rideo*: *maneo*, *manſi*, *manſum*, to ſtay; ſo *per-*, *re-maneo*: *hæreo*, *hæſi*, *hæſum*, to ſtick; ſo *ad-*, *co-*, *in-*, *ob-*, *ſub-hæreo*: *ardeo*, *arſi*, *arſum*, to burn; ſo *ex-*, *in-*, *ob-*, *ardeo*: *tergeo*, *terſi*, *terſum*, to wipe; ſo *abſ-*, *circum-*, *de-*, *ex-*, *per-tergeo*: *mulceo*, *-ſi*, *-ſum*, to ſtroak; ſo *ad-*, *circum-*, *com-*, *de-*, *per-*, *re-mulceo*: *mulgeo*, *-ſi*, *-ſum*, and *mulctum*, to milk; ſo *e-*, *im-mulgeo*: *jubeo*, *juſſi*, *juſſum*, to command; ſo *ſide-jubeo*: *indulgeo*, *-ſi*, *-tum*, to cocker, to grant; *torqueo*, *torſi*, *tortum*, to throw; ſo *con-*, *de-*, *diſ-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *ob-*, *re-torqueo*: *urgeo*, *urſi*, —, to urge or preſs; ſo *ad-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *per-*, *ſub-*, *ſuper-urgeo*: *fulgeo*, *fulſi*, —, to ſhine; ſo *af-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *ef-*, *inter-*, *præ-*, *re-*, *ſuper-fulgeo*: *turgeo*, *turſi*, —, to ſwell; *algeo*, *alſi*, —, to be cold; *lūgeo*, *luxi*, —, to mourn; ſo *e-*, *prælūgeo*: *lūceo*, *luxi*, —, to give light; ſo *al-*, *circum-*, *col-*, *di-*, *e-*, *inter-*, *per-* or *pel-*, *præ-*, *pro-*, *re-*, *ſub-*, *tranſ-luceo*: *frīgeo*, *frixi*, —, to be cold; ſo *per-*, *re-frigeo*: *augeo*, *auxi*, *auctum*, to increaſe or augment; *ad-*, *ex-augeo*.

Theſe have neither preterite nor ſupine. *Lacteo*, to ſuck milk. *Liveo*, to be black and blue. *Scāteo*, to flow out, abound. *Rēnīdeo*, to ſhine, to ſmile. *Mæreo*, to be ſorrowful. *Āveo*, to deſire. *Polleo*, to be able. *Flāveo*, to be yellow. *Denſeo*, to grow thick. *Glābreo*, to be ſmooth or bare.

Of the Third Conjugation.

cio.

Făcio, *fēci*, *factum*, to make or do: ſo as well the compounds which retain *a*, as, *are-*, *cale-*, *made-*, *tepe-*, *bene-*, *male-*, *ſatiſ-facio*, &c. as thoſe which change *a* into *i*; as, *af-*, *con-*, *de-*, *ef-*, *in-*, *inter-*, *of-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *pro-*, *re-*, *ſuf-ficio*: but theſe laſt have *fectum* in the ſupine. *Jăcio*, *jēci*, *jactum*, to caſt or throw: ſo *ab-*, *ad-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *de-*, *diſ-*, *e-*, *in-*, *inter-*, *ob-*, *pro-*, *re-*, *ſub-*, *ſuper-*, *ſuperin-*, *tra-jicio*, with *-ectum*. The compounds of *ſpecio* and *lacio obſ.* have *-exi*, *-ectum*; as, *Aſpicio*, *aſpexi*, *aſpectum*: ſo *circumſpicio*, *con-*, *de-*, *diſ-*, *in-*, *intro-*, *per-*, *pro-*, *re-*, *retro-*, *ſu-ſpicio*. *Allicio*, *allexi*, *allectum*, to allure: ſo *il-*, *pel-licio*. But *ēlicio* has *elicui*, *elicitum*, to draw or fetch out.

dio, *gio*, *pio*.

Fŏdio, *fōdi*, *fossum*, to dig: ſo *ad-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *ef-*, *in-*, *inter-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *re-*, *ſuf-*, *tranſ-fodio*. *Fugio*, *fūgi*, *fugĭtum*, to fly: ſo *au-*, (for *abfugio*) *con-*, *de-*, *diſ-*, *ef-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *re-*, *ſuf-*, *ſubter-*, *tranſ-fugio*. *Căpio*, *cēpi*, *captum*, to take: ſo *ac-*, *con-*, *de-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *inter-*, *oc-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *re-*, *ſuf-*

(ſup. *ceptum*), and *ante-capio*. *Răpio, rapui, raptum*, to pull or ſnatch: *ab-, ar-, cor-, de-, di-, e-, præ-, pro-, ſur-ripio, ripui, reptum*, *Săpio, ſa-* —, to ſavour, be wiſe: ſo *con-, de-, re-ſipio*. *Cŭpio*, -*īvi*, -*ītum*, to deſire: ſo *con-, diſ-, per-cupio*.

rio, tio.

Pario, pĕpĕri, parĭtum, and *partum*, to bring forth a child. Its compounds are of the fourth. *Aperio, operio, comperio, reperio*, of which after. *Quatio*, (*quaſſi obſ.*), *quaſſum*. Its compounds end in *cŭtio*, and have *cuſſi*, *-ſſum*. *Concutio, concuſſi, -ſſum*, to ſhake altogether: ſo *de-, diſ-, ex-, in-, re-, reper-, ſuc-cutio*.

uo has *ui, ūtum*; as,

Arguo, -ui, -ūtum, to reprove, reaſon, or argue: ſo *co-, red-arguo*. *Acuo, -ui, -ūtum*, to ſharpen: ſo *ex-acuo*. *Exuo, exui, ūtum*, to put off clothes: *induo*, to put them on; *imbuo*, to moiſten or wet. The compounds of *luo* (or *luo obſ.*), to waſh: *ab-, al-, circum-, col-, di-, e-, inter-, per-, pol-, ſub-luo*. *Minuo*, to leſſen: whence *com-, de-, di-, im-minuo*. *Statuo*, to ſet or place, ordain: whence *con-, de-, in-, præ-, pro-, re-, ſub-ſtituo*. *Suo*, to ſow, ſtitch, or tack together: whence *aſ-, circum-, con-, diſ-, in-, re-ſuo*. *Tribuo*, to give, divide: whence *at-, con-, diſ-, re-tribuo*. But *fluo, fluxi, fluxum*, to flow: ſo *aſ-, circum-, con-, de-, diſ-, ef-, in-, inter-, præter-, pro-, re-, ſubter-, ſuper-, tranſ-fluo*. *Struo, ſtruxi, ſtructum*, to put in order, build: ſo *ad-, circum-, con-, de-, ex-, in-, ob-, præ-, ſub-, super-ſtruo*. *Ruo, rui, ruĭtum*, to ruſh, to fall: the compounds have *ŭtum*; *as, diruo, dirui, dirŭtum*, to overthrow: ſo *e-, ob-, pro-, ſub-ruo*. But *cor-* and *irruo* have no ſupine.

Theſe want the ſupine: *Metuo, metui*, —, to fear: whence *præ-metuo*. *Pluo, plui*, —, to rain: whence *ap-, com-, de-, im-, per-pluo* *Congruo, congrui*, —, to agree. *Ingruo, ingrui*, —, to aſſail, or fall upon with violence. *Annuo, annui*, —, to conſent: ſo the other compounds of *nuo obſ.* *Abnuo*, to refuſe; *innuo*, to nod, or becken with the head; *renuo*, to deny; *reſpuo, reſpui*, —, to reject, to ſlight.

bo has *bi* and *bĭtum*; as,

Bibo, bibi, bĭbĭtum, to drink: ſo *ad-, com-, e-, im-, per-, præ-bibo*. *Scăbo, ſcăbi*, —, to ſcratch or claw. *Lambo, lambi*, —, to lick: ſo *ad-, circum-, de-, præ-lambo*. The compounds of *cŭbo*, which here take *m* in the preſent, are conjugated as the ſimple; as, *accumbo, accŭbui, -ĭtum*, to ſit down at table: ſo *con-, de-, diſ- in-, oc-, pro-, re-, ſuc-, ſuperin-cumbo*. *Scribo, ſcripſi, ſcriptum*, to write: ſo *ad-, circum-, con-, de-, ex-, in-, inter-, per-, poſt-, præ-, pro-, re-, ſub-, ſuper-, ſupra-, tran-ſcribo*. *Nūbo, nupſi, nuptum*, to be married; formerly, to veil: ſo *de-, e-, in-, ob-nubo*.

co.

Dico, dixi, dictum, to ſay: ſo *ab-, ad-, con-, contra-, e-, in-, inter-, præ-, ſuper-dico*. *Dūco, duxi, ductum*, to lead: ſo *ab-, ad-, circum-, con-, de-, di-, e-, in-, intro-, ob-, per, præ-, pro-, re-, ſe-, ſub-, tra-*, or *tranſ-duco*. *Vinco*, (dropping *n*), *vīci, victum*, to overcome: ſo *con-, de-, e-, per-, re-vinco*. *Parco, pĕperci, parſum*, rarely *parſi, parsĭtum*, to ſpare: ſo *com-parco*, or *imperco*. *Īco, ici, ictum*, to ſtrike.

Sco is changed into *vi* and *tum*; as,

Creſco, crēvi, crētum, to grow: ſo *con-, de-, ex-, re-*; and without the ſupine, *ac-, in-, per-, pro-, ſuc-, ſuper-creſco*. *Noſco, nōvi, notum*, to know: ſo *dig-, ig-, inter-, per-, præ-noſco*. *Quieſco, -evi, -ētum*, to reſt: *ac-, con-, inter-, re-quieſco*. *Sciſco, ſcīvi, ſcītum*, to ordain: ſo *ad-, con-,*

de-, præ-, re-ſciſco. Sueſco, ſuēvi, ſuētum, to be accuſtomed: ſo *aſ-, con-, de-, in-ſueſco. Paſco, pāvi, paſtum,* to feed: ſo *com-, de-paſco.* Two com pounds of *noſco* have *ĭtum* in the ſupine. *Agnoſco, agnōvi, agnĭtum,* to ow or acknowledge. *Cognoſco, -ōvi, -ĭtum,* to know: ſo *re-cognoſco. Diſc dĭdĭci, —,* to learn: ſo *ad-, con-, de-, e-, per-, præ-diſco. Poſco, pŏpoſc —,* to demand: ſo *ap-, de-, ex-, re-poſco. Compeſco, -ui, —,* to ſtop refrain: ſo *diſpeſco, -ui, —,* to ſeparate.

Theſe have neither preterite nor ſupine. *Gliſco,* to grow or increaſe Likewiſe inceptive verbs; as, *Madeſco,* to become moiſt; *areſco,* to b come dry. Such verbs, however, take the preterite and the ſupine (they have it) of their primitives; as, *Ardeſco, arſi, arſum,* from *ardeo; ab leſco, -evi, -ĭtum,* from *aboleo; deliteſco, -ui, —; reſipiſco, -ui* or *-īvi, —; r viviſco, revixi, —;* from *delitco, reſipio, revivo.*

do takes *di, ſum;* as,

Cūdo, cudi, cuſum, to forge or ſtamp: ſo *ex-, in-, per-, pro, re-cu Mando, mandi, -ſum,* to chew: ſo *præ-, re-mando. Scando, -di, -ſum,* climb: ſo *a-, con-, de, e-, ex-, in-, tran-ſcendo. Prehendo, -di, -ſum,* to ta hold of: ſo *ap-, com-, de-, re-prehendo. Accendo, -di, -ſum,* to kindle: *in-, ſuc-cendo,* (from *cando obſ.*). *Defendo, di-, -ſum,* to defend: ſo *ſendo,* from *(fendo obſ.).*

Theſe have *-ſi, -ſum. Dīvĭdo, dīvīſi, diviſum,* to divide. *Rādo, r raſum,* to ſhave: ſo *ab-, circum-, cor-, de-, e-, inter-, præ-, ſub-rado. Cl do, -ſi, -ſum,* to cloſe: ſo *circum-, con-, diſ-, ex-, in-, inter-, oc-, pra- ſe-cludo,* loſing *a. Plaudo, -ſi, -ſum,* to clap hands for joy: ſo *ap-, circ plaudo:* likewiſe *com-, diſ-, ex-, ſup-plōdo. Lūdo, luſi, luſum,* to play: *ab-, al-, col-, de-, e-, il-, inter-, ob-, præ-, pro-, re-ludo. Trudo, -ſi, -ſum,* thruſt: ſo *abſ-, con-, de-, ex-, in-, ob-, pro-, re-trudo. Lædo, -ſi, -ſum,* hurt: ſo *al-, col-, e-, il-lido. Rōdo, -ſi, -ſum,* to gnaw: ſo *ab-, ar- cum-, cor-, de-, e-, ob-, per-, præ-rodo. Vādo, vāſi, vāſum,* to go; ſo *cum-, e-, in-, per, ſuper-vado.* But the ſimple verb has ſcarcely either preterite or ſupine. *Cēdo, ceſſi, ceſſum,* to yield or give place: ſo *abſ-, ante-, con-, de-, diſ-, ex-, in-, inter-, præ-, pro-, re-, retro-, ſe-, ſuc-c Pando, -di, paſſum,* and *panſum,* to open, to ſpread: ſo *diſ-, ex-, op-, p re-pando. Comēdo, -ēdi, ēſum,* and ſometimes *-eſtum,* to eat: but *edo* ſim and *ad-, amb-, ex-, per-, ſub-, ſuper-edo,* have *ēdi, ēſum. Fundo, fūdi, ſum,* to pour forth: ſo *af-, circum-, con-, de-, diſ-, ef-, in-, inter-, of-, f pro-, re-, ſuf-, ſuper-, ſuperin-, trans-fundo. Scindo, ſcĭdi, ſciſſum,* to ſo *ab-, circum-, con-, diſ-, ex-, inter-, per-, præ-, pro-, re-, tranſ-ſc Findo, fĭdi, fiſſum,* to cleave: ſo *con-, diſ-, in-findo. Tundo, tŭtŭdi, tun* ſometimes *tūſum,* to bray or beat as in a mortar. The compounds h *tŭdi, tūſum;* as, *contundo, -tŭdi, -tūſum,* to bruiſe or break in pieces: *ex-, ob-, per-, re-tundo. Cădo, cĕcĭdi, cāſum,* to fall: ſo *incĭdo, -cĭdi, cā* to fall in. *Recĭdo, -cĭdi, -cāſum,* to fall back. *Occĭdo, cĭdi, cāſum,* to down, to die: but *ac-, con-, de-, ex-, in-, inter-, pro, ſuc-cĭdo,* have the ſupine. *Cædo, cecīdi, cæſum,* to cut, to kill. The compounds cha *æ* into *ī*; as, *accīdo, accīdi, accīſum,* to cut about: ſo *abſ-, con-, circ de-, ex-, in-, inter-, ac-, per-, præ-, re-, ſuc-cīdo. Tendo, tĕtendi, tenſum tentum,* to ſtretch out. *Tentum* is more frequent in moſt of its compou as, *at-, con-, de-, diſ-, ob-, præ-, pro-tendo. Extentum,* or *extenſum,* ar qually found: but *oſtenſum,* from *oſtendo,* is more frequent than *oſte Pēdo, pĕpēdi, pēdĭtum,* to break wind backwards: ſo *op-pedo. Pendo pendi, penſum,* to hang or weigh: ſo *ap-, de-, diſ-, ex-, im-, per-, re-, ſuſ-p* The compounds of *do,* with prep. are all of the third, except *circundo,*

have *dĭdi*, *dĭtum*; as, *abdo*, *abdĭdi*, *abdĭtum*, to hide: ſo *ad-*, *con-*, *de-*, *di-*, *in-*, *ob-*, *per-*, *pro-*, *red-*, *ſub-*, *tra-do*; alſo *decon-*, *recon-do*; and *coad-*, *ſuperad-do*; and *deper-*, *diſper-do*; alſo *crēdo*, *credĭdi*, *credĭtum*, to believe; *vendo*, *-dĭdi*, *-dĭtum*, to ſell. But *abſcondo* has *-di* (more rarely *dĭdi*), *-ĭtum*, to hide. *Strīdo*, *ſtridi*, —, to craſh or creak. *Rūdo*, *rūdi*, —, to bray as an aſs. *Sīdo*, *ſidi*, —, to ſink down. Its compounds borrow the preterite and ſupine from *ſedeo*; as, *consīdo*, *consēdi*, *conſeſſum*, to ſettle or ſit down: ſo *aſ-*, *circum-*, *de-*, *in-*, *ob-*, *per-*, *re-* *ſub-ſido.*

go or *guo* have *xi* and *ctum*; as,

Cingo, *-xi*, *-ctum*, to gird, to ſurround: ſo *ac-*, *diſ-*, *circum-*, *in-*, *præ-*, *pre-*, *ſuc-cingo*. *Flīgo*, *-xi*, *-ctum*, to daſh or beat upon: ſo *aſ-*, *con-ſligo*; alſo *proſligo*, *-āvi*, *-ātum*. *Jungo*, *-xi*, *-ctum*, to join: ſo *ab-*, *ad-*, *con-*, *de-*, *dis-*, *in-*, *inter-*, *ſe-*, *ſub-jungo*. *Lingo*, *-xi*, *-ctum*, to lick: ſo *de-*, *e-*, *pol-lingo*. *Mungo*, *-xi*, *-ctum*, to wipe or clean the noſe: ſo *e-mungo*. *Plan-go*, *-xi*, *-ctum*, to beat, to lament. *Rĕgo*, *rexi*, *rectum*, to govern: ſo *ar-*, *cor-*, *di-*, *e-*, *por-*, *ſur-rigo*. *Stingo*, or *ſtinguo*, *-xi*, *-ctum*, to daſh out, to extinguiſh: ſo *di-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *inter-*, *præ-*, *re-ſtinguo*. *Tĕgo*, *texi*, *tectum*, to cover: ſo *circum-*, *con-*, *de-*, *in-*, *ob-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *pro-*, *re-*, *ſub-*, *ſuper-tego*. *Tingo*, or *tinguo*, *-xi*, *-ctum*, to dip or dye: ſo *con-tingo*. *Ungo*, or *unguo*, *-xi*, *-ctum*, to anoint: ſo *ex-*, *in-*, *per-*, *ſuper-ungo*. *Surgo*, *ſurrexi*, *-rectum*, to riſe: ſo *aſ-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *de-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *re-ſurgo*. *Pergo*, *perrexi*, *-rectum*, to go forward. *Stringo*, *-xi*, *ſtrictum*, to bind, to ſtrain: ſo *ad-*, *con-*, *de-*, *dis-*, *ob-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *re-*, *ſub-ſtringo*. *Fingo*, *-xi*, *fictum*, to feign; ſo *aſ-*, *con-*, *ef-*, *re-fingo*. *Pingo*, *-xi*, *pictum*, to paint: ſo *ap-*, *de-pingo*. *Frango*, *frēgi*, *fractum*, to break: ſo *con-*, *de-*, *dif-*, *ef-*, *in-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *re-*, *ſuf-fringo*. *Ago*, *ēgi*, *actum*, to do, to drive: ſo *ab-*, *ad-*, *ex-*, *red-*, *ſub-*, *tranſ-*, *retroſad-ĭgo*; and *circum-*, *per-ago*. *Cogo*, (*coago*), *coēgi*, *coactum*, to gather, compel. *Satĭgo*, *-ēgi*, —, to be buſy about a thing. *Prodĭgo*, *-ēgi*, —, to laviſh or ſpend riotouſly. *Dēgo*, (*deago*), *dēgi*, —, to live or dwell. *Ambĭgo*, —, —, to doubt. *Tango*, *tĕtĭgi*, *tactum*, to touch: ſo *at-*, *con-*, *in-*, *per-tingo*. *Lĕgo*, *lēgi*, *lectum*, to gather, to read: ſo *al-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *re-*, *ſub-lego*, which retain *e*; alſo *col-*, *de-*, *e-*, *recol-*, *ſe-lĭgo*, which change *e* into *i*. *Dīlĭgo*, *dilexi*, *dilectum*, to love. *Intellĭgo*, *-lexi*, *-lectum*, to underſtand. *Negligo*, *neglexi*, *neglectum*, to neglect. *Pungo*, *pŭpŭgi*, *punctum*, to prick. The compounds have *punxi*; as, *compungo*, *compunxi*, *compunc-tum*, to prick, to vex: ſo *diſ-*, *ex-*, *inter-pungo*: but *repungo* has *repŭpŭgi*, and *repunxi*, *repunctum*, to prick again. *Pango*, *panxi*, *pactum*, to fix, to drive in, to compoſe; from *pago obſ.* (for which we ſay *paciſcor*), is *pĕpĭ-gi*, *pactum*, of old *pēgi*, to bargain. The compounds of *pango*, eſpecially thoſe which change *a* into *i*, keep *pēgi*, from the old verb *pago*; as, *com-pingo*, *-ēgi*, *-actum*, to compact or put together: ſo *impingo*, *oppango*, or *op-pingo*, *repango*, *ſuppingo*. *Spargo*, *-ſi*, *-ſum*, to ſpread: ſo *ad-*, *circum-*, *dis-*, *di-*, *in-*, *inter-*, *per-*, *pro-*, *re-ſpergo*. *Mergo*, *-ſi*, *-ſum*, to dip or plunge: ſo *de-*, *e-*, *im-*, *ſub-mergo*. *Tergo*, *-ſi*, *-ſum*, to wipe or clean: ſo *ab-*, *de-*, *ex-*, *per-tergo*. *Fīgo*, *fixi*, *fixum*, to fix or faſten: ſo *aſ-*, *con-*, *dis-*, *in-*, *of-* *per-*, *præ-*, *ſuf-*, *tranſ-figo*. *Frigo*, *-xi*, *-xum* and *-ctum*, to fry. *Vergo*, —, —, to incline or lie downward: ſo *in-*, *de-*, *e-*, *vergo*. *Clango*, —, —, to ſound a trumpet. *Ningo*, (or *ningŭo*), *-xi*, —, to ſnow. *Ango*, *anxi*, —, to vex or torment.

bo, *jo*.

Trabo, *traxi*, *tractum*, to draw: ſo *abſ-*, *at-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *de-*, *diſ-*, *ex-*, *per-*, *pro-*, *re-*, *ſub-trabo*. *Vebo*, *vexi*, *vectum*, to carry: ſo *a-*, *ad-*, *circum-*,

con-, de-, e-, in-, per-, præ-, præter-, pro-, re-, ſub-, ſuper-, tranſ-vebo. Mejo, minxi, mictum, to piſs: ſo *im-mejo*.

lo.

Cŏlo, colui, cultum, to adorn, inhabit, honour, till: ſo *ac-, circum-, ex-, in-, per-, præ-, re-colo:* alſo *occŭlo*, (*o* being changed into *u*), *occului, occultum*, to hide. *Conſulo, -ui, conſultum*, to adviſe, to conſult. *Ălo, alui, alitum*, and by *ſyncope altum*, to nouriſh. *Mŏlo, molui, molĭtum*, to grind: ſo *com-, e-, per-, molo. Antecello, excello, præcello*, (*cello obſ.*), have *cellui*, —, to excel, or ſurpaſs. *Percello, -cŭli, -culſum*, to overthrow, to aſtoniſh. *Recello*, —, —, (little uſed), to bend back. *Pello, pĕpŭli, pulſum*, to thruſt: ſo *ap-, as-, com-, de-, diſ-, ex-, im-, per-, pro-, re-pello. Fallo, fĕfelli, falſum*, to deceive. *Refello, refelli*, —, to diſapprove, to confute. *Vello, velli*, or *vulſi, vulſum*, to pull, or pinch: ſo *a-, con-, e-, inter-, præ-, re-vello:* but *de-, di-, per-, -vello*, have rather *-velli. Sallo, -li, -ſum*, to ſalt. *Pſallo, -li*, —, to play on a muſical inſtrument. *Tollo, ſuſtŭli, ſublatum*, to lift up, or take away.

mo has *ui* and *ĭtum;* as,

Frĕmo, -ui, -ĭtum, to rage, or roar: ſo *af-, circum-, con-, in-, per-, fremo. Gĕmo, -ui, -ĭtum*, to groan: ſo *ag-, circum-, con-, in-, re-gemo:* but we have *tremo, -ui*, —, to tremble: ſo *at-, circum-, con-, in-, tremo.* Theſe four have *-pſi. -ptum*, or *-ſi, -tum*, viz. *dēmo*, to take away; *cōmo*, to deck or dreſs; *prōmo*, to bring out: ſo *de-, ex-prōmo*; and *sūmo*, to take: ſo *ab-, aſ-, con-, de-, in-, pro-, re-, tran-ſumo. Ĕmo, ēmi, emptum*, to buy: ſo *adĭmo*, to take away; *dirĭmo*, to break off, to ſunder, or part; *exĭmo*, to take out; *interĭmo*, and *perĭmo*, to kill; *redĭmo*, to ranſom; *coëmo*, to buy up. *Prĕmo, preſſi, preſſum*, to preſs: ſo *ap-, com-, de-, ex-, im-, op-, per-, re-, ſup-prĭmo.*

no.

Pōno, pŏſui, pŏsĭtum, to put or place: ſo *ap-, ante-, circum-, com-, de-, diſ-, ex-, im-, inter-, op-, poſt-, præ-, pro-, re-, ſe-, ſup-, ſuper-, ſuperim-, tranſ-pono. Gigno, gĕnui,* -ĭtum, to beget: ſo *con-, e-, in-, per-, pro-, re-gigno. Căno, cĕcĭni, cantum*, to ſing: but its compounds have *-cĭnui, -centum*; as, *accino, accĭnui, accentum*, to ſing in concert: ſo *con-, in-, præ-ſuc-cino; occĭno* and *occăno*; *re-cĭno* and *re-căno. Temno*, —, —: but *contemno* has *contempſi, contemptum*, to deſpiſe. *Sperno, ſprĕvi, ſprĕtum*, to diſdain or ſlight: ſo *de-ſperno. Sterno, ſtrāvi, ſtrātum*, to lay flat, to ſtrow: ſo *ad-, con-, in-, præ-, pro-, ſub-ſterno. Sĭno, sīvi*, and *sii, sĭtum*, to permit: ſo *deſino, deſivi*, (oftener *deſii*), *deſitum*, to leave off. *Lĭno, livi*, or *lĕvi, lĭtum*, to anoint or daub: ſo *al-, circum-, col-, de-, il-, inter-, ob-, per-, præ-, re-, ſub-, ſubter-, ſuper-, ſuperil-lino. Cerno, crēvi, crētum*, to ſee, to decree, to enter upon an inheritance: ſo *de-, dis-, ex-, in-ſe-cerno:* but *cretum*, the ſupine of the ſimple verb, is ſcarcely in uſe, and *crevi*, but rarely, unleſs when it ſignifies *to enter upon an eſtate.*

po has *pſi* and *ptum;* as,

Carpo: ſo *con-, de-, dis-, ex-, præ-cerpo. Clepo*, to ſteal. *Repo*, to creep: ſo *ad-, cor-, de-, di-, e-, ir-, intro-, ob-, per-, pro-, ſub-repo. Scalpo*, to ſcratch, to engrave: ſo *circum-, ex-ſcalpo. Sculpo*, to engrave or carve: ſo *ex-, in-ſculpo. Strĕpo, -ui, -ĭtum*, to make a noiſe: ſo *ad-, circum-, in-, inter-, ob-, per-ſtrepo. Rumpo, rŭpi, ruptum*, to break: ſo *ab-, cor-, di-, e-, inter-, intro-, ir-, ob-, per-, præ-, pro-rumpo.*

quo.

Cŏquo, coxi, coctum, to boil: ſo *con-, de-, diſ-, ex-, in-, per-, re-coquo*

Linquo, liqui, —, to leave: but *relinquo* has *reliqui* and *relictum*, to forſake, ſo *de-*, and *dere-linquo*.

ro.

Quæro, -ſīvi, -sītum, to ſeek: ſo *ac-, an-, con-, diſ-, ex-, in-, per-, re-quiro*. *Tĕro, trīvi, trītum*, to wear, to bruiſe; ſo *at-, con-, de-, diſ-, ex-, in-, ob-, per-, pro-, ſub-tero*. *Verro, verri, verſum*, to ſweep, bruſh, or make clean: ſo *a-, con-, de-, e-, præ-, re-verro*. *ūro, uſſi, uſtum*, to burn: ſo *ad-, amb-, comb-, de-, ex-, in-, per-, ſub-uro*. *Curro, cŭcurri, curſum*, to run: ſo *ac-, con-, de-, diſ-, ex-, in-, oc-, per-, præ-, pro-curro*: theſe ſometimes have, ſometimes want, the reduplication of the preterite; as, *accurri*, or *accucurri*, &c.; likewiſe *circum-, re-, ſuc-, tranſ-curro*, which ſeldom or never double the firſt ſyllable of the preterite. *Gĕro, geſſi, geſtum*, to carry: ſo *ag-, con-, di-, in-, pro-, re-, ſug-gero*. *Fĕro, tŭli, lātum*, to bear, bring, ſuffer: ſo *af-, ante-, au-, circum-, con-, de-, diſ-, ef-, in-, intro-, of-, per-, poſt-, præ-, præter-, pro-, re-, ſuper-, tranſ-fero*: but *ſuffero*, to bear, ſuffer, wants both the preterite and ſupine. *Furo*, to be mad, has neither preterite nor ſupine. *Sĕro, sēvi, sătum*, to ſow, to plant. Its compounds that have this ſignification have *sēvi* and *sĭtum*; as, *aſsĕro*, to ſow or plant near by; *conſĕro*, to plant together: ſo *circum-, de-, diſ-, in-, inter-, pro-, re-, ſub-, tranſ-fero*. But the compounds that ſignify *to order* or *knit*, take *ſerui, ſertum*; as, *aſsĕro, aſſerui, aſſertum*, to claim or challenge: ſo *con-, de-, diſ-, ediſ-, ex-, in-, inter-ſero*.

ſo takes *sīvi* and *sītum*; as,

Arceſſo, to call or ſend for; *capeſſo*, to take, or go about to take; *laceſſo*, to provoke; *faceſſo*, to do, to go away: but *vīſo, viſi, —*, to go, to ſee, to viſit, and *inceſſo, inceſſi, —*, to attack, want the ſupine. *Depſo, -ſui, depſtum*, to knead: ſo *con-, per-depſo*. *Pinſo, pinſui*, or *pinſi, pinſum, piſtum*, or *pinsĭtum*, to bake.

to.

Flecto, flexi, flexum, to bow: ſo *circum-, de-, in-, re-, retro-flecto*. *Plecto, plexi*, and *plexui, plexum*, to plait: ſo *implecto*. *Necto, nexi*, and *nexui, nexum*, to tie or knit: ſo *an-, con-, circum-, in-, ſub-necto*. *Pecto, pexi*, and *pexui, pexum*, to dreſs or comb: ſo *de-, ex-, re-pecto*. *Mĕto, meſſui, meſſum*, to reap, mow or cut down: ſo *de-, e-, præ-meto*. *Pĕto, -īvi, -ītum*, to ſeek, purſue: ſo *op-, com-, ex-, im-, op-, re-, ſup-peto*. *Mitto, mīſi, miſſum*, to ſend: ſo *a-, ad-, com-, circum-, de-, di-, e-, im-, inter-, intro-, o-, per-, præ-, præter-, pro-, re-, ſub-, ſuper-, tranſ-mitto*. *Verto, -ti, -ſum*, to turn: ſo *a-, ad-, animad-, ante-, circum-, con-, de-, di-, e-, im-, inter-, intro-, o-, per-, præ-, præter-, ſub-, tranſ-verto*. *Sterto, -ui, —*, to ſnort: ſo *de-ſterto*. *Siſto* (active) has *ſtĭti, ſtătum*, to ſtop: but *ſiſto* (neuter), to ſtand ſtill, borrows *ſtĕti* and *ſtātum* from *ſto*. Some think it wants both preterite and ſupine: however its compounds have *ſtĭti, ſtĭtum*; as, *aſto, aſtĭti, aſtĭtum*, to ſtand by: ſo *circum-, con-, de-, ex-, in-, inter-, ob-, per-, re-, ſub-ſiſto*: but *abſiſto* has no ſupine; even the others ſcarcely allow it.

vo.

Vivo, vixi, victum, to live: ſo *ad-, con-, per-, pro-, re-, ſuper-vivo*. *Solvo, ſolvi, ſolūtum*, to looſe: ſo *ab-, diſ-, ex-, per-, re-ſolvo*. *Volvo, volvi, volūtum*, to roll: ſo *ad-, circum-, con-, de-, e-, in-, ob-, per-, pro-, re-, ſub-volvo*.

xo.

Texo, texui, textum, to weave: ſo *at-, circum-, con-, de-, in-, inter-, ob-, per-, præ-, pro-, re-, ſub-texo*.

Of the Fourth Conjugation.

Verbs in this conjugation have *-īvi* and *-ītum*; as, *munio*, to fortify, t defend; *polio*, to poliſh; *veſtio*, to clothe.

Exc. Singultio, -īvi, ſingultum, to yex or ſob. *Sēpĕlio, -īvi, ſepultum*, t bury. *Vĕnio, vēni, ventum*, to come: ſo *ad-, ante-, circum-, con-, contra- de-, e-, in-, inter-, intro-, ob-, per-, poſt-, præ-, pro-, re-, ſub-, ſuper-veni Vēneo, venii*, —, to be ſold. *Sălio, ſalui*, and *ſalii, ſaltum*, to leap. I compounds thus; *transĭlio, -ſilui, -ſilii*, and *-ſilīvi, -ſultum*, to leap over ſo *ab-, aſ-, circum-, con-, de-, diſ-, ex-, in-, pro-, re-, ſub-, ſuper-ſilio*. Th ſupines *abſultum, circumſultum*, and *proſultum*, are not found.

cio.

Ămĭcio, amicui, rarely *amixi, amictum*, to cover or clothe. *Vincio, vinx vinctum*, to tye: ſo *circum-, de-, e-, re-vincio. Sancio, ſanxi, ſanctum*, an *ſancīvi, ſancītum*, to eſtabliſh or ratify. *Cambio, campſi, campſum*, to chan money. *Sēpio, ſepſi, ſeptum*, to hedge or incloſe: ſo *circum-, diſ-, inter ob-, præ-ſepio. Haurio, hauſi, hauſtum*, ſeldom *hauſum*, to draw out, empty: ſo *de-, ex-haurio. Sentio, ſenſi-, ſenſum*, to feel, or perceive: *aſ-, con-, diſ-, per-, præ-, ſub-ſentio. Raucio, rauſi, rauſum*, to be hoarſ *Sarcio, ſarſi, ſartum*, to mend or repair: ſo *ex-, re-ſarcio. Farcio, far ſartum*, to cram: ſo *confercio; effercio*, or *effarcio; infercio*, or *infarci refercio. Fulcio, -ſi, -tum*, to ſtay or uphold: ſo *con-, eſ-, in-, per-, ſu fulcio.* The compounds of *pario*, of the third conjugation, have *pĕr pertum*; as, *apĕrio, aperui, apertum*, to open; *opĕrio, operui, opertum*, ſhut, to cover: but of theſe *compĕrio* has *compĕri, compertum*, to know thing for certain. *Rĕpĕrio, repĕri, repertum*, to find.

Theſe want the preterite and ſupine; *ferio*, to ſtrike, and deſideratiu verbs; as, *cœnaturio*, to deſire, to ſup; *ſcripturio*, to have an itch writing: but from theſe laſt are excepted *părturio, -īvi*, —, to be in tr vail; *eſŭrio, -īvi, -ītum*, to be hungry; *nuptŭrio, -īvi*, —, to deſire be married.

Theſe have *īvi* in the preterite, but want the ſupine; *cæcūtio*, to dim-ſighted; *geſtio*, to ſhew one's joy by the geſture of his body; *glŏci* to cluck or cackle as a hen; *dementio*, to be mad; *ineptio*, to play th fool; *fĕrōcio*, to be fierce: but *proſ ĭlio* has *proſilui*, —, to leap forth.

Of Deponent and common Verbs. See chap. ix.

In order to find the participle perfect, ſuppoſe the active voice, a give it a perfect and ſupine, viz. from *conor*, make *cono*, which will ha *conavi, conatum*, from which form *conatus*. See p. 54. So from *vere* ſuppoſe *vereo, -ui, -itum*, whence *veritus*. From *fungor*, will come t ſame way *functum* and *functus*; and from *potior, potitum, potitus.*

Exc. There are none in the firſt conjugation.

In the ſecond there are; *reor, rătus*, to think; *miſereor, miſertus*, to p ty; *fătĕor, foſſus*, to confeſs; and its compounds *prof ĭteor, profeſſus*, declare openly, to profeſs; *conf ĭteor, confeſſus*, to own or acknowledg *medeor*, to heal; *diffiteor*, to deny, have no part. perfect.

In the third are, *lăbor, lapſus*, to ſlide; *ulciſcor, ultus*, to revenge; *tor, uſus*, to uſe; *lŏquor*, to ſpeak; and *ſĕquor*, to follow, have *-quū* and *-cūtus*; *quĕror, queſtus*, to complain; *nĭtor, niſus*, or *nixus*, to e deavour, lean upon; *păciſcor, pactus*, to bargain; *grădior, greſſus*, go: ſo *aggredior*, &c.; *prof ĭciſcor, profectus*, to go a journey; *nanciſc nactus*, to get; *pătior, paſſus*, to ſuffer: ſo *perpĕtior, peſſus*; *apiſcor, apt*

to get: but *adĭpiſcor* and *indipiſcor* have *adeptus*, &c.; *comminiſcor*, *commentus*, to deviſe or invent; *fruor*, *frŭitus*, or *fructus*, to enjoy; *oblīviſcor*, *oblītus*, to forget; *expergiſcor*, *experrectus*, to awake; *mŏrior*, *mortuus*, to die; *naſcor*, *nātus*, to be born; *orior*, *ortus*, *orīri*, to riſe.

** The three laſt have the future participle in *ĭturus*, *moriturus*, *naſciturus*, *oriturus*.

Theſe have no participle perfect; *divertor*, to turn aſide, to take lodging; *defetiſcor*, to be weary or faint; *iraſcor*, to be angry; *liquor*, to melt or to be diſſolved; *reminiſcor*, to remember or call to mind; *ringor*, to grin like a dog: ſo *ſubringor*; *prævertor*, to get before: *veſcor*, to eat.

In the fourth are, *experior*, *expertus*, to try or attempt; *metior*, *menſus*, to meaſure; *opperior*, *oppertus*, to wait or tarry for one; *ordior*, *orſus*, to begin: ſo *ex-*, *red-ordior*.

A deponent verb is conjugated through all the three firſt moods and tenſes as any other verb in the paſſive: ſo *conor* is declined as *amor*, only this has a paſſive, but that an active ſignification, viz. *conor*, I attempt, or do attempt, &c. I give the reſt at large.

Infinitive.

Preſ. *Conari*, to attempt.
Perf. *Conatum eſſe* vel *fuiſſe*, to have or had attempted.
Fut. *Conaturum eſſe* vel *fuiſſe*, to be about to attempt.

Supines.

Perf. *Conatum*, to attempt.
Laſt. *Conatu*, to attempt or to be attempted.

Participles.

Preſ. *Conans*, attempting.
Fut. *Conaturus*, about to attempt.

Gerunds.	Participles.
Nom. *Conandum*, attempting.	*Perf.* *Conatus*, having attempted.
Gen. *Conandi*, of attempting.	*Fut.* *Conandus*, to be attempted.
Dat. *Conando*, to attempting.	

** In thoſe of a neuter ſignification, this laſt is ſeldom uſed; for we do not find *labendus* from *labor*.

I. Remarks, ſhewing when a Latin verb is to be rendered otherwiſe in Engliſh than in the foregoing examples.

1. When the continuation of a thing is ſignified, the Engliſh verb may be varied in all its tenſes by the participle in *ing*, with the verb *am*; as,

Preſ.	*I am reading*,	for	*I read.*
Imp.	*I was reading*,		*I did read.*
Perf.	*I have been reading*,		*I have read.*
Plup.	*I had been reading*,		*I had read.*
Fut.	*I ſhall be reading*,		*I ſhall read.*

So likewiſe in the paſſive voice, *The houſe is building*, domus ædificatur; *The leſſon was prefcribing*, lectio præſcribebatur. Sometimes *a* is ſet before the participle; as, *While the houſe is a-building*, *It is a-doing*, *He is a-going*.

2. When a queſtion is aſked, the nominative caſe or perſon is ſet after the verb, or the ſign of the verb; as, *Love I?* *Do I love?* *Can I love?* *Should be be loved?*

3. We have made *thou* the ſecond perſon ſingular, to diſtinguiſh it from the plural: but it is cuſtomary with us, (as alſo with the French and others), though we ſpeak but to one particular perſon, to uſe the plural *you*; and never *thou*, but when we addreſs ourſelves to Almighty God; or otherwiſe, when we ſignify familiarity, diſdain, or contempt.

4. The perfect of the indicative is often Engliſhed as the imperfect; as, *Nunquam amavi hunc hominem*, I never loved [or did love] this man. See a train of examples in Ovid. Metamorph. lib. 1. from v. 21. to 39.

5. The perfect tenſe is frequently Engliſhed by *had* after *antequam*, *poſtquam*, *ubi* or *ut* for *poſtquam*; as, *Poſtquam ſuperavimus Iſthmum*, after we had [were] paſt over the Iſthmus, Ovid. *Hæc ubi dedit*, when he had ſpoken theſe words, Liv. *Ut me ſalutavit, ſtatim Romam profectus eſt*, after he had ſaluted me, *&c.* Cic.

6. We have choſen *may*, *can*, *might*, *could*, &c. for the Engliſh of the ſubjunctive mood, becauſe theſe are the moſt frequent ſigns of it, and diſtinguiſh it beſt from other moods; but very often it is the ſame with the indicative, ſave only that it hath ſome conjunction or indefinite word before it; ſuch as, *If*, *ſeeing*, *leſt*, *that*, *although*, *I wiſh*, &c.; as, *Si amem* if I love; *Ne amem*, leſt I love; *Cauſa eſt cur amem*, it is the cauſe why I love, Ovid. And frequently it hath both; as, *Oro ut ames*, I intreat that you may love, *Idem.*

7. The preſent of the ſubjunctive after *quaſi*, *tanquam*, and the like, is ſometimes Engliſhed as the imperfect; as, *Quaſi intelligant qualis ſit*, as if they underſtood what kind of perſon he is, *Cic.*

8. When a queſtion is aſked, the preſent of the ſubjunctive is frequently Engliſhed by *ſhall* or *ſhould*; as, *Eloquar an ſileam?* ſhall I ſpeak or be ſilent? *Virg. Singula quid referam?* why ſhould I mention every thing? *Ovid.* Likewiſe after *non eſt quod*; as, *Non eſt* (ſupple *cauſa*) *quod eas*, there is no reaſon why you ſhould go, *or* you need not go. Sometimes it is Engliſhed by *would*; as, *In facinus jurâſſe putes*, you would think they had ſworn to [commit] wickedneſs, *Ovid.*

9. We have Engliſhed the perfect of the ſubjunctive in *rim* by *may have*, (as, *Ne fruſtra hi tales viri venerint*, that ſuch men as theſe may not have come in vain, *Cic. Forſitan audieris*, you may perhaps have heard it), to diſtinguiſh it from the preſent and plu-perfect, by the ſigns by which it is alſo moſt frequently Engliſhed; as, *Ut ſic dixerim*, that I may ſo ſpeak. *Ubi ego audiverim?* where ſhould I have heard it? *Ut homo tantas ſtroges ediderit?* could one man make ſo great a ſlaughter? *Virg. Fortaſſe errârim*, perhaps I might be in an error, *Plin. Oratores quos viderim peritiſſimi*, the ableſt orators I have ſeen [or could ſee] *Quintil.*

10. This perfect in *rim* ſometimes inclines very much to a future ſignification, and then it is Engliſhed by *ſhould*, *would*, *could*, *can*, *will*, *ſhall*; as, *Citius crediderim*, I ſhould ſooner believe, *Juv. Libenter audierim*, I would gladly hear, *Cic. Ciceronem cuicunque eorum facile oppoſuerim*, I could eaſily match Cicero with any of them, *Quintil. Non facile dixerim*, I cannot well tell, *Cic. Nec tamen excluſerim alios*, and yet I will not exclude others, *Plin. Si paululum modo quid te fugerit, ego perierim*, if you but miſs in the leaſt, I ſhall be undone, *Ter.* But all theſe ways of ſpeaking, though indeed they reſpect the future as to the execution, yet they ſeem alſo to look a little beyond it, to a time when their futurity ſhall be paſt; and ſo come near in ſignification to the future, in *ro.*

11. The perfect of the ſubjunctive after *quaſi*, *tanquam*, and the like

may ſometimes be Engliſhed by *had*; as, *Quaſi affuerim*, as if I had been preſent, *Plaut. Perinde ac ſi jam vicerint*, as if they had already overcome, *Cic.*

12. The plu-perfect in *iſſem* is ſometimes Engliſhed by *ſhould*; as, *Imperaret quod vellet, quodcunque imperaviſſet, ſe eſſe facturos*, he might command what he pleaſed, whatever he commanded [ſhould command] they would do, *Cæſ. Fœdus ictum eſt his legibus, ut cujus populi tives eo certamine vicíſſent, is alteri imperaret*, an agreement was made on theſe terms, that that people whoſe countrymen ſhould be victorious in that combat, ſhould have the ſovereignty over the other, *Liv.* And this happens when a thing is ſignified as future at a certain paſt time referred to, and commonly takes place, when what was formerly ſaid directly, is afterwards recited indirectly; as, *Ne dubita, dabitur quodcunque optáris*, doubt not whatſoever thou ſhalt chuſe ſhall be given thee, *Ovid. Sol Phaëthonti facturum ſe eſſe dixit, quicquid optáſſet*, the Sun told Phaethon, that he would do whatſoever he ſhould chuſe, *Cic.* Where it is worth noticing, that what was the future of the ſubjunctive in the direct ſpeech becomes the plu-perfect in the indirect recital of it. See Turner's Exerciſes, p. 21. &c. but, as we have ſaid, p. 43. the plu-perfect, notwithſtanding its coming in the place of a future, ſtill retains its own proper compound time, that is, it was prior to a thing now paſt at the time of the recital by Cicero, though it was future when firſt ſpoken by the Sun. And therefore there is no reaſon for making this termination *iſſem* a future tenſe, as Mr Turner does.

13. Though the proper Engliſh of the future in *ro* be *ſhall have*, yet generally the *have*, or the *ſhall*, and frequently both, are omitted; as, *Qui Antonium oppreſſerit, is bellum confecerit*, he who ſhall cut off Antony ſhall put an end to the war, *Cic. Haud deſinam donec perfecero hoc*, I will not give over till I have effected this, *Ter. Si negaverit*, if he denies it, *Cic.* Sometimes it is Engliſhed by *will*; as, *Dixerit fortaſſe aliquis*, ſomebody will perhaps ſay, *Cic. Aut conſolando, aut conſilio, aut re, juvero*, I will aſſiſt you, either by comforting you, or with counſel, or with money, *Idem.* But though we thus render the future in *ro* in our language, (and though (which is more material) very frequently it and the future of the indicative are uſed promiſcuouſly), yet I cannot be perſuaded, that in any inſtance the formal ſignifications of theſe are the ſame, as Mr Johnſon contends, p. 339. but ſtill think, with the great Voſſius, that the future in *ro* is always a future-perfect; that is, that there is a time inſinuated when a thing yet future ſhall be finiſhed or paſt, and that even when a future of the indicative is joined with it, which in order of time ſhould be done before it; as, *Pergratum mihi feceris, ſi diſputabis*, you ſhould have done [ſhall do] me a great favour, if you ſhall diſpute, *Cic.* For what hinders that we may not faintly hint at the finiſhing of an action yet future, without formally conſidering the finiſhing of another action on which it depends; and on the contrary? But if the promiſcuous uſage of tenſes, one for another, be ſufficient to make them formally the ſame, then we ſhall confound all tenſes, and overthrow the very arguments Mr Johnſon makes uſe of againſt Sanctius, with reſpect to the tenſes of the infinitive.

14. The *to* of the infinitive is generally omitted after *may*, *can*, *might*, *would*, *could*, (which are ſometimes verbs themſelves, and not the bare ſigns of them); alſo after *muſt*, *bid*, *dare*, *let*, *help*, and *make*.

15. But what is moſt to be regarded in the infinitive, is, that when it hath an accuſative before it, it is commonly Engliſhed as the indicative mood, the particle *that* being ſometimes put before it, but oftener underſtood. And it is carefully to be remarked, that the ſame tenſes of the infinitive are differently Engliſhed, according as the preceding verb varies its tenſes; — as will appear in the following ſcheme.

Dicit me ſcribere, he ſays [that] I write.
Dixit me ſcribere, he ſaid [that] I was writing.
Dicet me ſcribere, he ſhall ſay [that] I am writing.
Dicit me ſcripſiſſe, he ſays [that] I wrote, or did write.
Dixit me ſcripſiſſe, he ſaid [that] I had written.
Dicet me ſcripſiſſe, he ſhall ſay [that] I have written, or did write.
Dicit me ſcripturum, [eſſe], he ſays [that] I will write.
Dixit me ſcripturum, [eſſe], he ſaid [that] I would write.
Dicet me ſcripturum, [eſſe], he ſhall ſay [that] I will write.
Dicit me ſcripturum, [fuiſſe], he ſays [that] I would have written.
Dixit me ſcripturum, [fuiſſe], he ſaid [that] I would have written.
Dicet me ſcripturum, [fuiſſe], he ſhall ſay [that] I would have written.

It will be of great uſe to accuſtom the learner to render the infinitive after this manner, both in Engliſh and Latin, eſpecially after he has been taught ſomething of conſtruction: and then to cauſe him vary the accuſative *me* into *te*, *ſe*, *illum*, *hominem*, *fœminam*, &c.; and theſe again into the plural, *nos*, *vos*, *ſe*, *illos*, *homines*, *fœminas*, &c. But he muſt be careful to make the participles agree with them in gender, number, and caſe.

Note 1. That when the preceding verb is of the preſent or future tenſe, the future of the infinitive, with *eſſe*, is rendered by *ſhall* or *will*; and when it is of the perfect tenſe, the future of the infinitive is rendered by *would*, as in the examples above; and ſometimes by *ſhould*; as, *Dixi te ſciturum eſſe*, I ſaid that you ſhould know.

Note 2. That when the preceding verb is of the imperfect or plu-perfect tenſes, the Engliſh of the infinitive is the ſame as when it is of the perfect.

16. The perfect of the indicative and ſubjunctive paſſive, made up with *ſum* or *ſim*, are Engliſhed by *am*, *art*, *is*, *are*, inſtead of *have been*, when the thing is ſignified to be juſt now paſt; as, *Vulneratus ſum*, I am wounded; *Opus finitum eſt*, the work is finiſhed; *Cùm tempora mutata ſint*, ſince the times are changed.

17. When it is made up by *fui*, it is frequently Engliſhed by *was*, *were*, *were*; as, *Roma fuit capta*, Rome was taken; as is alſo what is called the *plu-perfect*, with *eram* and *eſſem*; as, *Labor finitus erat*, the labour was finiſhed; *Si labor finitus eſſet*, if the labour were finiſhed.

II. Remarks on the Latin Conjugations.

1. A great part of the paſſive voice, and ſometimes of the active, is made up of two of its own participles and the auxiliary verb *ſum*, (of which you have the full conjugation, p. 75.), after this manner:

The participle perfect with	*ſum* or *fui*	makes the	perf.	indicat.	paſſive.
	eram or *fueram*		plup.		
	ſim or *fuerim*		perf.	ſubjunct.	
	eſſem or *fuiſſem*		plup.		
	fuero		fut.		
	eſſe or *fuiſſe*		perf.	infinit.	
The participle fut. act. with	*eſſe* or *fuiſſe*		fut.	infinit.	active.

2. Having, p. 43. laid it down as a probable opinion, that every part of a verb, with all its participles, have a certain fixed time, ſimple or compound, which they formally and of their own nature ſignify, it will perhaps be here expected, that I ſhould account for that great variety that is found in the paſſive voice. To put this matter in the cleareſt light I am able, I muſt premiſe another diviſion of the tenſes, viz. into *paſſing* and *paſt*; or into ſuch as import the continuance of an action or thing, without regard to the ending or finiſhing of it, and ſuch as import that the thing is finiſhed (or to be finiſhed) and done. Of the firſt ſort are the preſent, imperfect, and future-imperfect; of the ſecond ſort, are the perfect, plu-perfect, and future-perfect; ſee p 42. From this diviſion of the tenſes, together with what we have formerly ſaid, we are furniſhed with an eaſy method of diſtinguiſhing all the parts of the paſſive. Thus, for inſtance, let the ſubject of diſcourſe be the building of an houſe. 1. When I ſay, *Domus ædificatur*, I mean that it is juſt now a-building, but not finiſhed. 2. When *ædificabatur*, that it was then, or at a certain paſt time, a-building, but not then finiſhed. 3. *Ædificabitur*, that ſome time hence it ſhall be a-building, without any formal regard to the finiſhing of it. But when I make uſe of the participle-perfect, I always ſignify a thing completed and ended; but with theſe ſubdiſtinctions, 1. *Ædificata eſt*, I mean ſimply, that it is finiſhed, without any regard to the time when. 2. *Ædificata fuit*, it is finiſhed, and ſome time ſince has intervened. 3. *Ædificata erat*, it was finiſhed at a certain paſt time referred to, with which it was cotemporary. 4. *Ædificata fuerat*, it was finiſhed before a certain paſt time referred to, to which it was prior. 5. *Ædificata erit*, it ſhall be finiſhed ſome time hereafter, either without regard to a particular time when, or with reſpect to a certain time yet future, with which its finiſhing ſhall be cotemporary. 6. and laſtly, *Ædificata fuerit*, it ſhall be finiſhed and paſt before another thing yet future, to which its finiſhing ſhall be prior. And thus we have nine different times, or complications of times, without confounding them with one another. But then how comes it to paſs, that theſe are ſo frequently uſed promiſcuouſly? I anſwer, That this proceeds from one or more of theſe four reaſons: 1. Becauſe it very frequently happens in diſcourſe, that we have no occaſion particularly to conſider theſe various relations and complications of times; and it is the ſame thing to our purpoſe, whether the thing is, or was done, or a-doing; or whether it was done juſt now, or ſome time ago; or whether another thing was (or ſhall be) cotemporary with or prior to it; and the matter being thus, we reckon ourſelves at liberty to take ſeveral parts of the verb at random, as being ſecure, not only of being underſtood, but alſo, that in theſe circumſtances, whatever we pitch on, even when examined by the rules above, ſhall be found literally true. 2. It is uſual with us to ſtate ourſelves as preſent with, and, as it were, eye-witneſſes of the things we relate, though really they were tranſacted long before; whence it is,

that we frequently uſe the preſent inſtead of ſome paſt time. 3. It is to be remarked, that there are ſome verbs, the action whereof is in ſome ſenſe finiſhed when begun; in which caſe, it will ſometimes be all one whether we uſe the paſſing or paſt tenſes. And, 4. the preſent tenſe (which, ſtrictly ſpeaking, is gone before we pronounce it) is generally taken in a larger acceptation, and ſometimes uſed for the future, when we ſignify that the execution is very near, or (according to Perizonius) when, together with the action, we take in alſo the preparation to it. The brevity we are confined to will not allow us to illuſtrate theſe things with examples: but by them, I think, we may account for the promiſcuous uſage of the tenſes, in both voices; and what cannot be reduced to theſe, ſeems to be an abuſe of the language; and, being very rarely to be met with, and perhaps only among the poets, ought not to be made a common ſtandard. I ſhall only add for a proof, that theſe tenſes are not always to be uſed indifferently; that when we ſignify a thing to be juſt now finiſhed, we cannot uſe *fui* or *fuerim*, or *fuiſſe*, but *ſum*, *ſim*, and *eſſe*.

3. Whether the learner ſhould be obliged to get by heart theſe parts of the paſſive that are ſupplied by *ſum*, or if they ſhould be referred to conſtruction, (to which they ſeem more naturally to belong), I leave to the diſcretion of the maſter, and therefore have put them in a ſmaller character.

4. Beſides theſe parts which are thus made up, all the other parts may be reſolved into its own participles, and the verb *ſum*, though their ſignifications are not preciſely the ſame; as

Amo,	*amabam,*	*amavi,*	*amaveram,*	*amabo.*
Sum amans,	*eram amans,*	*fui amans,*	*fueram amans,*	*ero amans,* or *ſum amaturus.*
Amor,	*amabar,*	*amabor,*	*amer,*	*amarer.*
Sum amatus,	*eram amatus,*	*ero amatus,*	*amatus ſim,*	*amatus eſſem.*

5. The participle in *rus* with the verb *ſum* is frequently uſed inſtead of the future of the indicative, eſpecially if purpoſe or intention is ſignified; as, *Profecturus ſum*, or *proficiſcar*, I will go, or I am to go; and with *ſim* and *eſſem*, inſtead of the future-imperfect, or plu-perfect of the ſubjunctive; as, *Non dubito quin ſit facturus*, I doubt not but he will do it; *Non dubitavi quin eſſet facturus*, I doubted not but he would do it; and not *quin fecerit*, or *faceret*, or *feciſſet*.

6. We have not joined *ero* with *fuero* for the future of the ſubjunctive, becauſe we thought it incongruous to couple words of different moods; though it muſt be owned, that it comes nearer in ſignification to the future of the ſubjunctive than that of the indicative; as, *Ovid. Qui cum victus erit*, is much the ſame as *victus fuerit*: And ſo theſe ancient lawyers, Scævola, Brutus, and Manilius, underſtood the words of the Attinian law, *Quod ſubreptum erit, ejus rei æterna auctoritas eſto.* But that a preterite time is there inſinuated, is not owing to the word *erit*, but to the preterite-participle with which it is joined, as they learnedly argue. See Aulus Gellius, lib. 17. chap. 7.

7. We have omitted the termination *minor* in the ſecond perſon plural of the imperative, not thinking it fit to make that an ordinary ſtandard (as the ordinary Rudiments do), which is to be found only once or twice in Plautus, Epid. 5. 2. *Facto opere arbitraminor*; and Pſeud. 2. 2. *Paritote progrediminor.*

8. For the ſame reaſon we have excluded the ancient termination *aſſo* in the future ſubjunctive of the firſt conjugation; as, *excantaſſo* in the laws of the twelve tables; *levaſſo* in Ennius; *abjuraſſo*, *invitaſſo*, *cœnaſſo*, *iritaſſo*, *ſervaſſo*, &c. in Plautus; for *excantavero*, *levavero*, &c: to which may be added *eſſo* of the ſecond conjugation; as, *liceſſit*, idem; *prohibeſſit*, Cic. for *licuerit*, *prohibuerit*. To theſe ſome add *juſſo* for *juſſero* in that of Virg. Æn. 11. v. 467.

Catera, quâ juſſo, mecum manus inferat arma.

But though I was once of that opinion, yet I now incline, with Voſſius, to think, that it is only a *ſyncope*; but not for the reaſon brought for it by him, namely, that the other examples in *ſſo* change *r* into *ſſ*; as, *levaro*, *levaſſo*; but becauſe I believe theſe old futures were not formed from the common futures in *ero*, as he ſuppoſes, but from the ſecond perſon ſingular of the preſent of the indicative, by adding *ſo*; as, *levas*, *levaſſo*; *prohibes*, *prohibeſſo*; according to which rule, *jubeo* muſt have formed *jubeſſo*, not *juſſo*.

9. Upon the ſame account we have omitted the future of the infinitive in *aſſere* formed from *aſſo*; as, *impetraſſere*, *reconciliaſſere*, *expugnaſſere*, in Plautus, for *impetraturum eſſe*, &c.

10. Though we frequently meet with *amaturus* and *amatus eſſe* vel *fuiſſe*, &c. in the nominative; as, *Dicitur amaturus eſſe*; yet we have contented ourſelves with the accuſative, *amaturum* and *amatum*, as moſt common, reſerving the diſtinction between theſe to conſtruction. [See part 3. N° 5.

11. The future of the infinitive paſſive is made up of the firſt ſupine and *iri*, the infinitive paſſive of *eo*; and therefore it is not varied in numbers and genders, as the parts made up of the participle with *ſum*.

12. But the ſupine with *ire* is not the future of the infinitive active, as ſome teach; for ſuch phraſes as theſe, *Amatum ire*, *doctum ire*, are rather of the preſent than future tenſe.

13. The participle in *dus* with *eſſe* and *fuiſſe*, is not properly the future of the infinitive paſſive, as is commonly believed: for it does not ſo much import *futurity*, as *neceſſity*, *duty*, or *merit*. For there is a great difference between theſe two ſentences, *Dicit literas à ſe ſcriptum iri*, and *Dicit literas à ſe ſcribendas eſſe*; the firſt ſignifying, *That a letter will be written by him*, or, *That he will write a letter*; and the ſecond, *That a letter muſt be written by him*, or, *He is obliged to write a letter*. For though Sanctius and Meſſ. de Port Royal contend, that this participle is ſometimes uſed for ſimple futurity, yet I think Perizonius and Johnſon have clearly evinced the contrary.

14. It is to be noted, that the imperative mood wants the firſt perſon both ſingular and plural, becauſe no man can or need command or exhort himſelf; or if he does, he muſt juſtle himſelf out of the firſt into the ſecond perſon, as in that of Catullus ſpeaking to himſelf, *At tu, Catulle, deſtinatus obdura*; but you, Catullus, continue obſtinate.

15. The preſent of the ſubjunctive is moſt frequently uſed inſtead of the imperative, eſpecially in forbidding, after *ne*, *nemo*, *nullus*, &c. as, *valeas*, farewell, for *vale*; *ne facias*, do it not, rather than *ne fac*. And ſometimes the future of the ſubjunctive; as, *tu videris*, ſee you to it; *ne dixeris*, don't ſay it. And ſometimes alſo the future of the indicative; as, *non occides*, thou ſhalt not kill, for *ne occide* or *occidito*. *Sed valebis, meaque negotia videbis*, Cic. i. e. *ſed vale, meaque negotia vide*. *Referes ergo hæc, et*

nuncius ibis Pelida genitori, Virg. i. e. *refer et ito*. But it is to be remarked, that none of theſe are proper imperatives; for to the firſt is underſtood, *oro*, *rogo*, *peto*, or the like, with *ut*; as alſo to the ſecond, *ut* is underſtood, or *ne* expreſſed; and the third is only a command by conſequence, becauſe of the authority, influence, or power of the ſpeaker: for which reaſon, and to keep the moods from interfering with one another, we have excluded theſe from the imperative, though the common Rudiments take in the firſt, and Alvarus the ſecond and third. However, it is obſervable, that we ſhew moſt civility and reſpect when we uſe the ſubjunctive, and moſt authority by the future of the indicative, and *nto* of the imperative; which laſt is the ordinary ſtrain in which laws are delivered. But this rule is not always followed.

16. The *ris* of the ſecond perſon paſſive is more uſual than *re*; and *erunt* of the perfect of the indicative active than *ere*; eſpecially in proſe; in which, if a vowel follow, they are very rarely to be met with.

III. Remarks upon Engliſh verbs.

1. An Engliſh verb hath only two tenſes, diſtinguiſhed by different terminations, and both in the active voice, viz. the preſent and preterite. The preſent is the verb itſelf, and the preterite is commonly made by adding *ed* to it, or *d*, when it ends in *e*; as, *fill*, *filled*; *love*, *loved*.

2. All the other parts of the active, and the whole paſſive, is made up of the auxiliary verbs *do*, *have*, *ſhall*, *will*, *may*, *can*, and *am*; as in p 44, and 45, and in the example, *to love*, p. 46, &c.

3. An Engliſh verb hath different terminations for the perſons of the ſingular number. The preſent hath three or four. The firſt perſon is the verb itſelf; the ſecond ends in *eſt* or *ſt*; the third in *eth*, *es*, or *s*. The preterite hath only two; the firſt commonly ending in *ed*, and the ſecond in *eſt* or *ſt*. But the third perſon ſingular of the preterite, and all the perſons plural, both of it and the preſent, cannot otherwiſe be diſtinguiſhed than by the nominatives before them; which therefore can never be omitted, as in the Latin.

4. We have two participles, the preſent ending always in *ing*, and the preterite ending regularly in *ed*, but very frequently in *en* and *t*.

5. There are a great many irregular Engliſh verbs; but it is to be noted, 1. That that irregularity relates only to the termination of the preterite tenſe, and the paſſive participle. 2. That it reaches only ſuch words as are native, and originally Engliſh. 3. That it is to be found only in words of one ſyllable, or derived from words of one ſyllable.

Verbs irregular by contraction.

Theſe irregularities may be reduced to the following heads.

1. The *d* is changed into *t* after *ch*, *ck*, *ll*, *ſs*, *p*, *x*, as, *ſnatcht*, *checkt*, *dwelt*, *ſmelt*, (with one *l*), *paſt*, *ſnapt*, *mixt*. But when a diphthong goes before *p*, it is either ſhortened, or changed into a ſingle ſhort vowel; as *kept*, *ſlept*, *wept*, *crept*, *ſwept*, *leapt*, from *keep*, *ſleep*, *weep*, *creep*, *ſweep*, *leap*; as alſo, ſometimes before *l*, *m*, *n*, or *ve* turned into *f*; as, *deal*, *dealt*; *feel*, *felt*; *dream*, *dreamt*; *mean*, *meant*; *leave*, *left*; *bereave*, *bereft*. Theſe, however, as well as ſome below, are to be conſidered not as irregular but contracted; and the entire form is generally to be preferred; as, *dreamed* rather than *dreamt*, &c.

Some verbs ending in *d* or *t*, have the preſent, paſt time, and participle perfect, the ſame; as, *beat, burſt, caſt, coſt, cut, bit, hurt, knit, ſhut, light, put, quit, read,* (only the paſt time and participle are pronounced ſhort, viz. *red, red,* like *lead, led, led*), *rent, rid, ſet, ſhed, ſhred, ſlit, ſplit, ſpread, thruſt, wet.* Others vary a little from the preſent, by ſhortening the diphthong; as, *lead, led; feed, fed; ſpeed, ſped; ſweat, ſweet; bleed, bled; breed, bred; meet, met.* When a conſonant comes before *d*, it is ſometimes changed into *t*; as, *bend, bent; lend, lent; ſend, ſent; rend, rent; build, built; gild, gilt; geld, gelt; gird, girt:* but the laſt have alſo *gilded, gelded, girded.*

Others, though they do not end in *d* or *t*, are formed alſo by contraction; as, *have, had,* (for *haved*); *make, made; flee, fled; ſhoe, ſhod; light:* and ſome change alſo the vowel; as, *ſell, ſold; tell, told; clothe, clad; ſtand, ſtood.*

The reſt of the other irregular verbs are contained in the following liſts:

I. *Such as have their preterite and paſſive participle the ſame.*

Abide,	abode.	Freight,	freighted	Shine,	{ſhone. ſhined.	Swing,	ſwung.
Awake,	{awaked. awoke.	Grind,	ground.	Shoot,	ſhot.	Teach,	taught.
Beſeech,	beſought.	Hang,	{hanged. hung.	Slink,	ſlunk.	Think,	thought.
Bring,	brought.	Hear,	heard.	Spin,	{ſpun. ſpan.	Will,	would.
Buy,	bought.	Lay,	laid.	Stick,	ſtuck.	Win,	won.
Can,	could.	May,	might.	Sting,	ſtung.	Wind,	wound.
Catch,	caught.	Pay,	paid.	Strike,	ſtruck.	Wit,	wot.
Fight,	fought.	Say,	ſaid.	String,	ſtrung.	Work,	wrought.
Find,	found.	Seek,	ſought.			Wring,	wrung.
Fling,	flung.	Shall,	ſhould.				

II. *Such as have the preterite and participle perfect different.*

Am,	was,	been.	Drink,	drank,	drunken.	Know,	knew,	known.
Bake,	baked,	baken.	Drive,	drove,	driven.	Lade,	laded,	laden.
Bear,	bare,	born.	Eat,	ate,	eaten.	Load,	loaded,	loaden.
Beget,	{begat, begot,	begotten.	Fall,	fell,	fallen.	Lie,	lay,	lain.
			Fly,	flew,	flown.	Melt,	melted,	molten.
Begin,	began,	begun.	Fold,	folded,	folden.	Mow,	mowed,	{mowed mown.
Bid,	bade,	bidden.	Forſake,	forſook,	forſaken.			
Bind,	bound,	{bound. bounden	Freeze,	froze,	frozen.	Owe,	{owed, ought,	owen.
Bite,	bit,	bitten.	Get,	{gat, got,	gotten.	Ride,	rode,	ridden.
Blow,	blew,	blown.	Give,	gave,	given.	Ring,	{rang, rung,	rung.
Break,	{brake, broke,	broken.	Go,	went,	gone.			
			Grave,	graved,	{graved. graven.	Riſe,	roſe,	riſen.
Chide,	chid,	chidden.	Grow,	grew,	grown.	Rive,	rived,	riven.
Chooſe,	choſe,	choſen.	Heave,	{hove, heaved	{hoven. heaved.	Rot,	rotted,	rotten.
Cleave,	clave,	cloven.				Run,	ran,	run.
Cling,	clang,	clung.	Help,	helped,	{helped holpen.	Saw,	ſawed,	ſawn.
Come,	came,	come.				See,	ſaw,	ſeen.
Crow,	crew,	crowed.	Hew,	hewed,	hewen.	Seethe,	ſod,	ſodden.
Dare,	durſt,	dared.	Hide,	hid,	hidden.	Shake,	ſhook,	ſhaken.
Dig,	dug,	digged.	Hold,	held,	{held. holden.	Shape,	ſhaped,	ſhapen.
Do,	did,	done.				Shave,	ſhaved,	ſhaven.
Draw,	drew,	drawn.				Shear,	ſhore,	ſhorn.

Shew,	ſhewed,	ſhewn.
Show,	ſhowed,	ſhown.
Snow,	ſnowed,	ſnown.
Shrink,	ſhrank, / ſhrunk,	ſhrunk.
Shrive,	ſhrove,	ſhriven.
Sing,	ſang, / ſung,	ſung.
Sink,	ſank, / ſunk,	ſunk.
Sit,	ſat,	ſitten.
Slay,	ſlew,	ſlain.
Slide,	ſlid,	ſlidden.
Sling,	ſlang, / ſlung,	ſlung.
Smite,	ſmote,	ſmitten
Sow,	ſowed,	ſown.
Speak,	ſpake, / ſpoke,	ſpoken.
Spin,	ſpan, / ſpun,	ſpun.
Spit,	ſpat,	ſpitten.
Spring,	ſprang, / ſprung,	ſprung.
Steal,	ſtole,	ſtolen.
Stink,	ſtank,	ſtunk.
Straw,	ſtrawed,	ſtrown.
Strew,	ſtrewed,	ſtrown.
Stride,	ſtrode,	ſtridden
Strike,	ſtruck,	ſtricken
Strive,	ſtrove,	ſtriven.
Strow,	ſtrowed,	ſtrown.
Swear,	ſware, / ſwore,	ſworn.
Swell,	ſwelled,	ſwol
Swim,	ſwam, / ſwum,	ſwu
Take,	took,	take
Tear,	tore,	tor
Thrive,	throve,	thri
Throw,	threw,	thr
Tread,	trode,	trod
Waſh,	waſhed,	wa
Wax,	waxed,	wa
Wear,	wore,	wo
Weave,	wove,	wo
Wreathe,	wreathed,	wre
Write,	wrote, / writ,	wri
Writhe,	writhed,	wri

*** In many of theſe the paſt time in *a*, which diſtinguiſhed it fro the participle, is quite obſolete.

Note 1. Verbs ending with a ſingle conſonant, with one vowel befo it, and if of more than one ſyllable, having the accent on the laſt ſy lable, double the conſonant in the preſent participle, as well as in eve other part of the verb in which a ſyllable is added; as, *put*, *putting*, *p teth*; *forget*, *forgetting*, *forgetteth*: but it is a fault to double it in *worſ ping*, *counſelling*, becauſe *worſhip*, *counſel*, have the accent not on the l but on the firſt ſyllable.

Note 2. That the *apoſtrophus* (which was become too common in En liſh verbs; as, *lov'd*, *lov'ſt*, for *loved*, *loveſt*), begins now to be diſu by the moſt polite writers in proſe; but poets ſtill uſe it, though not much as formerly.

Note 3. That the preterite active and the participle paſſive (when word ſerves for both) are thus diſtinguiſhed: when it hath nothing bef it, but the nominative alone, or *have* or *had* with it, it is the preterite tive; but when it hath any part of the helping verb *am*, it is the partici paſſive.

Except *come*, *gone*, *run*, *ſet*, *riſen*, *fallen*, *grown*, *withered*; and ſu like intranſitive verbs, which have frequently the paſſive ſigns *am*, &c. inſtead of *have* in the perfect tenſe, and *was*, *waſt*, &c. inſtead of in the plu-perfect; as, *veni*, I am come; *veneram*, I was come

Note 4. That though the Latin perfect frequently anſwers both to *h* and *did*, (or the preterite termination *ed*, &c.) yet they ſeem to be t diſtinguiſhed: *did* or *ed*, &c. reſpects a certain paſt time, in which thing was finiſhed or a-finiſhing; as, *I wrote*, or *did write yeſterday*: *h* either ſpeaks of a thing as but juſt now paſt, or at leaſt does not refer any particular time that it happened at; as, *I have written my letter*, i juſt now; *I have read of Julius Cæſar*, i. e. ſome time or other. The of theſe is called the *preterperfect definite*, and the other the *preterper indefinite*.

Note 5. That *ſhall* and *will*, by Mr Brightland, are thus diſtinguiſhed

In the firſt perſon ſimply *ſhall* fortells:
In *will* a threat; or elſe a promiſe dwells.
Shall in the ſecond and the third does threat;
Will ſimply then foretells the future feat.

By Mr Turner thus:

Will imports the will or purpoſe of the perſon it is joined with; *ſhall* ſhews the will of another, who promiſes or threatens to do the thing, or wills it to be done, permits it, commands it, or the like.

De Verbis Irregularibus.

Irregularia verba vulgò recentur octo, viz. *ſum, eo, , volo, nolo, malo, fero,* et cum compoſitis.

Of Irregular Verbs.

The irregular verbs are commonly reckoned eight, viz. ſum, eo, queo, volo, nolo, malo, fero, *and* fio, *with their compounds.*

Sum.

Sum, fui, eſſe, *to be.*

Indicativus.

Præſens.

Sing.		*Plur.*
am, I am,	1	Sŭmus, *we are,*
, thou art,	2	Eſtis, *ye are,*
, he is:	3	Sunt, *they āre.*

Imperfectum.

ram, I was,	1	Erāmus, *we were,*
ras thou waſt,	2	Eratis, *ye were,*
rat, he was:	3	Erant, *they were.*

Perfectum.

i, I have been,	1	Fuĭmus, *we have been,*
iſti, thou haſt been,	2	Fuiſtis, *ye have been,*
it, he hath been:	3	Fuērunt *or* ēre, *they have been.*

Pluſquamperfectum.

eram, I had been,	1	Fuerāmus, *we had been,*
eras, thou hadſt been,	2	Fueratis, *ye had been,*
erat, he had been:	3	Fuerant, *they had been.*

Futurum.

, I ſhall or *will be,*	1	Erĭmus, *we ſhall* or *will be,*
ris, thou ſhalt or *wilt be,*	2	Eritis, *ye ſhall* or *will be,*
it, he ſhall or *will be:*	3	Erunt, *they ſhall* or *will be.*

Subjunctivus.

Præsens.

1 Sim,	*I may* or *can be*,	1 Sīmus,	*we may* or *can b*
2 Sis,	*thou mayeſt* or *canſt be*,	2 Sitis,	*ye may* or *can be*
3 Sit,	*he may* or *can be* :	3 Sint,	*they may* or *can*

Imperfectum.

1 Eſſem,	*I might*, &c. *be*,	1 Eſsēmus,	*we might be*,
2 Eſſes,	*thou mighteſt be*,	2 Eſſetis,	*ye might be*,
3 Eſſet,	*he might be* :	3 Eſſent,	*they might be*.

Perfectum.

1 Fuĕrim,	*I may have been*,	1 Fuerĭmus,	*we may have b*
2 Fueris,	*thou mayeſt have been*,	2 Fueritis,	*ye may have b*
3 Fuerit,	*he may have been* :	3 Fuerint,	*they may have*

Pluſquamperfectum.

1 Fuiſſem,	*I might*, &c. *have*	1 Fuiſsēmus,	*we might have*
2 Fuiſſet,	*thou mighteſt have*	2 Fuiſſetis,	*ye might have*
3 Fuiſſet,	*he might have*	3 Fuiſſent,	*they might have*

or *had been.*

Futurum.

1 Fuĕro,	*I ſhall have been*,	1 Fuerĭmus,	*we ſhall have*
2 Fueris,	*thou ſhalt have been*,	2 Fueritis,	*ye ſhall have*
3 Fuerit,	*he ſhall have been* :	3 Fuerint,	*they ſhall hav*

Imperativus.

Præſens.

Es *vel* Eſto,	}	*be thou*,
Eſto,		*let him be* :
Eſte *vel* Eſtote,	}	*be ye*,
Sunto,		*let them be*.

Infinitivus.

Præſ. Eſſe, *to be*,

Perf. Fuiſſe, *to have b*

Fut. Futūrum eſſe *vel* fuiſſe, } *to be a* *be.*

Participium.

Fut. Futūrus, *about to*

The compounds of *ſum* are, *adſum*, I am preſent; *abſum*, I am a *deſum*, I am wanting; *interſum*, I am preſent in or among; *præſum* before; *obſum*, I hurt; *ſubſum*, I am under; *ſuperſum*, I abound, r *inſum*, I am in; *proſum*, I do good; and *poſſum*. The firſt eight a jugated as the ſimple *ſum*: *inſum* wants the preterite and its deſce for we do not uſe *infui*, *-iſti*, *-eram*, &c.

¶ *Proſum* has a *d* where *ſum* begins with *e*; as,

Ind. *Pr.* Prō-ſum, prod-es, prod-eſt : pro-sŭmus, prod-eſti
Im. Prod-ĕram, prod-eras, prod-erat : prod-erāmus, &c.

Sub. *Im.* Prod-eſſem, prod-eſſes, prod-eſſet : prod-eſsēmus, &c.

Imperativus. Prod-eſto, prod-eſte. *Infinitivus.* *Præſ.* Prod-e

Possum should be *pot-sum*, (as being compounded of *potis*, able, and *sum*); but for the better sound, *t* is changed into *s* before another *s*, and retained before any other letter; and for the same reason, *s* is always taken away. *Possem* and *posse* are contracted for *potessem*, *potesse*, which yet are to be found in some old authors; thus:

¶ Possum, potui, posse, *to be able.*

Indicativus.

Præs.	Possum,	pŏtes,	potest:	possŭmus,	potestis,	possunt,
Imp.	Potĕram,	poteras,	poterat:	poterāmus,	poteratis,	poterant.
Perf.	Pŏtui,	potuisti,	potuit:	potuĭmus,	potuistis,	potuērunt, *vel* -uēre.
Plus.	Potuĕram,	potueras,	potuerat:	potuerāmus,	potuerātis,	potuerant.
Fut.	Potĕro,	poteris,	poterit:	poterĭmus,	poterĭtis,	poterunt.

Subjunctivus.

Præs.	Possim,	possis,	possit:	possīmus,	possītis,	possint.
Imp.	Possem,	posses,	posset:	possēmus,	possētis,	possent.
Perf.	Potuĕrim,	potueris,	potuerit:	potuerĭmus,	potuerĭtis,	potuerint.
Plus.	Potuissem,	potuisses,	potuisset:	potuissēmus,	potuissētis,	potuissent.
Fut.	Potuĕro,	potueris,	potuerit:	potuerĭmus,	potuerĭtis,	potuerint.

Infinitivus.

Præs. Posse. *Perf.* Potuisse. *The rest wanting.*

Eo.

Eo, ivi, itum, ire, *to go.*

Indicativus.

Præs.	Eo,	is,	it:	īmus,	itis,	eunt.
Imp.	ībam,	ibas,	ibat:	ibāmus,	ibatis,	ibant.
Perf.	īvi,	ivisti,	ivit:	ivĭmus,	ivistis,	ivērunt, *v.* ivēre.
Plus.	Ivĕram,	iveras,	iverat:	iverāmus,	iveratis,	iverant.
Fut.	Ībo,	ibis,	ibit:	ibĭmus,	ibĭtis,	ibunt.

Subjunctivus.

Præs.	Eam,	eas,	eat:	eāmus,	eātis,	eant.
Imp.	īrem,	ires,	iret:	irēmus,	irētis,	irent.
Perf.	Ivĕrim,	iveris,	iverit:	iverĭmus,	iveritis,	iverint.
Plus.	Īvissem,	ivisses,	ivisset:	ivissēmus,	ivissetis,	ivissent.
Fut.	Ivĕro,	iveris,	iverit:	iverĭmus,	iveritis,	iverint.

Imperativus.

Præs. ī, ito: ite, itote, eunto.

Infinitivus.

Præs. Ire.
Perf. Ivisse.
Fut. ĭturum esse *v.* fuisse.

Participia.	*Supina.*	*Gerundia.*
Præſ. Iens, *Gen.* euntis.	1. ĭtum.	Eundum,
Fut. ĭtūrus, -a, -um.	2. Itu.	Eundi,
		Eundo.

Note 1. That in general *eo* is a verb of the fourth conjugation.

Note 2. That of old verbs of the fourth had their imperfect in *iham*, a future in *ibo*; of which there are many examples in Plautus and Teren and ſome in Virgil and Horace.

After the ſame manner the compounds of *eo* are conjugated, viz. *a* I go away; *adeo*, I go to: *anteëo*, I go before; *coëo*, I come together; *eo*, I go out; *ineo*, I go into; *obeo*, I go to or round; *pereo*, I periſh, die; *præeo*, I go before; *prætereo*, I paſs by; *prodeo*, I go or come for *redeo*, I return; *ſubeo*, I go under; *tranſeo*, I go or paſs over or beyo But *ambio*, I go about, is a regular verb of the fourth conjugation.

*** Although theſe, and all other neuter verbs, are moſt frequently ſed impersonally in the paſſive; yet *adeo*, *obeo*, *prætereo*, *ſubeo*, *tranſeo*, o occur, even perſonally, in that voice, in the third perſons, both ſingu and plural; likewiſe in the infinitives and participles. A few examp out of many ſhall ſuffice. Liv. *Pericula adeuntur in præliis. Libri a* Ov. *Patria adeunda.* Liv. *Sacrum initum eſt. Initâ æſtate. Dies ſolennes eundis magiſtratibus. Poſſe iniri.* Cic. *Campus obitur aquâ. Velit ſe o Morte obitâ. Ad ſacinus obeundum. Bonus vir præteritur. Ad ſubeunda peric* Cæſ. *Rhodanus vado tranſitur.*

Note 3. That in the compounds *ivi*, *iviſti*, &c. are ſeldom uſed, they are contracted into *ii*, *iiſti*; as, *adii*, *adiiſti*, and ſometimes *adiſti*: *adieram*, *adierim*, &c.

Queo, I can, and *nequeo*, I cannot, are conjugated the ſame way as they only want the imperative and the gerunds; and the participles ſcarcely in uſe.

Volo.

Volo, volui, velle, *to will*, or *be willing*.

Indicativus.

Præſ. Vŏlo,	vis,	vult:	volŭmus,	vultis,	volunt
Imp. Vol-ēbam,	-ebas,	-ebat:	-ebāmus,	-ebatis,	-ebant
Perf. Vol-ui,	-uiſti,	-uit:	-uĭmus,	-uiſtis,	-uerun / *v.* -uer
Pluſ. Vol-uĕram,	-ueras,	-uerat:	-uerāmus,	-ueratis,	-uera
Fut. Volam,	voles,	volet:	volēmus,	voletis,	volent

Subjunctivus.

Præſ. Vĕlim,	velis,	velit:	velīmus,	velītis,	veli
Imp. Vellem,	velles,	vellet:	vellēmus,	velletis,	velle
Perf. Vol-uĕrim,	-ueris,	-uerit:	-uerĭmus,	-ueritis,	-ueri
Pluſ. Vol-uiſſem,	-uiſſes,	-uiſſet:	-uiſsēmus,	-uiſsētis,	-uiſſe
Fut. Vol-uĕro,	-ueris,	-uerit:	-uerĭmus,	-ueritis,	-ueri

Infinitivus. *Participium.*

Præſ. Velle. *Perf.* Voluiſſe. *Præſ.* Volens.

The reſt are wanting.

Nolo.

Nōlo, nolui, nolle, *to be unwilling.*

Indicativus.

Præſ.	Nōlo,	non-vis,	non-vult:	nolŭmus,	non-vultis,	nolunt.
Imp.	Nol-ēbam,	-ebas,	-ebat:	-ebāmus,	-ebatis,	-ebant.
Perf.	Nol-ui,	-uiſti,	-uit:	-uĭmus,	-uiſtis,	-uērunt *v.* -uere.
Plaſ.	Nol-uĕram,	-ueras,	-uerat:	-uerāmus,	-ueratis,	-uerant.
Fut.	Nolam,	noles,	nolet:	nolēmus,	noletis,	nolent.

Subjunctivus.

Præſ.	Nolim,	nolis,	nolit:	nolīmus,	nolitis,	nolint.
Imp.	Nollem,	nolles,	nollet:	nollēmus,	nolletis,	nollent.
Perf.	Nol-uĕrim,	-ueris,	-uerit:	-uerĭmus,	-ueritis,	-uerint.
Plaſ.	Nol-uiſſem,	-uiſſes,	-uiſſet:	-uiſsēmus,	-uiſſetis,	-uiſſent.
Fut.	Nol-uĕro,	-ueris,	-uerit:	-uerĭmus,	-ueritis,	-uerint.

Imperativus.	*Infinitivus.*	*Participium.*
Noli, nolīte, / Nolīto: nolitōte,	*Pr.* Nolle. *Per.* Noluiſſe.	*Præſ.* Nolens. *The reſt wanting.*

Malo.

Malo, malui, malle, *to be more willing.*

Indicativus.

Præſ.	Mālo,	mavis,	mavult:	malŭmus,	mavultis,	malunt.
Imp.	Mal-ēbam,	-ebas,	-ebat:	-ebāmus,	-ebatis,	-ebant.
Perf.	Mal-ui,	-uiſti,	-uit:	-uĭmus,	-uiſtis,	-uērunt *v.* -uere.
Plaſ.	Mal-uĕram,	-ueras,	-uerat:	-uĕrāmus,	-ueratis,	-uerant.
Fut.	Malam,	males,	malet, *&c.*	*This is ſcarcely in uſe.*		

Subjunctivus.

Præſ.	Malim,	malis,	malit:	malīmus,	malitis,	malint.
Imp.	Mallem,	malles,	malles:	mallēmus,	malletis,	mallent.
Perf.	Mal-uĕrim,	-ueris,	-uerit:	-uerĭmus,	-ueritis,	-uerint.
Plaſ.	Mal-uiſſem,	-uiſſes,	-uiſſet:	-uiſsēmus,	-uiſſetis,	-uiſſent.
Fut.	Mal-uĕro,	-ueris,	-uerit:	-uerĭmus,	-uerĭtis,	-uerint.

Infinitivus.

Præſ. Malle. *Perf.* Maluiſſe.

Note. That *volo*, *nolo*, and *malo*, retain ſomething of the third conjuga-

tion; for *vis*, *vult*, *vultis*, are contracted of *volis*, *volit*, *volitis*; and changed into *u*; for of old they ſaid, *volt*, *voltis*.

Nolo is compounded of *non volo*, and *malo* of *magis volo*.

Fero.

Vox Activa.

Fĕro, tŭli, lātum, ferre, *to bring* or *ſuffer*.

Indicativus.

Præſ. Fero,	fers,	fert:	ferĭmus,	fertis,	feruntur
Imp. Ferēbam,	ferebas,	ferebat:	ferēbāmus,	ferebatis,	ferebant
Perf. Tuli,	tuliſti,	tulit:	tulĭmus,	tuliſtis,	tulērunt, *v.* tulēre
Pluſ. Tulĕram,	tuleras,	tulerat:	tulerāmus,	tuleratis,	tulerant
Fut. Feram,	feres,	feret:	ferēmus,	feretis,	ferent

Subjunctivus.

Præſ. Feram,	feras,	ferat:	ferāmus,	feratis,	ferant
Imp. Ferrem,	ferres,	ferret:	ferrēmus,	ferretis,	ferrent
Perf. Tulĕrim,	tuleris,	tulerit:	tulerĭmus,	tuleritis,	tulerint
Pluſ. Tuliſſem,	tuliſſes,	tuliſſet:	tuliſsēmus,	tuliſſetis,	tuliſſent
Fut. Tulĕro,	tuleris,	tulerit:	tulerĭmus,	tuleritis,	tulerint

Imperativus.

Præſ. Fer, Ferto, ferto: ferte, fertōte, ferunto.

Infinitivus.

Pr. Ferre.
Perf. Tuliſſe.
Fut. Laturum eſſe *vel* fuiſſe.

Participia.

Præſ. Ferens.
Fut. Laturus, -a, -um.

Supina.

1 Latum.
2 Latu.

Gerundia.

Ferendum,
Ferendi,
Ferendo.

Vox Paſſiva.

Feror, latus, ferri.

Indicativus.

Præſ. Feror,	ferris, ferre,	fertur:	ferĭmur,	ferĭmini,	feruntur
Imp. Fer-ēbar,	-ebāris, -ebare,	-ebatur:	-ebamur,	-ebamĭni,	-ebantur

Perf. Latus ſum *vel* fui, latus es *vel* fuiſti, *&c.*
Pluſ. Latus eram *vel* fueram, latus eras *vel* fueras, *&c.*

Fut. Ferar,	ferēris, ferere,	feretur:	feremur,	feremĭni,	ferentur

Subjunctivus.

Perf. Ferar, { ferāris, ferare, } feratur : feramur, feramĭni, ferantur.

Plup. Ferrer, { ferrēris, ferrere, } ferretur: ferremur, ferremini, ferrentur.

Perf. Latus ſim *vel* fuerim, latus ſis *vel* fueris, *&c.*
Plup. Latus eſſem *vel* fuiſſem, latus eſſes *vel* fuiſſes, *&c.*
Fut. Latus fuero, latus fueris, *&c.*

Imperativus.

Pres. { Ferre, Fertor, } fertor : ferimini, feruntor.

Infinitivus.

Pres. Ferri.
Perf. Latum eſſe *vel* fuiſſe.
Fut. Latum iri.

Participia.

Perf. Latus, -a, -um.
Fut. Ferendus, -a, -um.

Note. That *fero* is a verb of the third conjugation, *fers, fert, fertis, ferte, ferrem, ferre, ferris, fertur, fertor*; being contracted of *feris, ferimini, ferito, ferite, fererem, ferere, fereris, feritur*, and *feritor*.

Alſo *fer* is contracted of *fere*; which, in like manner, has happened to the imperatives of *dico, duco, facio*, they having *dic, duc, fac*, inſtead of *dice, duce, face*.

The compounds of *fero* are conjugated the ſame way as the ſimple; as, *affero, attuli, allatum*; *aufero, abſtuli, ablatum*; *differo, diſtuli, dilatum*; *conferro, contuli, collatum*; *infero, intuli, illatum*; *offero, obtuli, oblatum*; *effero, extuli, elatum*: ſo *circum-, pro-, ante-, intro-, poſt-, præter-, re-, ſuper-*

Fio.

Fĭo, factus, fĭĕri, *to be made*, or *to become*.

Indicativus.

Pres. Fĭo, fis fit : fīmus, fītis, fiunt.
Imp. Fiēbam, fiebas, fiebat : fiebāmus, fiebatis, fiebant.
Perf. Factus ſum *vel* fui, factus es *vel* fuiſti, *&c.*
Plup. Factus eram *vel* fueram, factus eras *vel* fueras, *&c.*
Fut. Fīam, fies, fiet : fiēmus, fietis, fient.

Subjunctivus.

Pres. Fiam, fias, fiat : fiāmus, fiatis, fiant.
Imp. Fĭĕrem, fieres, fieret : fierēmus, fieretis, fierent.
Perf. Factus ſim *vel* fuerim, factus ſis *vel* fueris, *&c.*
Plup. Factus eſſem *vel* fuiſſem, factus eſſes *vel* fuiſſes, *&c.*
Fut. Factus fuero, factus fueris, *&c.*

Imperativus.				*Infinitivus.*
Pr. Fi*, Fito:	fīto: fīte, fitōte,	fiunto.		*Præſ.* Fĭĕri. *Perf.* Factum eſſe v. fuiſ *Fut.* Factum iri.

Participia.	*Supinum.*
Perf. Factus, -a, um.	Factu.
Fut. Faciendus, -a, um.	

* Though *Fi* is rejected by ſome grammarians of great note, yet we h given it a place here, not only becauſe it is to be found in Plautus, alſo in Horace, lib. 2. ſat. 5. ver. 38. *Fi cognitor ipſe*, according to the MSS. and editions.

Note 1. That *fio* is the paſſive of *facio*, to make, (which is regular) ſtead of *facior*, which is not in uſe: yet the compounds of *facio*, w change *a* into *i*, are regular; as, *afficior*, *affectus*, *affici*; *perficior*, *perfe perfici*.

Note 2. That the compounds of *facio*, with verbs, nouns, or adve retain the *a*, and have their imperative active *fac*, and their paſſive (when uſed) *fio*; as, *calefacio*, *lucrifacio*, *benefacio*; *calefac*, *calefio*, &c. theſe compounded with a prepoſition change the *a* into *i*, and have *fice ficior*. There are ſome compounded of *facio* and a noun, where *fa* changed into *fico* of the firſt conjugation; as, *magnifico*, *ſignifico*.

To the irregular verbs may be reduced *edo*, to eat, which in ſome parts falls in with the verb *ſum*, thus:

Ind. Præſ. ĕdo, edis *or* es, edit *or* eſt: edimus, editis *or* eſtis, edu
Subj. Imp. Ederem *or* eſſem, ederes *or* eſſes, *&c.*
Imper. Ede *or* es; edito; ——; edite *or* eſte: *and* editote ſtote, edunto.
Inf. Præſ. Edĕre *or* eſſe.
Paſſ. Ind. Præſ. Edĭtur *or* eſtur.

Likewiſe its compounds, *comedo*, *comes*, *comeſt*, &c. and *exedo*, *exe eſt*, &c.

Of Defective Verbs.

Though ſome of the irregular verbs already mentioned want ſo their parts, and upon that account may be called alſo defective verbs by defective verbs here we chiefly underſtand ſuch as want conſide branches, or are uſed only in few tenſes and perſons.—We ſhall ſet theſe that moſt frequently occur.

I. *Aio*, I ſay; *inquam*, I ſay; *forem*, I ſhould be; *auſim*, I dare; *ſ* I'll ſee to it, *or* I will do it; *ave* and *ſalve*, God ſave you, Hail, morrow; *cedo*, tell, *or* give me; *quæſo*, I pray.

Ind.	*Præſ.*	Aio,	ais,	ait:	——	——	a
	Imp.	Ai-ebam,	-ebas,	-ebat:	-ebamus,	-ebatis,	-
	Perf.	——	aiſti,	——	——	——	
Sub.	*Præſ.*	——	aias,	aiat:	——	aiatis,	a
	Imperat. ai.				[*Particip. Præſ.* aiens.]		
Indic.	*Præſ*	Inquam,	inquis,	inquit:	inquĭmus,	inquitis,	inqui
	Imp.	——	——	inquiebat:	——	——	inqui
	Perf.	——	inquiſti,	——	——	——	
	Fut.	——	inquies,	inquiet:	——	——	
	Imperat.		inque,	-ito.	*Particip. Præſ.*		inquien

{Imp. Plus.} Fŏrem, fores, foret: forēmus, foretis, forent.

Fore, *to be*, or *to be about to be*, the ſame with *futurum eſſe*.

Preſ.	Auſim,	auſis,	auſit:	———	——— ———
Perf.	Faxim,	faxis,	faxit:	———	——— faxint.
Fut.	Faxo,	faxis,	faxit:	———	faxĭtis, faxint.

Note, That *faxim* and *faxo* are uſed inſtead of *fecerim* and *fecero*.

Imper.	Ave, Avēto,	avete. avetōte.	*Infinit.*	avēre.
	Salve, Salvēto,	ſalvete. ſalvetōte.		ſalvēre.
Fut.	———	Salvēbis.		
	Cedo,	cedite.		
Preſ.	Quæſo,	quæsŭmus.		

These three verbs, *odi*, *memini*, *cœpi*, have only the preterite tenſe, what is formed from it; and therefore are by ſome called *preteritive*, thus:

odi,	*oderam*,	*oderim*,	*odiſſem*,	*odero*,	*odiſſe*.
memini,	*memineram*,	*meminerim*,	*meminiſſem*,	*meminero*,	*meminiſſe*.
cœpi,	*cœperam*,	*cœperim*,	*cœpiſſem*,	*cœpero*,	*cœpiſſe*.

under theſe they comprehend alſo the ſignification of the other ſes; as, *Memini*, I remember, *or* I have remembered; *Memineram*, I mbered, *or* I had remembered, *&c.*: ſo *odi*, I hate, *or* I have ha- But *cœpi* ſeems to have only *I have begun*.

Memini hath alſo the imperative, *memento*, remember thou; *mementote*, mber ye. Some add *meminens*, remembering; which is ſcarcely to be ed.

o theſe ſome add *novi*, becauſe it frequently hath the ſignification of reſent, *I know*, as well as *I have known*, though it comes from *noſco*, ch is complete.

Note 1. That *odientes* is to be found in Petronius; *odiatur* in Seneca; in Plautus and Terence. See Voſſ. Analog. lib. 3. cap. 39.

Note 2. That the participles *cœptus* and *oſus*, with its compounds *per-* *exoſus*, are in uſe among the beſt authors; but *perodi* and *exodi* are

III. *Faris*, to ſpeak, wants the firſt perſon of the preſent indicative, perhaps the whole preſent of the ſubjunctive; for we do not ſay *for* , and rarely *feris*, *fetur*, &c. So likewiſe *daris* and *deris*, but not *der*, to be given. The compounds of the firſt, as, *affor*, *effor*, are ; but the compounds of the other, as, *addor*, *reddor*, are common.

IV. Moſt of the other defective verbs are but ſingle words, and rarely be found but among poets; as, *infit*, he begins; *defit*, it is wanting; -*eret*, -*eri*, it is done; *apage*, -*te*, away with. Some are compounded verb with the conjunction *ſi*; as, *ſis* for *ſi vis*, if thou wilt; *ſultis* for *ltis*, if ye will; *ſodes* for *ſi audes*, if thou dareſt; *capſis* for *cape ſi vis*.

Of Impersonal Verbs.

These are alſo a kind of defective verbs, which for the moſt part are u- only in the third perſon ſingular. They have the ſign *it* before them Engliſh; as, *pœnitet*, it repents. —— Grammarians reckon but ten real

ones, and all in the ſecond conjugation, viz. *decet*, *pœnitet*, *oportet*, *ſeret*, *piget*, *pudet*, *licet*, *libet* or *lubet*, *tædet*, *liquet*. They all form t preterite regularly; but *miſeret*, *piget*, *pudet*, *licet*, and *libet* or *lubet*, h alſo a paſſive preterite, with all its deſcendents, thus: *Miſertum* or *m ritum*, *pigitum*, *puditum*, *licitum*, *libitum* or *lubitum*, *eſt* or *fuit*.——*Tædet* ſcarcely any; but *pertædet* has *pertæſum eſt* or *fuit*. *Liquet* has none; *miſeruit* rarely appears.——They are thus conjugated.

	Præſ.	*Imperf.*	*Perfect.*	*Pluſquam.*	*Fut.*
Ind.	Pœnitet,	pœnitebat,	pœnituit,	pœnituerat,	pœniteb
Sub.	Pœniteat,	pœniteret,	pœnituerit,	pœnituiſſet.	pœnitue
Inf.	Pœnitere,	———	pœnituiſſe.		

Moſt verbs may be uſed impersonally in the paſſive voice, eſpec ſuch as otherwiſe have no paſſive, and in every conjugation; as, *pugn videtur*, *ceditur*, *venitur*, thus:

	Præſ.	*Imperf.*	*Perfect.*	*Pluſquam.*	*Fut.*
Ind.	Pugnatur,	pugnabatur,	pugnatum {eſt, fuit,	-atum {erat, fuerat,	pugnabi
Sub.	Pugnetur,	pugnaretur,	pugnatum {ſit, fuerit,	-atum {eſſet, fuiſſet,	-atum fu
Inf.	Pugnari,	———	pugnatum {eſſe, fuiſſe,	pugnatum iri.	

Vid-etur,	-ebatur,	viſum	{eſt, —— fuit, ——
Ced-itur,	-ebatur,	ceſſum	{eſt, —— fuit, ——
Veni-tur,	-ebatur,	ventum	{eſt, —— fuit, ——

Note 1. That *impersonals* are applied to any perſon or number, by ting that which ſtands before other verbs, after the impersonals, in the which they govern; as, *pœnitet me*, *te*, *illum*, I repent, thou repente repenteth, inſtead of *ego pœnitco*, &c. which is ſcarcely Latin. *Placet tibi*, *illi*, it pleaſes me, thee, him, *or* I pleaſe, thou pleaſeſt, *&c.*; *pug a me*, *a te*, *ab illo*, I fight, thou fighteſt, he fighteth, *&c.*

Note 2. That impersonals are not uſed in the imperative, but inſte it we take the ſubjunctive.

Note 3. That impersonal verbs are very often uſed perſonally, eſp ly in the plural number; as, *accidit*, *contingit*, *evenit*, *pertinet*, *decet*, *licet*, *noscet*, *patet*, *placet*, *præſtat*, &c. For we ſay, *Tu mihi ſola p Nulli noceo*; *Multa homini accidunt*, *contingunt*, *eveniunt*; *Parvum par cent*, &c. But it is to be remarked, that they are generally imper when an infinitive or ſubjunctive mood follows: for though I can ſa *places mihi*, yet I cannot ſay, *Si places audire*, but *Si placet tibi audire* gain, we cannot ſay, *Ego contigi eſſe domi*, but *Me contigit eſſe domi*, or *contigit eſſe domi*. Likewiſe *Evenit illum mori*, or *Ut ille moreretur*, bu *Ille evenit mori*.

[I ſhall not here inquire what is the word underſtood to imper verbs, whether it is a noun of the like ſignification, as *pugna pugnata* the word *res*, or *negotium*, or the infinitive mood; though I incline to t that any one of theſe will not anſwer to them all, but there are ſo which the firſt, to others the ſecond, and to others the third, may be fitly underſtood, as the nature of the verb and good ſenſe ſhall dire

This we are ſure of, that the word underſtood can never be a perſon, properly ſo called, but a thing; for which reaſon, and the want of the two primary perſons, viz. the firſt and ſecond, they are called *impersonal*; tho' ſome are much offended with the name.]

Of Redundant Verbs.

Theſe are threefold, viz. redundant in kind, in termination, and in conjugation.

Theſe that are redundant in kind are twofold: 1. They are ſometimes neuter, and ſometimes active; 2. as, *Aboleo, duro, maneo*, &c. Liv. *Cujus rei prope jam aboleverat memoria.* Velleius, *Abolere teſtamentum*, Plaut. *Durare nequeo in ædibus.* Ov. *Duravit animum.* Cic. *Nihil ſemper ſuo ſtatu manet.* Virg. *Te triſte manebit ſupplicium.* 2. Some are common, i. e. ſometimes active, ſometimes paſſive; as, *Adipiſcor, criminor, dignor*, &c. The paſſive ſignification is very rare, except in the participles-perfect, *adeptus, oblitus*, &c.

The verbs redundant in termination are, *aſſentio, aſſentior; fabrico, fabricor; impertio, impertior; lacrymo, lacrymor; mereo, mereor; munero, munero*, &c. in the ſame ſignification: ſo *comperio, punio, luxurio*; more rarely *comperior, punior, luxurior*: alſo *populor, comitor*; rarely *populo, comito.*

Verbs redundant in conjugation are threefold; *lavo, lavas*, and *lavo, lavis*; *ferveo, ferves*, and *fervo, fervis*; *fulgeo, fulges*, and *fulgo, fulgis*; *ſtrideo, ſtrides*, and *ſtrido, ſtridis*; *tueor, tuēris*, and *tuor, tuēris.* Thoſe of the third are, however, leſs frequent; but *tergeo, terges*, and *tergo, tergis*, are equally uſed; as are alſo their compounds, *detergeo* and *detergo, abſtergeo* and *abſtergo.*

Some are commonly of the third, and rarely of the fourth; as, *fodio, fodis, fodĕre*, and *fodīre*; *ſallo, ſallis, ſallĕre*, and *ſallīre*; *morior, morĕris, mori*, and *morīris, morīri*: ſo *orior, orĕris*, and *orīris*; *potior, potĕris*, and *potīri. Cieo* has *cies, cīere* moſt commonly, and *cio, cis, cīre* more rarely; hence *accīre* and *accītus.* To theſe may be referred *edo*; ſee p. 82.

Of the Figure of Verbs.

This is twofold: ſimple, as *lego*; compound, as *relego.*

1. Verbs are compounded with nouns; as, *ædifico*, from *ædes* and *facio*: 2. with verbs; as, *patefacio*, from *pateo* and *facio*: 3. with adverbs; as, *introduco*, from *intro* and *duco*: 4. with prepoſitions; as, *eripio*, from *e* and *diſco.*

2. Some are compounded from obſolete ſimple verbs; as, *accendo*, from *candeo*; *offendo*, from *fendo.*

3. The component parts ſometimes remain entire; as, *lego, perlego.* Sometimes a letter is added; as, *prodeo, redeo*, for *procdo, reeo*: or taken away; as, *aſporto, omitto, trado*, for *abſporto, obmitto, tranſdo.* Very often the vowel or diphthong of the ſimple verb is changed: 1. *a* into *e*; as, *damno, condemno*; *carpo, decerpo*: 2. *a* into *i*; as, *habeo, prohibeo*; *cado, occido*: 3. *a* into *u*; as, *calco, conculco*; *quatio, concutio*: 4. *e* into *i*; as, *teneo, contineo*; *premo, comprimo*: 5. *æ* into *i*; as, *lædo, collīdo*; *quæro, acquiro*: 6. *au* into *e*; as, *audio, obedio*: 7. *au* into *o*; as, *plaudo, diſplodo*: *au* into *u*; as, *claudo, concludo.*

4. The laſt conſonant of the prepoſition is very often changed into the firſt of the verb; as, *accipio, affero, agglomero, allido, appello, arripio, aſſuo, altero; collaudo, commuto, corrodo; illino, immorior, irrigo; intelligo, occino, oppeto, pellicio*, for *adcipio, adfero*, &c. Sometimes, for the ſake of the better ſound, it is changed into another letter; as, *aufero, imbibo, inplico*, &c. for *abſero, inbibo, inplico*, &c.

5. The ſimple verbs are often uſed for their compounds, and the compounds for the ſimple verbs; as *mitte curam*, for *omitte*; *retine me*, for *tene me*.

Of Verbs which under one word vary their ſignification.

1. Some have the ſame theme or preſent.

Aggero, -as, *to heap up.*	Aggero, -is, *to bring together.*
Appello, -as, *to call.*	Appello, -is, *to arrive.*
Compello, -as, *to addreſs.*	Compello, -is, *to drive.*
Colligo, -as, *to bind.*	Colligo, -is, *to gather together.*
Conſterno, -as, *to aſtoniſh.*	Conſterno, -is, *to ſtrew.*
Effero, -as, *to enrage.*	Effero, -feris, *to bring out.*
Fundo, -as, *to found.*	Fundo, -is, *to pour out.*
Mando, -as, *to command.*	Mando, -is, *to chew.*
Obſero, -as, *to lock.*	Obſero, -is, *to beſet.*
Volo, -as, *to fly.*	Volo, vis, *to will.*

Some vary alſo their quantity.

Cŏlo, -as, *to ſtrain.*	Cŏlo, -is, *to till.*
Dĭco, -as, *to dedicate.*	Dīco, -is, *to ſay.*
Edŭco, -as, *to train up.*	Edūco, -is, *to lead forth.*
Lĕgo, -as, *to ſend.*	Lĕgo, -is, *to read.*
Vădo, -as, *to wade.*	Vādo, -is, *to go.*

2. Some agree in the preterite.

Aceo, acui, *to be ſour.*	Acuo, acui, *to ſharpen.*
Creſco, crēvi, *to grow.*	Cerno, crēvi, *to ſee.*
Frigeo, frixi, *to be cold.*	Frigo, frixi, *to fry.*
Fulgeo, fulſi, *to ſhine.*	Fulcio, fulſi, *to prop.*
Luceo, luxi, *to ſhine.*	Lugeo, luxi, *to mourn.*
Paveo, pavi, *to be afraid.*	Paſco, pavi, *to feed.*
Pendeo, pependi, *to hang.*	Pendo, pependi, *to weigh.*

3. Some have the ſame ſupine.

Creſco, cretum, *to grow.*	Cerno, cretum, *to behold.*
Maneo, manſum, *to ſtay.*	Mando, manſum, *to chew.*
Sto, ſtatum, *to ſtand.*	Siſto, ſtatum, *to ſtop.*
Succenſeo, ſuccenſum, *to be angry.*	Succendo, ſuccenſum, *to kindle.*
Teneo, tentum, *to hold.*	Tendo, tentum, *to ſtretch out.*
Verro, verſum, *to ſweep.*	Verto, verſum, *to turn.*
Vinco, victum, *to overcome.*	Vivo, victum, *to live.*

Of the old or obſolete conjugation.

1. The perfect ſubjunctive is found, with the old Roman writers, -*ſſim*; as, *negāſſim* for *negaverim*.

2. They added *er* to the preſent of the infinitive paſſive, which is

and even in Ter. Virg. and Ov.; as, *farier*, *immiſcerier*, for *fari*, *immiſcere*.

3. The participle perfect paſſive, and the future active, with *eſſe*, were with them ſometimes indeclinable; as, Cic. *Ut cohortes ad me miſſum fa-* Credo ego inimicos meos hoc dicturum.

4. They ended the preſent ſubjunctive in *im* and *uim*; as, *edim*, *duim*, *ſiem*, *dem*. See note 7. 8. 9. p. 70. 71. and note 2. p. 78.

Of the figures in ſpeech.

Proſthesis adds to the beginning of a word; as, *gnavus* for *navus*. *Aphæreſis* takes away from it; as, *natus* for *gnatus*. *Syncope* takes from the middle; as, *caldus* for *calidus*. *Epenthesis* adds to it; as, *alituum* for *alitum*. *Apocope* takes from the end; as, *peculî* for *peculii*. *Paragoge* gives to it; as, *dicier* for *dici*. *Diæreſis* reſolves one ſyllable into two; as, *aulaï* for *aulæ*. *Craſis*, or *ſynæreſis*, contracts two ſyllables into one; as, *vêmens* for *vehemens*. *Antitheſis* changes a letter; as, *optumus* for *optimus*. *Metatheſis* tranſpoſes it; as, *piſtris* for *priſtis*.

Note 1. The ſyncope prevails in the genitive plural; as, *dêum* for *deorum*: and in the preterites of verbs in *vi*, and the tenſes formed from them; as, *amâſti* for *amaviſti*; *amâram* for *amaveram*; and the compounds of them. See p. 78.

Note 2. Preterites of two ſyllables never admit of a ſyncope, but in the four; *ſcîſti*, *nôſti*, *flêſti*, *flâſti*, for *ſciviſti*, &c.

Note 3. The poets uſe it frequently in preterites terminating in *ſi* and *xi*, Hor. *evâſti*, *percûſti*, *ſurrexe*; Virg. *extinxti*, *extinxem*, *vixet*, for *evaſiſti*, *percuſſiſti*, *ſurrexiſſe*, *extinxiſſem*, *vixiſſet*.

CHAP. IV.

Of Participle.

There are three things eſpecially to be conſidered in a participle, viz. time, ſignification, and declenſion.

I. The tenſes or times of participles are three, the preſent, preterite, and future; the preſent ends in *ns*, — the preterite in *tus*, *ſus*, *xus*, — the future in *rus*, *dus*.

II. The ſignification of participles is either active, paſſive, or neuter, after the manner of the verbs from which they come. Thoſe in *ns* and *rus* are generally active, — in *dus* alſo paſſive, — in *tus*, *ſus*, *xus*, are generally paſſive, ſometimes active, or alſo common.

III. All participles are adjectives: theſe which end in *ns* are of the third declenſion; but all the reſt are of the firſt and ſecond.

A *participle* is a kind of adjective formed from a verb, which in its ſignification always imports ſome time.

It is ſo called, becauſe it partakes of a noun and a verb, having genders and caſes from the one, time and ſignification from the other, and number from both.

1. *Active* verbs (ſee chap. ix.) have two participles, one of the preſe
time ending in *ns*; as, *amans*, loving: and another of the future endi
in *rus*; as, *amaturus*, about to love.

2. *Paſſive* verbs have likewiſe two participles, one of the preterite en
ing in *tus*, *ſus*, or *xus*; as, *amatus*, loved; *viſus*, ſeen; *flexus*, bowed; (
which add one in *uus*, viz. *mortuus*, dead): and another of the futu
ending in *dus*; as, *amandus*, to be loved.

3. *Neuter* verbs have two participles, as the active; as, *ſedens*, ſitting
ſeſſurus, about to ſit.

4. *Active intranſitive* verbs have frequently three participles; as, *caren*
wanting; *cariturus*, about to want; *carendus*, to be wanted; *dolens*, gri
ving; *doliturus*, about to grieve; *dolendus*, to be grieved: and ſometim
four; as, *vigilans*, watching; *vigilaturus*, about to watch; *vigilatus*, watc
ed; *vigilandus*, to be watched.

5. *Deponent* and *common* verbs have generally four participles; as,
quens, ſpeaking; *locuturus*, about to ſpeak; *locutus*, having ſpoken;
quendus, to be ſpoken: *dignans*, vouchſafing; *dignaturus*, about to vou
ſafe; *dignatus*, having vouchſafed, or being vouchſafed; *dignandus*, to
vouchſafed.

Note 1. That in ſome deponent verbs the participle perfect hath bo
an active and paſſive ſignification, though that of the verb itſelf is o
active; as, *teſtatus*, having teſtified, or being teſtified. So *mentitus*,
ditatus, *oblitus*, *emenſus*, *amplexus*, *largitus*, *metatus*, *adeptus*, &c.

Note 2. That it is eſſential to a participle, (1) That it come imme
ately from a verb; (2) That in its ſignification it alſo include tim
therefore *tunicatus*, coated; *larvatus*, maſked; and ſuch like, are not p
ticiples, becauſe they come from nouns, and not from verbs. And *ig*
rus, ignorant; *elegans*, neat; *circumſpectus*, circumſpect; *tacitus*, ſile
falſus, falſe; *profuſus*, prodigal, &c. are not participles, becauſe they
not ſignify time.

Note 3. There are many participles, compounded with *in* negative,
verbs of which (they however ſeldom occur) do not admit of that
gation; as, *illæſus*, *inauditus*, *impranſus*, *incuſtoditus*, *inſciens*, *intole*
dus, &c.

Note 4. Participles loſe their time, and become nouns; as, *ſapiens*,
pens, *ſponſa*, *nata*, *dictum*, *votum*, *doctus*, *indoctus*: and ſome change t
government; as, *amans pecuniæ*, *patiens frigoris*.

There are a kind of adjective nouns ending in *undus*, which appro
very near to the nature of participles, ſuch as, *errabundus*, *ludibundus*, *p*
labundus. They are formed from the imperfect of the indicative, and t
ſignification is much the ſame with the participle of the preſent time;
ly they ſignify *abundance*, or a great deal of the action, according to
Gellius, lib. xi. cap. 15. or, according to others, they ſignify the ſ
with the participles of frequentative verbs, when theſe are not in
See Gronovius on Gellius, as above cited.

Appendix of Gerunds and Supines.

Gerunds and *ſupines* (which, becauſe of their near relation to ve
are by ſome not improperly called *participial words*) are a ſort of ſubſ
tive nouns expreſſing the action of the verb in general, or in the
ſtract. *Gerunds* are ſubſtantives of the ſecond declenſion, and comp

all their cases, except the vocative. *Supines* are substantives of the fourth declension, having only two cases, the accusative in *um*, which makes the first supine, and the ablative in *u*, which makes the second. [Vossius, lib. viii. cap. 54. thinks, that the last supine may sometimes be a dative; as, *durum tactu*, i. e *tactui*; for the datives of the fourth declension of old ended in *u*. Also lib. vii. cap. 8. he takes notice, that though these supines have sometimes other cases, (as, *irrisui esse*) yet they are only reckoned supines by grammarians, when the first come after verbs of motion, and the second after adjective nouns: thus, *dignus irrisu* is a supine (according to them); *non sine irrisu audientium*, is not.

Of the Indeclinable Parts of Speech.

CHAP. V.

Of Intetjection.

AN interjection is an indeclinable word thrown into discourse, to signify some passion or emotion of the mind.

1. Joy; as, *Evax*, hey, brave, io.
2. Grief; as, *Ah*, *hei*, *heu*, *eheu*, ah, alas, woes me.
3. Wonder; as, *Papæ*, O strange; *vah*, hah.
4. Praise; as, *Euge*, well done.
5. Aversion; as, *Apage*, away, begone, fy, tush.
6. Exclaiming; as, *Oh*, *proh*, O.
7. Surprise or fear; as, *Atat*, ha, aha.
8. Imprecation; as, *Væ*, wo, pox on't.
9. Laughter; as, *Ha*, *ha*, *he*.
10. Silencing; as, *Au*, *'st*, *pax*, silence, hush, 'st.
11. Calling; as, *Eho*, *io*, *ho*, so, ho, soho, O.
12. Derision; as, *Hui*, away with.
13. Attention; as, *Hem*, hah.

Note 1. That the same interjection denotes sometimes one passion, and sometimes another; as, *vah*, which is used to express joy and sorrow, and wonder, &c.

Note 2. That some of them are natural sounds common to all languages.

Note 3. That nouns are used sometimes for interjections; as, *malum!* with a pox! with a mischief! *infandum!* O shame! fy, fy! *miserum!* O wretched! *nefas!* O the villany!

An interjection is a compendious way of expressing a whole sentence in one word, and used only to represent the passions and emotions of the soul, for the shortness of the one might the sooner express the suddenness and quickness of the other.

CHAP. VI.

Of Adverb.

IN an adverb its signification is chiefly to be considered.

The significations of adverbs are various: but the chief of them may be reduced to the following heads.

Adverb is an indeclinable part of speech, which being joined to a noun, verb, or other adverb, expresses some circumstance, quality, or manner of their signification. —— 1. Adverbs denoting *circumstance*, are chiefly those of place, time, and order.

1. Adverbs of *Place* are fivefold, viz. *Adverbs ſignifying motion.*

(1) *in a place.* (*or reſt*)

Ubi?	*Where?*
Hic,	*Here.*
Illic, Iſthic, Ibi,	*There.*
Intus,	*Within.*
Foris,	*Without.*
Ubique,	*Every where.*
Nuſquam,	*No where.*
Alicubi,	*Some where.*
Alibi,	*Elſe where.*
Ubivis,	*Any where.*
Ibidem,	*In the ſame place.*

(2) *to a place.*

Quo?	*Whither?*
Huc,	*Hither.*
Illuc, Iſthuc,	*Thither.*
Intro,	*To within.*
Foras,	*To without.*
Eo,	*To that place.*
Alio,	*To another place.*
Aliquo,	*To ſome place.*
Eodem,	*To the ſame place.*

(3) *towards a place.*

Quorsum?	*Whitherward?*
Verſus,	*Towards.*
Horſum,	*Hitherward.*
Illorſum,	*Thitherward.*
Surſum,	*Upward.*
Deorſum,	*Downward.*
Antrorſum,	*Forward.*
Retrorſum,	*Backward.*
Dextrorſum,	*To the right hand.*
Siniſtrorſum,	*To the left hand.*

(4) *From a place.*

Unde?	*From whence?*
Hinc,	*From hence.*
Illinc, Iſthinc, Inde,	*From thence.*
Aliunde,	*From elſe where.*
Alicunde,	*From ſome place.*
Sicunde,	*If from any place.*
Utrinque,	*On both ſides.*
Superne,	*From above.*
Inferne,	*From below.*
Cœlitus,	*From Heaven.*
Funditus,	*From the ground.*

(5) *through or by a place.*

Qua?	*Which way?*
Hac,	*This way.*
Illac, Iſthac,	*That way.*
Alia.	*Another way.*

2. Adverbs of *Time* are threefold viz. Such as ſignify,

(1) *Being in time, either*

1. *Preſent.*

Nunc,	*Now.*
Hodie,	*To-day.*

2. *Paſt.*

Tunc, Tum,	*Then.*
Heri,	*Yeſterday.*
Dudum, Pridem,	*Heretofore.*
Pridie,	*The day before.*
Nudius tertius,	*Three days ago.*
Nuper,	*Lately.*

3. *Future, very near.*

Jamjam,	*Preſently.*
Mox,	*Immediately.*
Statim,	*By and by.*
Protinus,	*Inſtantly.*
Illico,	*Straightway.*

remote;

Cras,	*To-morrow.*
Poſtridie,	*The day after.*
Perendie,	*Two days hence*
Nondum,	*Not yet.*

4. *Indefinite.*

Quando?	*When?*
Aliquando, Nonnunquam, Interdum,	*Sometimes.*
Semper,	*Ever,*
Nunquam,	*Never,*
Interim,	*In the meantime*
Quotidie,	*Daily.*

(2) *Continuance of time.*

Diu,	*Long.*
Quamdiu?	*How long?*
Tamdiu,	*So long.*
Jamdiu, Jamdudum, Jampridem,	*Long ago.*

(3) *Viciſſitude or repetition of time.*

1. *Indefinite.*

Quoties?	*How often?*
Sæpe,	*Often.*
Raro,	*Seldom.*
Toties,	*So often.*
Aliquoties,	*For ſeveral times*
Viciſſim, Alternatim,	*By turns.*
Rurſus, Iterum,	*Again.*
Subinde,	*Ever and anon*
Identidem,	

2. *Definite, or in Number.*

Semel,	*Once.*
Bis,	*Twice.*
Ter,	*Thrice.*
Quater,	*Four times.*

3. Adverbs of *order*; as

...de, *Then.*	Deinceps, *So forth.*	Primò, -ùm,	*First.*
Deinde, *Thereafter.*	Denuo, *Of new.*	Secundò, -ùm,	*Secondly.*
Hinc, *Henceforth.*	Denique, *Finally.*	Tertiò, -ùm,	*Thirdly.*
Porrò, *Moreover.*	Poſtremò, *Laſtly.*	Quartò, -ùm,	*Fourthly.*

II. The other adverbs expreſſing quality, manner, &c. are either abſolute or comparative.

1. Quality ſimply; as, *bene*, well; *malè*, ill; *fortiter*, bravely: and innumerable others that come from adjective nouns or participles.

2. Certainty; as, *profectò*, *certè*, *ſanè*, *planè*, *næ*, *utique*, *ita*, *etiam*, truly, verily, yes; *quidni*, why not? *omnino*, certainly.

3. Contingence; as, *fortè*, *forſan*, *fortaſſis*, *fors*, happily, perhaps, by chance, peradventure.

4. Negation; as, *non*, *haud*, not; *nequaquam*, not at all; *neutiquam*, by no means; *minime*, nothing leſs.

5. Prohibition; as, *ne*, not.

6. Swearing; as, *Hercle*, *pol*, *edepol*, *mecaſtor*, by Hercules, by Pollux, &c.

7. Explaining; as, *utpote*, *videlicet*, *ſcilicet*, *nimirum*, *nempe*, to wit, namely.

8. Separation; as, *ſeorſum*, apart; *ſeparatim*, ſeparately; *ſigillatim*, one by one; *viritim*, man by man; *oppidatim*, town by town, &c.

9. Joining together; as, *ſimul*, *unà*, *pariter*, together; *generaliter*, generally; *univerſaliter*, univerſally; *plerumque*, for the moſt part.

10. Indication or pointing out; as, *en*, *ecce!* lo, behold!

11. Interrogation; as, *cur*, *quare*, *quamobrem*, why, wherefore? *num*, *an*, whether? *quomodo*, *quî*, how? To which add, *ubi*, *quò*, *quorſum*, *unde*, *quà*, *quando*, *quamdiu*, *quoties*.

1. Exceſs; as, *valde*, *maximè*, *magnopere*, *ſummopere*, *admodum*, *oppidò*, *perquam*, *longè*, very much, exceedingly; *nimis*, *nimium*, too much; *prorſus*, *penitus*, *omnino*, altogether, wholly; *magis*, more; *meliùs*, better; *pejùs*, worſe; *fortiùs*, more bravely: and *optimè*, beſt; *peſſimè*, worſt; *fortiſſimè*, moſt bravely; and innumerable others of the comparative and ſuperlative degrees.

2. Defect; as, *ferme*, *ferè*, *prope*, *propemodùm*, *penè*, almoſt; *parum*, little; *paullo*, *paullulum*, very little.

3. Preference; as, *potiùs*, *ſatiùs*, rather; *potiſſimùm*, *præcipuè*, *præſertim*, chiefly, eſpecially; *imò*, yes, nay, nay rather.

4. Likeneſs, or equality; as, *ita*, *ſic*, *adeo*, ſo; *ut*, *uti*, *ſicut*, *ſicuti*, *velut*, *veluti*, *ceu*, *tanquam*, *quaſi*, as, as if; *quemadmodum*, even as; *ſatis*, enough; *itidem*, in like manner.

5. Unlikeneſs, or inequality; as, *aliter*, *ſecus*, otherwiſe; *alioqui* or *alioquin*, elſe; *nedum*, much more or much leſs.

6. Abatement; as, *ſenſim*, *paullatim*, *pedetentim*, by degrees, piecemeal; *vix*, ſcarcely; *ægrè*, hardly, with difficulty.

7. Excluſion; as, *tantùm*, *ſolùm*, *modo*, *tantummodo*, *duntaxat*, *demum*, only.

Note 1. That adverbs ſeem originally to have been contrived to expreſs compendiouſly in one word what muſt otherwiſe have required two

or more; as, *ſapienter*, wiſely; for *cum ſapientia*; *hic*, for *in hoc loco*; *per*, for *in omni tempore*; *ſemel*, for *una vice*; *bis*, for *duabus vic Hercule*, for *Hercules me juvet*, &c. Therefore many of them are no elſe but adjective nouns or pronouns, having the prepoſition and ſtantive underſtood; as, *quò*, *eò*, *eòdem*; for *ad quæ*, *ea*, *eadem*, [or *cui*, *ei*, *eidem*, [*loco*]; for of old theſe datives ended in *o*. *quâ*, *hâc*, *illâc*, &c. are plain adjectives in the ablative ſingular fem the word *viâ*, a way, and *in*, being underſtood. Many of them compounds; as, *quomodo*, i. e. *quo modo*; *quemadmodum*, i. e. *ad quem dum*; *quamobrem*, i. e. *ob quam rem*; *quare*, i e. [*pro*] *qua re*; *quorſum*, *verſus quem* [*locum*]; *ſcilicet*, i. e. *ſcire licet*; *videlicet*, i. e. *videre lic licet*, i. e. *ire licet*; *illico*, i. e. *in loco*; *magnopere*, i. e. *magno opere*; *rum*, i. e. *ni* [*eſt*] *mirum*: from a pronoun and a ſyllabic adjection *tuatim*, i. e *tuo more*: from a participle and a noun; as, *perendie perempto die*, &c.

Note 2. That of adverbs of place, theſe of the firſt kind anſwer queſtion *ubi?* the ſecond to *quo?* the third to *quorſum?* the fourth *de?* and the fifth to *qua?* To which might be added a ſixth, *q* How far? anſwered by *uſque*, until; *hucuſque*, hitherto; *eouſque*, *hactenus*, hitherto, thus far; *eatenus*, ſo far as; *quadantenus*, in meaſure. But theſe are equally applied to place and time.

Note 3. That adverbs of time of the firſt kind anſwer to *quan* the ſecond to *quamdiu* and *quamdudum* or *quampridem?* of the th *quotics?*

Note 4. That adverbs of quality generally anſwer to the queſtio *modo?*

Note 5. That ſome adverbs of time, place, and order, are freq uſed the one for the other; as, *ubi*, where and when? *inde*, fro place, from that time, thereafter, next; *hactenus*, thus far, with to place, time, or order, &c. Other adverbs alſo may be claſſed different heads.

Note 6. That ſome adverbs of time are either paſt, preſent, ture; as, *jam*, already, now, by and by; *olim*, long ago, ſom hereafter.

Note 7. That interrogative adverbs of time and place doubled, the adjection *cunque*, anſwer to the Engliſh adjection *ſoever*; as, or *ubicunque*, whereſoever; *quoquo*, or *quocunque*, whitherſoeve And the ſame holds alſo in other interrogative words; as, *quiſ quicunque*, whoſoever; *quotquot*, or *quotcunque*, how many ſoever *tuſquantus*, or *quantuſcunque*, how great ſoever; *qualiſqualis*, or *q que*, of what kind or quality ſoever; *utut*, or *utcunque*, however, ſoever, &c.

CHAP. VII.

Of PREPOSITION.

THE prepoſitions which govern the accuſative are t eight, viz.

d, (1) to; *apud*, at; *adverſus*, *adverſum*, (2) againſt; (3) before; *contra*, (4) againſt; *cis*, *citra*, on this ſide; (5) *circum*, about; *erga*, towards; *extra*, without; between, among; *intra*, within; *infra*, beneath; nigh to; *ob*, for; *propter*, for, hard by; *per*, by, ugh; *præter*, beſides, except; *penes*, in the power of; (6) after; *pone*, behind; *ſecus*, by, along; *ſecundum*, rding to; *ſupra*, above; *trans*, on the farther ſide; *ul-* beyond.

) *Ad*, about, &c. looks very like an adverb in theſe phraſes: Liv. millia cæſa ſunt, i. e. *millia cæſa ſunt ad duo millia.* Ib. *Ad mille ho-* amiſſum (*eſt*). Ib. *Ad ducenti perierunt.* (2) Theſe compounds alſo an accuſative: Cic. *Ara exadverſus eum locum conſecrata eſt.* ep. *Ut exadverſum Athenas claſſem conſtituerent.* (3) Liv. *Paucis annis* Ib. *Perpaucis ante diebus.* Ib. *Non capto ante cibo; ſc. ante hoc tem-* Theſe phraſes are ſupplied by *finitum.* Cic. *Ante diem octavum idus* Liv. *Comitia ante diem quintum kalendas Septembres fuere, ſc. finitum.* Qui dies futurus eſſet, *in, ante diem octavum*, i. e. *in diem, ante diem oc-* *finitum*, upon the eight day. Liv. *Ex, ante diem quintum*, i. e. *ex ante diem quintum finitum*, on the fifth day. (4) *Quod contra fit a ple-* *Sc. illud negotium.* (5) Liv. *Omnes, qui circa erant, tela conjecerunt.* *um. Circa padus amnis erat, ſc. eos.* (6) Virg. *Longo poſt tempore. Sc.* *tempus.*

The prepoſitions which govern the ablative are fifteen, viz.

d, *ab*, *abs*, from; *abſque*, without; *cum*, with; *clam*, with- the knowledge of; *coram*, before; *de*, of, concerning; *e*, out of; *pro*, for; *præ*, before; *pălam*, with the know- e of; *ſine*, without; *tenus*, up to.

Theſe four govern ſometimes the accuſative, and ſome- imes the ablative.

n, in, into; *ſub*, under; *ſuper*, above; *ſubter*, beneath. No. 70. and 71. of the Syntax.

prepoſition is an indeclinable word, ſhewing the relation of one ſub- ive noun to another.

Note, That *pone* and *ſecus* rarely occur: and *prope*, nigh; *uſque*, unto; *ter*, about; *verſus*, towards; which are commonly reckoned among prepoſitions governing the accuſative; and *procul*, far, among governing the ablative, are adverbs, and do not govern a caſe of nſelves, but by the prepoſition *ad*, which is underſtood to the firſt , and *a* or *ab* to the laſt. To which perhaps may be added *clam*, ich is joined very frequently with the accuſative; as, *clam patre*, or ; *a* being underſtood to the one, and *quod ad* to the other.

ſides the ſeparate uſe of theſe prepoſitions, there is another uſe ari- om them, namely, their being put before a vaſt number of nouns

and verbs in compoſition, which creates a great variety, and gives a peculiar elegance and beauty to the Latin tongue.

Prepoſitions compounded with other words commonly retain their ſignification; as, *abeo*.—*Exc.* 1. *In* with nouns and participles often p without want or privation; as, *infidus*, *indoctus*, *inauditus*. 2. *In* with a verb commonly increaſes; as, *infringo*, I break in pieces; *induro*, I make hard.—With participles, *in* is taken more frequently affirmatively, ſometimes negatively; as, *invocatus*, *infrenatus*, *immutatus*. 3. *In*, with a noun, ſometimes increaſes; as, *incanus*, *incurvus*. 4. *Per* frequently increaſes; as, *percarus*, *perdifficilis*, *perfero*, *perfruor*: b ſometimes alſo takes away; as, *perfidus*, *perjurus*. 5. *Præ* ſometime creaſes; as, *præclarus*, *prædives*, *prævaleo*, *prapolleo*. *Sub* ſometime ſens; as, *ſubtriſtis*, *ſubiraſcor*. 7. *De* often ſignifies *downward*; as, *do*, *decurro*: yet ſometimes increaſes; as, *deamo*, *demiror*: and ſomet deprives; as, *demens*, *decolor*, *depilo*. 8. *Ex* ſometimes increaſes; as *clamo*, *exaggero*; and ſometimes deprives; as, *exſanguis*, *examino*.

There are five or ſix ſyllables, viz. *am*, (for *an*, i. e. *ambe*, or *amb* bout, from ἀμφὶ), *di*, or *dis*, *re*, *ſe*, *con*, which are commonly calle *ſeparable prepoſitions*, becauſe they are only to be found in comp words: however, they generally add ſomething to the ſignification o words with which they are compounded; thus,

Am, Di, Dis, Re, Se, Con,	ſignifies	*round about*,	as,	ambio,	*to ſurround.*
		aſunder,		divello,	*to pull aſunde*
				diſtraho,	*to draw aſun*
		again,		relego,	*to read again.*
		aſide or *apart*,		ſepono,	*to lay aſide.*
		together.		concreſco,	*to grow togeth*

CHAP. VIII.

Of Conjunction.

A Conjunction is an indeclinable word that joins ſentences toge and thereby ſhews their dependence upon one another.

Of theſe ſome are called,

1. *Copulative*; as, *et*, *ac*, *atque*, *que*, (at the end of a word), and; *e quoque*, *item*, alſo; *cum*, *tum*, both, and. Alſo their contraries, *nec*, *n neu*, *neve*, neither, nor.

2. *Disjunctive*; as, *aut*, *ve*, *vel*, *ſeu*, *ſive*, either, or.

3. *Conceſſive*; as, *etſi*, *etiamſi*, *tametſi*, *licet*, *quanquam*, *quamvis*, tho although, albeit.

4. *Adverſative*; as, *ſed*, *verum*, *autem*, *at*, *aſt*, *atqui*, but; *tamen*, *atta verumtamen*, *verumenimvero*, yet, notwithſtanding, nevertheleſs.

5. *Cauſal*; as, *nam*, *namque*, *enim*, for; *quia*, *quippe*, *quoniam*, beca *quòd*, that, becauſe.

6. *Illative* or *rational*; as, *ergo*, *ideo*, *igitur*, *idcirco*, *itaque*, theref *quapropter*, *quocirca*, wherefore; *proinde*, therefore; *cum*, *quum*, ſec ſince; *quandoquidem*, foraſmuchas.

7. *Final* or *perfective*; as, *ut*, *uti*, that, to the end that.

8. *Conditional*; as, *ſi*, *ſin*, if; *dum modo*, *dummodo*, provided, upon dition that; *ſiquidem*, if indeed.

9. *Exceptive* or *reſtrictive*; as, *ni*, *niſi*, unleſs, except.

10. *Diminutive*; as, *ſaltem*, *certè*, at leaſt.

2. *Suſpenſive* or *dubitative*; as, *an*, *anne*, *num*, *ne*, (at the end of a word), whether; *annon*, whether or not; *necne*, or not.

3. *Expletive*; as, *autem*, *vero*, now, truly; *quidem*, *equidem*, indeed.

4. *Ordinative*; as, *deinde*, thereafter; *denique*, finally; *inſuper*, moreover; *cæterum*, moreover, but, however.

5. *Declarative*; as, *videlicet*, *ſcilicet*, *nempe*, *nimirum*, &c. to wit, namely.

Note 1. That the ſame words, as they are taken in different views, are both adverbs and conjunctions; as, *an*, *anne*, &c. are ſuſpenſive conjunctions and interrogative adverbs. The ſame may be ſaid of the ordinative and declarative conjunctions, which under another view may be ranked under adverbs of order and explaining. So likewiſe *utinam*, which is commonly called an *adverb of wiſhing*, when more narrowly conſidered, is nothing elſe but the conjunction *uti* [that] with the ſyllable *nam* added to it, and *opto* [I wiſh] underſtood; as, *Utinam adfuiſſes*; *ut te Deus male perdat*, ſupple *opto*. But ſince both of them are indeclinable, there is no need of being very nice in diſtinguiſhing them.

Note 2. That other parts of ſpeech compounded together, ſupply the place of conjunctions; as, *poſtea*, afterwards; *præterea*, moreover; *propterea*, becauſe, &c. which are made up of the prepoſitions, *poſt*, *præter*, *propter*, with *ea* the pronoun.

Note 3. That ſome conjunctions, according to their natural order, ſtand in a ſentence; as, *et*, *aut*, *nec*, *ſi*, &c. Some, contrary to their natural order, ſtand in the ſecond place, viz. *autem*, *vero*, *quoque*, *quidem*, *enim*: Some may indifferently be put either firſt or ſecond, viz. *namque*, *etenimquidem*, *ergo*, *igitur*, *itaque*, &c. Hence aroſe the diviſion of them into poſitive, ſubjunctive, and common.

¶ CHAP. IX.

APPENDIX: Containing ſome obſervations concerning the various diviſions and ſignifications of words, eſpecially Noun and Verb.

ALL words whatſoever are either ſimple or compound. A ſimple word [*ſimplex*] is that which was never more than one; as, *jus*, A compound [*compoſitum*] is that which is made up of two or more words, or of a word and ſome ſyllabical adjection; as, *juſtus*, *perlego*, *ego*, *egomet*.

All words whatſoever are either primitive or derivative. A primitive [*primitivum*] is that which comes from no other word; as, *jus*, *lego*. A derivative [*derivativum*] is that which comes from another word; as, *juſtus*, *lectio*.

Beſides the more general diviſions of nouns and pronouns, mentioned in 34 and 35. there are other particular diviſions of them taken from their ſeveral ſignifications and derivations: The moſt remarkable whereof are as follow:

I. With reſpect to ſignification.

A collective [*collectivum*] is a ſubſtantive noun, which ſignifies many in the ſingular number; as, *populus*, a people; *exercitus*, an army.

2. An interrogative noun or pronoun [*interrogativum*] is that by w we aſk a queſtion; as, *quis?* who? *uter?* which of the two? *qualis* what kind? *quantus?* how great? *quot?* how many? And theſe, they are uſed without a queſtion, are called *indefinites.*

3. A relative noun or pronoun [*relativum*] is an adjective that ha ſpect to ſomething ſpoken before; as, *qui, ille, ipſe,* &c.; *alius, alter, quus, cætera, -um, qualis, quantus,* &c.

4. A partitive noun or pronoun [*partitivum*] is an adjective which nifies many ſeverally, and as it were one by one; as, *omnis, nullus, que,* &c.: or a part of many; as, *quidam, aliquis, neuter, nemo,* &c.

5. A numeral noun [*numerale*] is an adjective which ſignifies num (of which there are four principal kinds:)

(1) Cardinal, [*numerus cardinalis*]; as, *unus, duo, tres,* &c.

(2) Ordinal, [*ordinalis*]; as, *primus, ſecundus, tertius,* &c.

(3) Diſtributive, [*diſtributivus*]; as, *ſinguli, bini, terni,* &c.

(4) Multiplicative, [*multiplicativus*]; as, *ſimplex, duplex, triplex,* &

II. With reſpect to ſignification and derivation.

1. A patronymick noun [*patronymicum*] is a ſubſtantive noun de from another ſubſtantive proper, ſignifying one's pedigree or extrac as, *Priamides,* the ſon of Priamus; *Priamis,* the daughter of Priamus *etias,* the daughter of Æetes; *Nerine,* the daughter of Nereus. Patr micks are generally derived from the name of the father: but the (for others ſeldom uſe them) derive them alſo from the grandfather ſome other remarkable perſon of the family; nay, ſometimes from founder of a nation or people, and alſo from countries and cities *Æacides,* the ſon, grandſon, great-grandſon, or one of the poſterity of cus; *Romulidæ,* the Romans, from their firſt king Romulus; *Sicelis,* a woman of Sicily, of Troy, &c. Patronymicks of men end in *des* women in *is, as,* and *ne.* Theſe in *des* and *ne* are of the firſt, and the *is* and *as* of the third declenſion.

2. An abſtract noun [*abſtractum*] is a ſubſtantive derived from an tive expreſſing the quality of that adjective in general, without rega the thing in which the quality is; as, *bonitas,* goodneſs; *dulcedo,* ſweet from *bonus,* good; *dulcis,* ſweet. With reſpect to theſe abſtracts, th jectives from which they come are called *concretes*; becauſe, beſide quality, they alſo confuſedly ſignify ſomething as the ſubject of it, wi which they cannot make ſenſe.

3. A gentile or patrial noun [*gentile* or *patrium*] is an adjective de from a ſubſtantive proper, ſignifying one's country; as, *Scotus, M Arpinas, Edinburgenſis, Taodunanus,* a man born in Scotland, Maced Arpinum, Edinburgh, Dundee; from *Scotia, Macedonia, Arpinum, Ed gum, Taodunum.*

4. A poſſeſſive noun [*poſſeſſivum*] is an adjective derived from a ſu tive, whether proper or appellative, ſignifying poſſeſſion or propert *Scoticus, Herculeus, paternus, herilis, fœmineus,* of or belonging to Sco Hercules, a father, a maſter, a woman; from *Scotia, Hercules, pater, fœmina.*

5. A diminutive noun [*diminutivum*] is a ſubſtantive or adjective de from another ſubſtantive or adjective reſpectively, importing a dimin or leſſening of its ſignification; as, *libellus,* a little book; *chartula,* a paper; *opuſculum,* a little work; from *liber, charta, opus: parvulus,* little; *candidulus,* pretty white; from *parvus, candidus.* Theſe for th

t end in *lus*, *la*, or *lum*, and are generally of the ſame gender with their mitives.

. A denominative noun [*denominativum*] is a ſubſtantive or adjective de- ed from another noun; as, *gratia*, favour; *vinea*, a vineyard; *ſenator*, enator; from *gratus*, *vinum*, *ſenex*: *cœleſtis*, heavenly; *humanus*, humane; *us*, golden; from *cœlum*, *homo*, *aurum*.

. A verbal noun [*verbale*] is a ſubſtantive or adjective derived from a rb; as, *amor*, love; *doctrina*, learning; *lectio*, a leſſon; *auditus*, hearing; m *amo*, *doceo*, *lego*, *audio*: *amabilis*, lovely; *capax*, capable; *volucer*, ft; from *amo*, *capio*, *volo*, volas.

. Laſtly, there are ſome nouns derived from participles, adverbs, and epoſitions; as, *fictitius*, counterfeit; *craſtinus*, belonging to the morrow; *rarius*, contrary; from *fictus*, *cras*, *contra*.

Note, That the ſame nouns, according to the different reſpects in ich they are conſidered, may ſometimes be ranked under one, and metimes under another of the above-mentioned claſſes; as, *quis* is an terrogative, relative, or partitive; *pietas* an abſtract or denominative.

II. Pronouns are divided into four claſſes, viz.

. Demonſtratives, *ego*, *tu*, *ſui*.

. Relatives, *ille*, *ipſe*, *iſte*, *hic*, *is*, *quis*, *qui*.

. Poſſeſſives, *meus*, *tuus*, *ſuus*, *noſter*, *veſter*.

. Patrials, or Gentiles, *noſtras*, *veſtras*, *cujas*.

Of them alſo two are interrogatives, *quis* and *cujas*.

III. 1. Verbs, with reſpect to their figure or frame, are either ſimple or mpound. See p. 85.

. With reſpect to their ſpecies or origin, are either primitive, as, *lego*, ad; or derivative, as, *lectito*, I read frequently.

. With reſpect to their conjugation, are either regular, as, *amo*; or ir- gular, as, *volo*, *vis*, &c.

. With reſpect to their conſtituent parts, are either complete, as, *a-* ; or defective, as, *inquam*; or redundant, as, *edo*, *edis*, and *es*, &c.

. With reſpect to their perſons, are either perſonal, as, *amo*; or im- ſonal, as, *pœnitet*.

. With reſpect to their terminations, they end either in *o*, as, *amo*; in *r*, as, *amor*; or in *m*, as, *ſum*.

. With reſpect to the ſignification, verbs are either ſubſtantive or ad- ive.

(a.) A ſubſtantive verb [*ſubſtantivum*] is that which ſignifies ſimply the rmation of being or exiſtence; as, *ſum*, *fio*, *exiſto*, I am.

(b.) An adjective verb [*adjectivum*] is that which, together with the ſig- ication of being, has a particular ſignification of its own; as, *amo*, i. e. *amans*, I am loving.

An adjective verb is divided into active, paſſive, and neuter.

(a.) An active verb [*activum*] is that which affirms action of its perſon nominative before it; as, *amo*, *loquor*, *curro*.

(a.) A paſſive verb [*paſſivum*] is that which affirms paſſion of its perſon nominative before it; as, *amor*.

(b.) A neuter verb [*neutrum*] is that which affirms neither action nor ſion of its nominative, but ſimply ſignifies the ſtate, poſture, or quality things; as, *ſto*, *ſedeo*, *maneo*, *duro*, *vireo*, *flaveo*, *ſapio*, *quieſco*, &c. to ſtand, ſit, endure, to be green, to be yellow, to be wiſe, to reſt.

An active verb is again divided into tranſitive and intranſitive.

[1.] An Active tranſitive verb [*tranſitivum*] is that whoſe action paſſ from the agent to ſome other thing; as, *amo patrem.*

[2.] An active intranſitive verb [*intranſitivum*] is that whoſe act paſſeth not from the agent to any other; as, *curro*, I run; *ambul* walk.

When to any verb you put the queſtion *whom?* or *what?* if a ratio anſwer can be returned, the verb is tranſitive; as, *Whom*, or *What do teach?* Anſ. *A boy, The grammar:* if not, it is intranſitive; as, *What do run, go, come, live, ſleep?* &c. to which no rational anſwer can be given, leſs it be by a word of like ſignification, which ſometimes indeed theſe v have after them; as, *Vivo vitam jucundam*, I live a pleaſant life; *Eo longum*, I go a long journey.

Note 1. That the ſame verb is ſometimes tranſitive, and ſometime tranſitive; as, *Ver incipit*, The ſpring begins, *Cic. Incipere facinus*, To b an action, *Plaut.*

Note 2. That neuter and intranſitive verbs are often Engliſhed with ſigns of a paſſive verb; as, *caleo*, I am hot; *palleo*, I am pale; *Ja abiit*, James is gone.

Note 3. That neuter and intranſitive verbs want the paſſive voice, leſs impersonally uſed, as the intranſitive verbs moſt frequently and gantly are; as, *pugnatur, itur, ventum eſt.*

Though all verbs whatſoever, with reſpect to their ſignification, be to ſome one or other of the foregoing claſſes; yet, becauſe grammari together with the ſignification of verbs, are obliged alſo to conſider termination; and finding that all active verbs did not end in *o*, neith paſſives in *or*; it was judged convenient to add to the former tw three other claſſes or kinds of them, viz. deponent, common, and ne paſſive.

[1.] A deponent verb [*deponens*] is that which has a paſſive term tion, but an active or neuter ſignification; as, *loquor*, I ſpeak; *mori* die.

[2.] A common verb [*commune*] is that which under a paſſive ter tion has a ſignification either active or paſſive; as, *criminor*, I accuſe I am accuſed; *dignor*, I think, or, I am thought worthy. See p. 85

[3.] A neuter-paſſive [*neutro-paſſivum*] is that which is half active half paſſive in its termination, but in its ſignification is either wholly ſive, as, *fio, factus ſum*, to be made; — or wholly active or neute theſe four, *audeo, auſus ſum*, to dare; *gaudeo, gaviſus ſum*, to rejoice *leo, ſolitus ſum*, to uſe; *fido, fiſus ſum*, to truſt.

8. To omit the other kinds of derivative verbs, which are not very rial, there are three kinds of them derived from verbs which deſer be remarked, viz. frequentatives, inceptives, and deſideratives.

(1.) Frequentatives [*verba frequentativa*] ſignify frequency of ac and end in *to, ſo, xo*, and, from deponents, in *or*; as, *clamito, pulſo, minitor.* They are formed from the laſt ſupine, by changing *atu* in from verbs of the firſt; as, *volo, volātu, volito:* and *u* into *o* from ve the other three conjugations; as, *terreo, terrĭtu, terrĭto; verto, verſu ſo; dormio, dormītu, dormĭto.* Exc. *no, natu, nato; ſcio, ſcitor*, and of *ſciſcitor:* ſo *paveo* from *pavito*, *ſector* from *ſequor*, *loquitor* from *loquor* if from *pavitu, ſectu, loquitu:* alſo *quærito, fundito, agito.* Some ſe be formed from the laſt ſupine, by changing *u* into *ito*; as, *actito actu, hæſito* from *hæſu, miſſito* from *miſſu, ſcriptito* from *ſcriptu, victito*

...tu. They are all of the first conjugation. From them are also formed ...ter frequentatives; as *curro, curso, cursito; jacio, jacto, jactito; pello, pul-so, pulsito*, and by a syncope *pulto*.

(a.) Inceptives [*verba inceptiva*] signify, that a thing is begun and tend-...to perfection. They are all neuter, and of the third; and are de-...ed from nouns and verbs. The first change the last vowel of the ge-...ive into *asco*, but more commonly into *esco*; as, *pueraſco, puellaſco, ig-...o, lapideſco*, from the substantives *puer, puella, ignis, lapis; dulceſco, ju-...ſco, vaneſco, diteſco*, from the adjectives *dulcis, juvenis, vanus, dis*. These ...the preterites, and therefore the supines.

Those that are derived from verbs are formed from the second person ...gular present indicative, by adding *co*, in whatever conjugation; as, *la-...labeſco; ferves, ferveſco; tremis, tremiſco; obdormis, obdormiſco:* but ...is by a syncope for *hiaſco*, from *hias*. These borrow the preterite from ...r primitives.

(b.) Desideratives [*verba deſiderativa*] signify a desire of action. They ...formed from the last supine, by putting *rio* after ŭ; as, *edo, eſu, eſŭrio*. ...y are all of the fourth, and all want the preterite and supine, except ...rio, parturio, and nupturio.

Lastly, In construction, verbs receive names from their more parti-...r significations; as, *vocative* verbs, or verbs of *naming*, verbs of *remem-...ing*, of *want*, of *teaching*, of *accusing*, &c.

...n the preceding division of verbs, with respect to their signification, I ...e receded a little from the common method; and in particular I have ...n a different account of neuter verbs from that commonly received by ...marians, who comprise under them all intransitive verbs, tho' their ...fications be never so much active. But this I did, partly from the rea-...of the name, which imports a negation both of action and passion; ...partly to give a distinct view of the significations of verbs, without ...d to their terminations, which in that respect are purely accidental ...arbitrary.

...have also excluded from the divisions of verbs those called *neutral-pas-...* [Lat. *neutro-passiva*], because originally they are active verbs; for ...primary signification of *vapulo* is *pereo* or *plero*; of *exulo, extra solum ...veneo, venum eo*; of *nubo, velo*. *Liceo* indeed is a very singular ...; for in the active voice it signifies passively, and in the passive ac-...ly.

PART THIRD.

Of SENTENCES, or SPEECH.

SENTENCE is any thought of the mind expressed by two ...or more words put together; as, *Tu legis*, You read; ...*legis libros*, You read books; *Tu legis libros bonos*, You ...good books; *Tu legis libros bonos domi*, You read good ...s at home.

...e are now arrived at the principal part of grammar; for the great ...of speech being to convey our thoughts unto others, it will be of

little uſe to us to have a ſtock of words, and to know what changes c be made upon them, unleſs we can alſo apply them to practice, and ma them anſwer the great purpoſes for which they are intended. To the tainment of this end, there are two things abſolutely neceſſary, viz. That in ſpeech we diſpoſe and frame our words according to the laws a rules eſtabliſhed among thoſe whoſe language we ſpeak. 2. That in manner we know what is ſpoken and written, and be able to explain in due order, and reſolve it into the ſeveral parts of which it is m up. The firſt of theſe is called *ſyntax* or *conſtruction*; and the ſecon named *expoſition* or *reſolution*. The firſt ſhews us how to ſpeak language ourſelves; and the ſecond, how to underſtand it when ſpo by others. But it muſt be owned, that there is ſuch a neceſſary conn tion between them, that he that is maſter of the firſt cannot be ignoran the ſecond.

CHAP. I.

Of SYNTAX, or CONSTRUCTION.

SYntax is the right ordering of words in ſpeech.—— parts are two, concord and government.

Concord is when one word agrees with another in ſome cidents.—— Government is when a word governs a cert caſe.

I. *Of Concord.*

Concord is fourfold. 1. Of an adjective with a ſubſt tive. 2. Of a verb with a nominative. 3. Of a relative w an antecedent. 4. Of a ſubſtantive with a ſubſtantive.

Note, That the difference between concord and government co chiefly in this, that, in concord, there can no change be made in the dents, that is, gender, caſe, number, or perſon, of the one, but the change muſt alſo be made in the other; but, in government, the firſt w if declinable, may be changed, without any change in the ſecond. concord, the firſt word may be called the *word directing*, and the ſe the *word directed*; in government the firſt is called the *word gover* and the ſecond the *word governed*.

Regula I.	Rule I.
I	I
Adjectivum concordat cum ſubſtantivo in genere, numero, et caſu; ut,	*An adjective agrees wi ſubſtantive in gender, num and caſe; as,*

Vir bonus, A good man. *Fœmina caſta*, A chaſte wom *Dulce pomum*, A ſweet apple.

Note 1. That the way to find out the ſubſtantive, is to aſk the que *Who* or *What?* to the adjective; for that which anſwers to it is the ſub

. And the ſame queſtion put to the verb or relative, diſcovers the no-inative or antecedent.

Note 2. That another adjective ſometimes ſupplies the place of a ſub-antive; as, *Amicus certus*, *Bona ferina*; *homo* being underſtood to *amicus*, *caro* to *ferina*.

Note 3. That the ſubſtantive is frequently underſtood; as, *triſte* [ſupple *ſcelus*], i. e. *res triſtis*. *Bona* [ſupple *negotia*], i. e. *res bona*. So *Laboro febri*, ſc. *febri*. *Primas teneo*, ſc. *partes*. *Paucis te volo*, ſc. *verbis*.

Note 4. An adjective put with two ſubſtantives of different genders, agrees with the principal one; as, Plin. *Oppidum Paſtum*, *Græcis Poſidonia dictum*: yet ſometimes with the one that is neareſt; as, Cic. *Non omnis ſtultitia eſt dicenda*.

Reg. II.	Rule II.
2	2
Verbum concordat cum nominativo ante ſe in numero et perſona; ut,	*A verb agrees with the nominative before it in number and perſon; as,*

Ego lego, I read. *Tu ſcribis*, You write. *Præceptor docet*, The maſter teacheth.

Note 1. The firſt and ſecond perſons are ſeldom expreſſed but for diſtinction; as, *Ego reges ejeci, vos tyrannos introducitis*: or for emphaſis; as, *Tu dominus, tu vir, tu mihi frater eras.*

Note 2. No nominative is expreſſed to *aiunt*, *ferunt*, &c.; and *Deus*, *cœlum*, *aqua*, or the like, are always underſtood to *tonat*, *ningit*, &c.

Note 3. That the infinitive mood frequently ſupplies the place of the nominative; as, *Mentiri non eſt meum*; *Ne non veniſſe fraudi eſſet*, Liv.

ANNOTATIONES.

3	3
1. Verba ſubſtantiva, vocandi, et geſtûs, habent usque nominativum ad eandem rem pertinentem; ut,	1. *Subſtantive verbs, verbs of naming and geſture, have a nominative both before and after them, belonging to the ſame thing; as,*

Ego ſum diſcipulus, I am a ſcholar. *Tu vocaris* Joannes, You are named *John*. *Illa incedit regina*, She walks as a queen.

1. Subſtantive verbs are, *ſum*, *fio*, *forem*, and *exiſto*.

2. Verbs of naming are theſe paſſives, *appellor*, *dicor*, *vocor*, *nominor*, *nuncupor*; to which add, *videor*, *exiſtimor*, *creor*, *conſtituor*, *ſalutor*, *deſignor*, *reperior*, *invenior*, *reperior*, *cenſeor*, *agnoſcor*, &c.

3. Verbs of geſture are, *eo*, *incedo*, *venio*, *cubo*, *ſto*, *ſedeo*, *evado*, *fugio*, *dormio*, *ſomnio*, *maneo*, *jaceo*, *ſalto*, &c.

Note 1. That any verb may have after it the nominative, when it belongs to the ſame thing with the nominative before it; as, *Audivi hoc puer. Defendi rempublicam adoleſcens*, *non deſeram ſenex*, Cic.

Note 2. In Livy eſpecially, *eſt* and *ſunt* are ſuppreſſed to particip perfects; as, *Oppidum captum*, ſc. *eſt*. *Coloniæ miſſæ, plures inventi, ſunt.*

4

2. ¶ Excep. Infinitivus modus accuſativum ante ſe habet; ut,

4

2. ¶ *Excep. The infinit mood has an accuſative beſ it; as,*

Gaudeo te valere, I am glad that you are well.

Note 1. That when the particle *that* [in Lat. *quod* or *ut*] comes betwe two verbs, it is elegantly left out, by turning the nominative caſe i the accuſative, and the verb into the infinitive mood; as, *Aiunt regem ventare*, rather than *Aiunt, quod rex adventat. Turpe eſt, eos qui bene nati ſ turpiter vivere*, rather than, *ut ii turpiter vivant.* See p. 68.

Note 2. *Me, te, ſe, illum*, &c. are often ſuppreſſed. Virg. *Sed red poſſe negabat*, ſc. *ſe poſſe.*

Note 3. *Eſſe* or *fuiſſe* are often omitted to the participle-perfects; *Hoſtium exercitum cæſum fuſumque cognovi*, ſc. *fuiſſe*, Cic.

Note 4. Sometimes both the accuſative and infinitive are ſuppreſſ Liv. *Nec geſturos melius ſperare poterant*, ſc. *ſe eſſe.*

5

3. ¶ *Eſſe*, et cæteri verborum ſubſtantivorum, vocandi, et geſtûs, infinitivi, habet eundem caſum poſt ſe quem ante ſe; ut,

5

3. Eſſe, *and the other in nitives of ſubſtantive ver verbs of naming and geſtu hath the ſame caſe after it th it hath before it; as,*

Petrus cupit eſſe vir doctus, Peter deſires to be a learn man. *Scio Petrum eſſe virum doctum*, I know that Peter a learned man. *Mihi negligenti eſſe non licet*, I am not a lowed to be negligent. *Dicitur eſſe vir*, He is ſaid to be man. *Nemo debet dici beatus ante ſuum obitum*, No m ſhould be called happy before his death. *Non videtur facturus*, He ſeems not about to do it.

Note, That we frequently ſay, *Licet nobis eſſe bonos*, We may be goo *Tibi expedit eſſe ſedulum*, It is expedient for you to be diligent. *Nem unquam nocuit fuiſſe pium*, It never hurted any man that he hath been pio But then the accuſative, *nos, te, illum*, &c. is underſtood; thus, *Licet no* [*nos*] *eſſe bonos.*

Reg. III.

6

Relativum *qui, quæ, quod*, concordat cum antecedente in genere, numero, et perſona; ut,

Rule III.

6

The relative qui, quæ, quo *agrees with the antecedent gender, number, and perſon as,*

Ego qui doceo, I who teach. *Tu qui diſcis*, You who lear *Lectio quæ docetur*, The leſſon which is taught.

Note 1. The antecedent and relative always reſpect different verbs; as, , *qui pauca loquitur, ſapit,* He is a wiſe man who ſpeaks little.

Note 2. That the antecedent is a ſubſtantive noun that goes before the ative, and is again underſtood to the relative: wherefore it will not be ſs to teach the ſcholar to ſupply it every where, thus: *Cave ſegnitiem,* (*ſegnities*) *eſt inimica virtuti.* Nay Cicero himſelf, but eſpecially Cæ- frequently repeat the ſubſtantive; as, Cic. *In oppidum perfugiſti, quo ppido,* &c. Cæſ. *Diem dicunt, quo die ad ripam Rhodani conveniant.*

Note 3. That when the relative comes between two ſubſtantives of dif- ent genders, it agrees, for the moſt part, (according to the Romans) the firſt; as, Ov. *Unus erat toto naturæ vultus in orbe, quem dixere chaos.* ſometimes with the laſt, (after the Greeks); as, Cic. *Animal quem vo- nus hominem.*

Note 4. The laſt caſe is, for the moſt part, ſuppreſſed; as, Hor. *Ani- rege, qui, niſi paret, imperat,* for *qui animus.*

Note 5. Sometimes the firſt is ſuppreſſed; as, Ter. *Populo ut placerent, s feciſſet fabulas,* for *fabulæ, quas fabulas.*

Note 6. Both firſt and laſt are ſometimes omitted; as, Hor. *Sunt quos genus minimè juvat,* for *homines, quos homines.*

Note 7. That when the relative reſpects a whole ſentence, it is put in neuter gender; as, *Joannes mortuus eſt, quod mihi ſummo dolori eſt.*

Note 8. The antecedent is ſometimes included in the poſſeſſive; as, n. *Omnes* (*cæperunt*) *laudare meas fortunas, qui haberem,* for *fortunas mei.*

Note 9. Sometimes the relative reſpects another ſubſtantive than that ich goes before; as, Liv. *Carne pluit, quem imbrem,* i. e. *pluit imbrem ve, quem imbrem.* Sall. *Ipſe ex flumine, quam proximam oppido aquam ſu- ximus, jumenta onerat.*

Note 10. Sometimes the antecedent is to be ſupplied by another num- r; as, Cic. *Si tempus eſt ullum jure homines necandi, quæ multa ſunt, ſc. pora.*

Note 11. The relative ſometimes agrees, not with the gender of its an- dent, but with that of a ſynonymous word; as, Cic. *Sumptui ne par- ullâ in re, quod ad valetudinem opus ſit, ſc. quod negotium.*

Note 12. What ſhould belong to the relative is given to the antece- nt; as, Cic. *Cum veniſſem ad vada Volaterrana quæ nominantur,* for *vada e nominantur Volaterrana.*

Note 13. The Romans, in imitation of the Greeks, ſometimes made e relative agree even in caſe with its antecedent. Liv. *Raptim, quibus que poterat, elatis,* for *quæ quiſque poterat, ſc. efferre.* Nay, they made e neuter gender plural agree ſometimes with a verb in the ſingular, as e Greeks do commonly. Ter. *Prol. eunuch, habeo alia multa, quæ nunc habitur.*

Note 14. Sometimes the relative once expreſſed, is ſo ſuppreſſed that it ſt be introduced in another caſe. Sall. *Bocchus cum peditibus quos filius ucerat, neque in priore pugnâ adfuerant,* for *quique in priore pugna non ad- erant.*

Note 15. Interrogatives or indefinites, *qualis, quantus, quotus,* &c. are ſtrued ſometimes as the relative. Cic. *Tanta multitudinis, quantam capit ris noſtri, concurſus eſt ad me factus.*

Note 16. When the relative is in the neuter, and there is a genitive ter it, the antecedent is generally underſtood. Liv. *Quod viæ inter bina ra erat, agmine complevere,* i. e. *id viæ, quod viæ.* Ib. *Deos patrios, quic- id civium domi ſit, illorum intueri manus,* i. e. *id civium, quicquid civium.*

8

2. At ſi interveniat nominativus inter relativum et verbum, relativum erit ejus caſûs, quem verbum aut nomen ſequens, vel præpoſitio præcedens regere ſolent; ut,

8

2. *But if a nominative co between the relative and verb, the relative ſhall b that caſe, which the verb noun following, or the pre tion going before, uſe to gove as,*

Deus quem colimus, God whom we worſhip. *Cujus mu vivimus*, By whoſe gift we live. *Cui nullus eſt ſimilis*, To wh there is none like. *A quo facta ſunt omnia*, By whom things were made.

ANNOTATIO.

9

¶ Duo vel plura ſubſtantiva ſingularia, conjunctione [*et*, *ac*, *atque*, &c.] copulata, habent adjectivum, verbum, vel relativum plurale; ut,

9

¶ *Two or more ſubſtant ſingular, coupled together a conjunction* [et, ac, at *&c.*], *have a verb, adjective relative plural; as,*

Petrus et Joannes qui ſunt docti, Peter and John who learned.

Note 1. That when the ſubſtantives are of different genders, th jective or relative plural muſt agree with the maſculine, rather tha feminine or neuter; as, *Pater et mater qui ſunt mortui.*

Exc. But if the ſubſtantives ſignify things without life, the adjecti relative plural muſt be put in the neuter gender; as, *Divitiæ, decus, g in oculis ſita ſunt.*

Note 2. That when two or more nominatives are of different pe the verb plural muſt agree with the firſt perſon rather than the ſe and the ſecond rather than the third; as, *Si tu et Tullia valetis, ego et valemus.*

Note 3. That the adjective or verb frequently agree with the ſu tive or nominative that is neareſt them, and are underſtood to the as, *Et ego in culpa ſum et tu*; or, *Et ego et tu es in culpa. Nihil hic de carmina*; *nihil hic niſi carmina deſunt.* This manner of conſtructi moſt uſual when the different words ſignify one and the ſame thin much to the ſame purpoſe; as, *Mens, ratio, et conſilium in ſenibus eſt*

Note 4. That collective nouns, becauſe they are equivalent to a number, have ſometimes the adjective or verb in the plural numbe *Pars virgis cæſi. Turba ruunt.*

Note 5. The prepoſition *cum* is often uſed inſtead of *et*. Virg. *cum fratre Quirinus jura dabunt*, for *Quirinus & Remus frater.*

Note 6. In diſcourſe, the firſt perſon muſt go before the ſecond the ſecond before the third; as, *Ego & tu*, not *Tu & ego*: but in E we muſt ſay, *You and I.*

Reg. IV.

10

Unum ſubſtantivum conſtat cum alio eandem rem ſignificante in caſu; ut,

Rule IV.

10

One ſubſtantive agrees with another ſignifying the ſame thing in caſe; as,

Cicero orator, Cicero the orator. *Urbs Edinburgum*, The ty Edinburgh. *Filius deliciæ matris ſuæ*, A ſon the dar- of his mother.

o theſe four concords ſome add a fifth, viz. that of the reſponſive, ing with its interrogative in caſe; as, *Quis dedit tibi pecuniam? Pater*, gave you money? My father. *Quo cares? Libro*, What do you ? A book. But this ought not to be made a principal rule; for the nſive, or the word that anſwers the queſtion, does not depend upon interrogative, but upon the verb, or ſome other word joined with it; h becauſe ſpoken immediately before, is generally underſtood in the er. Thus, *Quis dedit tibi pecuniam? Pater* [dedit mihi pecuniam]. ares? [*Careo*] *libro.*

te 1. When two or more ſubſtantives ſingular agree with another ntive, it muſt be put in the plural number; as, Liv. *Conſules M. Va- P. Poſtumius.*

te 2. When the names of a man and woman are connected together, ſculine appellative may include both; as, Liv. *Ad Ptolemæum Cleo- que reges legati miſſi.* Id. *Reges excitos*, meaning the king and n.

te 3. When the ſubſtantives are of different genders, and one of has life, the adjective or verb agrees rather with it; as, Liv. *Tulli- ſciola noſtræ, tuum munuſculum flagitat.* But if both are inanimate, will agree with the moſt general one; as, Plin. *Tungri civitas Galliæ habet inſignem.* Liv. *Corioli oppidum captum.*

te 4. Sometimes the laſt ſubſtantive is put in the genitive; as, Cic. pido *Antiochiæ.*

te 5. If the laſt ſubſtantive is maſculine and feminine, with different nations, it muſt agree with the firſt in gender and number; as, *Gla- ator*; *Ultrices curæ*; *Uſus magiſter artium*; *Hiſtoria magiſtra vitæ.* But maſculine is joined to epicæne, and neuter nouns; as, *Aquila rex a- not regina. Tempus diſcipulus, et magiſter multorum.*

II. *Of Government.*

overnment is threefold. 1. Of nouns. 2. Of Verbs. Of words indeclinable.

I. *Regimen Nominum.*

§ 1. *Subſtantivorum.*

Reg. I.

11

Unum ſubſtantivum regit rem diverſam ſignificans genitivo; ut,

I. The Government of Nouns.

§ 1. Of Subſtantives.

Rule I.

11

One ſubſtantive governs another ſignifying a different thing in the genitive; as,

mor Dei, The love of God. *Lex naturæ*, The law of nature.

Note 1. That *of*, or *'s*, is the ordinary ſign of this genitive.

Note 2. That the relative pronouns, *ejus*, *illius*, *cujus*, &c. have ſubſtantives generally underſtood; as, *Liber ejus*, [ſupple *hominis*, *fœ* &c.]; *Libri eorum*, [ſupple *hominum*, *fœminarum*, &c.]

Note 3. The firſt ſubſtantive is ſometimes ſuppreſſed; as, Virg. *H Andromache*, *ſc. uxor*. Hor. *Ad Veſtæ*, Liv. *Ad Cereris*, *ſc. ædem*. Cic. *ris eſt*, *ſc. res*. Liv. *Non operæ eſt*, *ſc. pretium*. And ſometimes the as, Hor. *Millia tria repimus*, *ſc. paſſuum*.

Note 4. This genitive is taken either actively, as, *Bonitas Dei*; o ſively, as, *Timor Dei*; or both ways, as, *Amor Dei*, *Caritas patriæ*.

Note 5. Sometimes this genitive governs a ſecond; as, Sall. *Odio po nobilitatis*.

Note 6. Sometimes one ſubſtantive governs two genitives; as, Ci *minum querela frontis tuæ*.

Note 7. Sometimes the ſubſtantive governing and governed chang ſes; as, Cæſ. *Sex dies ſpatii*, for *ſpatium ſex dierum*.

Note 8. The genitive denoting poſſeſſion, is very often, and mo gantly, changed into the poſſeſſive; as, Cic. *Domus paterna*, for *patri*

Note 9. The genitive is very often elegantly changed into the d as, Cic. *Cui omnis ſpes pendet a fortuna*, for *cujus*. Liv. *Spiritus illi* (*feroces*, for *illius*. Id. *Ira regi mota*, for *regis*. Id. *Effuſis fugam in* for *-orum*. Id. *Caput puero dormienti*, for *pueri -tis*. Id. *Indignitas his* for *horum*.

Note 10. Theſe adjectives, *primus*, *medius*, *ultimus*, *extremus*, *infi mus*, *ſummus*, *ſupremus*, *reliquus*, *cætera*, agreeing with ſubſtantives, a part of them. Ter. *Prima fabula*. Cæſ. *Media nox*. Ter. *Ultim tea*. Suet. *Ima cera*. Virg. *Summum os*. Hor. *Supremus mons*. C *liqua Egyptus*. Hor. *Cætera turba*.

Note 11. Some ſubſtantives have prepoſitions after them; as, L *ſequium & obſervantia in regem*. *Benignitas erga alios*. *Amor in patriam*. *A tecum*. *Inimicitia cum eo*. *Pugna cum eo*.

Of the pronouns mei, tui, ſui, noſtri, veſtri, noſtrûm, veſtrûm, *and th ſeſſives* meus, tuus, ſuus, noſter, veſter.

Note 1. Subſtantives paſſively taken, require *mei*, *tui*, *ſui*, *noſtri*, as, *Amor mei*, by which I am beloved. But if they mean action ſeſſion, they agree with *meus*, &c.; as, *Amor meus*, by which I lo

Note 2. Adjectives, participles, and verbs, that govern genitives *mei*, *tui*, &c.; as, Hor. *Memor noſtri*. Cic. *Tui obſervantem*. Ter *te miſereſcat mei*. But partitives, &c. (ſee rule 15.) take *noſtrûm*, *v* never *noſtri*, *veſtri*; as, Cic. *Uterque noſtrûm*. Liv. *Qui veſtrûm p Major noſtrûm*; *Nobiliſſimus veſtrûm*.

Note 3. The poſſeſſives *meus*, &c. elegantly admit the genit nouns, pronouns, and participles; as, Cic. *Tuum hominis ſimplicis* Liv. *Noſter duorum eventus*; *meâ unius operâ*; *meum ſolius peccatum*; *paucorum laudibus*. Cic. *De tuo ipſius ſtudio*; *noſtrâ ipſorum amicitiâ*; *cujuſque ſuum*. Hor. *Cum mea ſcripta legat timentis*.

Note 4. Sometimes the beſt authors uſe the poſſeſſive paſſively; a *Ut facile ſcires id fieri deſiderio tuo*, regret for you. On the contra primitive (rarely indeed) ſignifies poſſeſſion; as, Cic. *Ex unius pendere* (*vitam*) *omnium*, for *tua unius vita*.

The reciprocal pronouns *ſui* and *ſuus*, reflect back the action

upon its nominative, which must always be in the third person; as, *ter miseretur sui*; *placet sibi*; *diligit se*; *Cato interfecit se*, i. e. *Cato Joannes diligit Petrum et fratrem suum*, i. e. *Joannis*. But we must say, *diligit Petrum, et fratrem ejus*, when we mean *Peter's brother*. *Tra- quemque voluptas.*

1. That *ipse* is often used instead of *sui*; as, Cæs. *Ei legationi A- respondit, Si quid ipsi a Cæsare opus esset, sese ad eum venturum fuisse; ille a se velit, illum ad se venturum oportere.* Sall. *Qui tantummodo ipsi vitam peterent.*

2. *Quisque* is elegantly put with *sui*; as, Liv. *Pro se quisque acriter intendat.*

3. Instead of the possessive, the primitive is elegantly used in the ; as, *Venit mihi in mentem hæc res, hujus rei, de hac re.* Cic. *Mibi so- ire in mentem.*

4. *Suus* sometimes signifies one's property or friends; as, *Mittunt Sabæi. Cæsar cum suis*, i. e. *militibus*: and sometimes suitableness; g. *Sunt et sua dona parenti*, i. e. *congruentia.*

ANNOTATIONES.

12

1. Si posterius substanti- adjunctum habeat adjec- laudis vel vituperii, in vo vel ablativo poni po- ; ut,

12

1. *If the last substantive have an adjective of praise or dispraise joined with it, it may be put in the genitive or abla- tive; as,*

summæ prudentiæ, vel *summâ prudentiâ*, A man of great om. *Puer probæ indolis*, vel *probâ indole*, A boy of a disposition.

1. The ablative is more common with the orators.

2. The genitive, however, is most used in these phrases. Hor. *formica laboris.* Cic. *Non multi cibi hospes, sed multi joci.* But in ike the ablative: Ter. *Bono animo es.* Cic. *Si es vacuo animo.* We metimes both in one sentence: Cic. *Lentulus eximiâ spe, summæ vir-*

3. The last substantive must always be a part or property of the So *Homo perpaucorum hominum* does not belong to this rule.

4. The phrase may be varied five ways. *Vir præstantis ingenii*; *ingenio*; *vir præstans ingenio*, or (with the poets) *ingenii*, and by gure synecdoche the accusative *ingenium*, *secundum* or *quod ad* (with eeks κατα) being understood; as, Liv. *Hannibal ictus* (*quod ad*) *femur. Expleri* (*quod ad*) *mentem nequit.*

13

2. Adjectivum in neutro e absque substantivo re- enitivum; ut,

13

2. *An adjective in the neuter gender without a substantive governs the genitive; as,*

ultum pecuniæ, Much money. *Quid rei?* What is the er?

This is more elegant than *Multa pecunia*; *Quæ res?*

Note 1. That theſe adjectives which thus govern the genitive, a they were ſubſtantives, are generally ſuch as ſignify quantity; as, *multu tantum, quantum, plus, plurimum, minus, minimum*, &c.

Note 2. That *plus* and *quid* always govern the genitive, and upon t account are by many thought real ſubſtantives.

Note 3. Plural adjectives in the neuter govern alſo the genitive, moſtly in the plural; as, Virg. *Anguſta viarum.* Hor. *Acuta belli.*

§ 2. *Adjectivorum.*

Reg. I.

14

* Adjectiva verbalia, vel affectionem animi ſignificantia, genitivum poſtulant; ut,

§ 2. Of Adjectives.

Rule I.

14

Verbal adjectives, or ſ as ſignify an affection of mind, require the genitiv as,

Avidus gloriæ, Deſirous of glory. *Ignarus fraudis*, Ig rant of fraud. *Memor beneficiorum*, Mindful of favours.

To this rule belong,

1. Adjectives of deſire; as, *cupidus, ambitioſus, avarus, ſtudioſus.*

2. Of knowledge; as, *peritus, gnarus, prudens, callidus, providus, do docilis, præſcius, præſagus, certus, memor, eruditus, expertus, conſultus*, &

3. Of ignorance; as, *ignarus, rudis, imperitus, neſcius, inſcius, ince dubius, anxius, ſolicitus, immemor.*

4. Of guilt; as, *conſcius, convictus, manifeſtus, ſuſpectus, reus.*

5. Verbals in *ax* and *ns*; as, *edax, capax, ferax, fugax, tenax, pervi* and, *amans, cupiens, appetens, patiens, fugiens, ſitiens, negligens*, &c.

6. To which may be referred, *æmulus, munificus, parcus, prodigus, fuſus, ſecurus.*

Note 1. Many others have the genitive; as, Hor. *Seri ſtudiorum:* many that belong to the rule vary their conſtruction; as, Cic. *Avid pecuniis. Certior factus de re.* Liv. *Securus de bello.* Cic. *Doctus l Græcis*; but *doctus literas Græcas* is ſaid in another ſenſe.

Reg. II.

15

Partitiva, et partitivè poſita, comparativa, ſuperlativa, interrogativa, et quædam numeralia, genitivo plurali gaudent; ut,

Rule II.

15

Partitives, and words ced partitively, comparat ſuperlatives, interrogatives, ſome numerals, govern the nitive plural; as,

Aliquis philoſophorum, Some one of the philoſophers. *Se fratrum*, The elder of the brothers. *Doctiſſimus Romanor* The moſt learned of the Romans. *Quis noſtrûm?* Which of *Una muſarum*, One of the muſes. *Octavus ſapientum*, eighth of the wiſe men.

Note 1. That it is easy to know when this rule takes place, by resolving the genitive into *inter*, or even *ante*, with the accusative, or *de*, *e*, *ex*, with the ablative; as, *Optimus regum*, i. e. *Optimus inter reges*, or *de*, *e*, *ex regibus*.

Note 2. That when there are two substantives of different genders, the partitive, &c. rather agrees with the first than the last; as, *Indus fluminum maximus*, Cic. *Leo animalium fortissimus*, Plin. Otherwise it is of the same gender with the substantive it governs; as, *Pauca animalium*, *Unaquæque fœminarum*.

Note 3. That partitives, &c. take the genitive singular of collective nouns, and do not necessarily agree with them in gender; as, *Præstantissimus nostræ civitatis*, Cic. *Nympharum sanguinis una*, Virg.

Note 4. Sometimes the partitive and its noun agree in case; as, Liv. *Gallo Ruscinonem aliquot populi conveniunt*, i. e. *populi Gallorum*. *Quæ (fana) quot*, i. e. *quorum aliquot*.

Note 5. The comparative, also *uter*, *alter*, *neuter*, are used when we speak of two; as, *Major*, &c. *fratrum*,—of two: but the superlative, also *quis*, *alius*, *nullus*, are used when we mean more than two; as, *Maximus fratrum*, — of three or more.

Reg. III.

16

Adjectiva significantia commodum vel incommodum, similitudinem vel dissimilitudinem, regunt dativum; ut,

Rule III.

16

Adjectives signifying profit or disprofit, likeness or unlikeness, govern the dative; *as*,

Utilis bello, Profitable for war. *Pernicioſus reipublicæ*, Pernicious to the commonwealth. *Similis patri*, Like his father.

Note 1. That some of these adjectives govern also the genitive; as, *amicus*, *inimicus*, *socius*, *vicinus*, *par*, *æqualis*, *similis*, *dissimilis*, *proprius*, *communis*, &c.

Note 2. That adjectives signifying motion or tendency to a thing, chuse rather the accusative with *ad*, than the dative; such as, *proclivis*, *pronus*, *propensus*, *velox*, *celer*, *tardus*, *piger*, &c.; as,

Est piger ad pœnas princeps, ad præmia velox, Ovid.

Note 3. That adjectives signifying fitness, or the contrary, may have either of them; as, *Aptus*, *ineptus bello*, or *ad bellum*.

Note 4. *Alienus* most frequently has the ablative with *a* or *ab*, but sometimes the genitive and dative; as, Cic. *Alienus a literis*. *Quis alienum putet ejus esse dignitatis*. *Hoc illi causæ alienum est*.

Note 5. *Idem* in the poets has the dative; as, Hor. *Invitum qui servat, idem facit occidenti*. Sall. *Idem senatui sit*. But the orators more frequently use it *qui*, *ac*, or *atque*. Cic. *Iidem erant, qui Academici*. Ter. *Est animus tibi, idem ac fuit*.

Note 6. *Propior* and *proximus* have the dative or accusative; as, *Proximus castra* or *castris*, *urbi* or *urbem*.

17

¶ Verbalia in *bilis* et *dus* regunt dativum; ut,

17

Verbals in bilis *and* dus *vern the dative*; *as*,

Amandus vel *amabilis omnibus*, To be beloved of all me

Of or *by* is the ordinary ſign of this dative.

Note. That participles of the preter-tenſe, and paſſive verbs especially among the poets, have frequently the dative, inſtead of the lative with *a* or *ab*; as, *Nullus eorum mihi viſus eſt. Non audior ulli. U dctur mihi.* Hor. *Cœna miniſtratur tribus pueris.*

Reg. IV.

18

* Adjectiva dimenſionem ſignificantia regunt accuſativum menſuræ; ut,

Rule IV.

18

Adjectives ſignifying dim ſion govern the accuſative meaſure; *as*,

Columna ſexaginta pedes alta, A pillar ſixty feet high.

The adjectives of dimenſion are, *altus*, high, *or* deep; *craſſus*, or *de* thick; *latus*, broad; *longus*, long; *profundus*, deep. The names of ſure are, *digitus*, an inch; *palmus*, an handbreadth; *pes*, a foot; *cub* a cubit; *ulna*, an ell; *paſſus*, a pace, &c.

Note 1. That verbs ſignifying dimenſion likewiſe have the accuſativ meaſure; as, Virg *Patet tres ulnas.*

Note 2. That ſometimes the word of meaſure is put in the ablat as, *Foſſa ſex cubitis alta, duodecim lata*, Liv. *Venter ejus exſtat ſeſqui* Perf. And ſometimes, but rarely, in the genitive; *Nec longiores duod pedum*, Plin.

Reg. V.

19

* Comparativus regit ablativum qui reſolvitur per *quam*; ut,

Rule V.

19

The comparative degree verns the ablative which i ſolved by quam; *as*,

Dulcior melle, Sweeter than honey. *Præſtantior auro*, ter than gold.

Note 1. Let the following examples be obſerved and imitated: *Multo melior*; *Nihilo pejor*; *Major ſolito*; *Quo diligentior es, eo doctior ev Quanto ſuperbior, tanto vilior*; *Nihil Virgilio doctius.*

Note 2. The poſitive with *magis* is often put for the comparative, has the ablative by N° 67. Nay, *plus* and *magis* are put even with comparative by the *pleonaſmus.*

Note 3. After *plus*, *amplius*, *minus*, *quàm* is elegantly ſuppreſſed. *Capta plus* (*quàm*) *quinque millia hominum.*

Note 4. *Pro* is elegantly put after the comparative. Liv. *Prælium eius quam pro numero pugnantium fuit.*

Note 5. *Quàm* is elegantly put between two comparatives. Liv. *T phus clarior quàm gratior.*

** The ſuperlative with *ut* and *ita*, and in like manner with *tan*

…, may be elegantly put for the comparative with *quanto* and *tanto*, or …and *eo*. Cic. *Ut quisque optimus (quo quisque melior) est, ita difficillime (eo …illius) alios esse improbos suspicatur.* Sall. *Ita quàm quisque pessimè (quo …ime pejus) facit, tam maximè (eo magis) tutus est.*

Reg. VI.

20

…*Dignus, indignus, contentus,* …*æditus, captus,* et *fretus*; …*m natus, satus, ortus, edi-*…*us*, et similia, ablativum pe-…*unt*; ut,

Rule VI.

20

These adjectives, dignus, indignus, contentus, præditus, captus, *and* fretus; *also* natus, satus, ortus, editus, *and the like, require the ablative; as,*

Dignus honore, Worthy of honour. *Præditus virtute,* En…ed with virtue. *Contentus parvo,* Content with little. *Cap…us oculis,* Blind. *Fretus viribus,* Trusting to his strength. …*tus regibus,* Descended of kings.

Note 1. To the ablative, after *natus, satus,* &c. *de, e, ex,* are under…od; and even often expressed; as, Cic. *Circe e Perseide nata.* Sall. …*us ex concubina.*

Note 2. *Dignus, indignus, contentus,* have sometimes a genitive after …em; as, Cic. *Suscipe curam dignissimam tuæ virtutis.* Virg. *Magnorum …gnus avorum.*

Reg. VII.

21

Adjectivum copiæ aut in…piæ regit genitivum vel ab…ivum; ut,

Rule VII.

21

An adjective of plenty or want governs the genitive or ablative; as,

Plenus iræ vel *irâ,* Full of anger. *Inops rationis,* Void of …son.

Note 1. Some of them govern only the genitive, viz. *benignus, exsors, …is, impotens, irritus, liberalis, munificus, prælargus.*

Note 2. These have only the ablative. *Beatus, differtus, frugifer, mu…is, tentus, distentus, tumidus, turgidus.*

Note 3. These have the genitive more frequently. *Compos, consors, e…gus, exhæres, expers, fertilis, indigus, partus, pauper, prodigus, sterilis.*

Note 4. These have the ablative most commonly. *Abundans, cassus, …arris, fœtus, frequens, gravis, gravidus, jejunus, liber, locuples, nudus, o…ratus, onustus, orbus, pollens, solutus, truncus, viduus.*

Note 5. These have the genitive and ablative indifferently. *Copiosus, …ces, fœcundus, ferax, immunis, inanis, inops, largus, modicus, immodicus, …ius, opulentus, plenus, potens, refertus, satur, vacuus, uber.*

Note 6. Some of these take a preposition; as, Liv. *Extorris ab solo pa…* Cic. *Orba ab optimatibus concio. Vacuus a re* (this is most common). …*cuus ad rem et in re.*

* That some comprehend *opus* and *usus,* when they signify necessity,

under this rule; as, *Quid opus eſt verbis?* What need is there of wo
Ov. *Nunc viribus uſus.* Now there is need of ſtrength, *Virg.* But
to be remarked, that theſe are ſubſtantive nouns, the very ſame wit
pus, operis, a work; and *uſus, uſûs*, uſe; and have the ablative
them becauſe of the prepoſition *in*, which is underſtood. *Opus* is o
joined to ſubſtantives as an adjective; as, Cic. *Dux nobis opus eſt*; an
conſtrued as an indeclinable adjective; as, *nummi mihi ſunt opus.* Liv.
ſunt mihi opus. Id. *Quæ opus curando vulneri eſſent.* It is elegantly jo
with the participle perfect; as, *conſulto, maturato, invento, facto, &*
pus eſt. And even when a ſubſtantive is adjoined: Cic. *Opus fuit H*
convento.

II. *Regimen verborum.*	II. The government of ve
§ 1. *Perſonalium.*	§ 1. Of perſonal Verbs
Reg. I.	Rule I.
22	22
* *Sum*, quoties poſſeſſionem, proprietatem, aut officium ſignificat, regit genitivum; ut,	Sum, *when it ſignifies ſeſſion, property, or duty, verns the genitive; as,*

Eſt regis punire rebelles, It belongs to the king to pu
rebels. *Inſipientis eſt dicere, Non putâram*, It is the prop
of a fool to ſay, I had not thought. *Militum eſt ſuo*
parēre, It is the duty of ſoldiers to obey their general.

Note, To this rule belong, *Quorum tutelæ ea loca eſſent*, Liv. and
theſe remarkable phraſes: Cic. *Quæ res evertendæ reip. ſunt.* Liv.
fruſtrationem tollendæ legis eſſe. Sall. *Impunitatem perdundæ reip.* (*fore*)
debant. Sc. cauſâ, gratiâ, ergô, conſtitutum, comparatum.

23	23
¶ Excipiuntur hi nominativi, *meum, tuum, ſuum, noſtrum, veſtrum*; ut,	¶ *Theſe nominatives,* um, tuum, ſuum, noſtr veſtrum, *are excepted*; *as,*

Tuum eſt id procurare, It is your duty to manage that.

Note 1. To theſe laſt may be added poſſeſſive nouns, ſuch as, *re*
humanum, belluinum, and the like; as, *Humanum eſt errare.*

Note 2. That to both of theſe laſt numbers are underſtood *officium,*
negotium, or ſome other word to be gathered from the ſentence; as,
Pompeii totum eſſe ſcis. Cic. i. e. *amicum, ſautorem*, or the like.

Reg. II.	Rule II.
24	24
* *Miſereor, miſereſco*, et *ſatago*, regunt genitivum; ut,	Miſereor, miſereſco, *an* tago, *govern the genitive;*

Miſerere civium tuorum, Take pity on your countryn
Satagit rerum ſuarum, He hath his hands full at home.

Note 1. Some other verbs ſignifying affection of the mind (in imitation of the Greeks) have ſometimes the genitive; as, *Pendeo animi, Diſcrucior animi.* Ter. *Neque hujus ſis veritus primariæ.* But theſe are not to be imitated: for *Diſcrucior animo, Pendeo animo*, are more uſed; alſo *Pendemus animi*, never *animorum.*

Note 2. Other verbs have alſo the genitive; as, Hor. *Abſtineto irarum, & querelarum, Regnavit populorum.* Liv. *Quarum rerum condixit pater patratus populi Rom. patri patrato Latinorum.* But we ſay much more frequently, *Abſtineto maledictis*, et *a maledictis, Condico operam tibi, -cœnam*, et *cœnam*, &c.

* This genitive is governed by *in negotio*, or *nomine*, underſtood.

Reg. III.	Rule III.
25	25
Eſt pro *habeo* regit dativum perſonæ; ut,	Eſt *taken for* habeo [to have] *governs the dative of a perſon; as,*

Eſt mihi liber, I have a book. *Sunt mihi libri*, I have books.

Note. This is more elegant than *Habeo librum*, or *Habeo libros.*

Note. *Deſum* is uſed elegantly for *careo*; as, *Deſunt mihi libri*, for *Careo libris.*

Reg. IV.	Rule IV.
26	26
Sum pro *affero* regit duos dativos, unum perſonæ, alterum rei; ut,	Sum *taken for* affero [to bring] *governs two datives, the one of a perſon, and the other of a thing; as,*

Eſt mihi voluptati, it is [*brings*] a pleaſure to me.

Note 1. That other verbs, ſuch as, *forem, do, duco, verto, tribuo, habeo, dico*, &c. may have two datives; as, *Hoc tibi laudi datur. Ne mihi vitio vertas.*

Note 2. The dative of the perſon is often omitted; as, Hor. *Exemplo formica*, ſc. *nobis.* And ſometimes the nominative and accuſative are uſed for it. Virg. *Idem amor eſt exitium pecori*, for *exitio.* Liv. *Rem fore ludibrio, ludibrium delectui. Eſt argumento*, et *argumentum. Do nuptum*, et *nuptias. Do donum* et *dono. Habeo rem religioni*; but *Religio eſt mihi dicere* is more frequent.

To this may be referred ſuch expreſſions as theſe. *Eſt mihi nomen Joanni*, My name is John; which is more elegant than *Eſt mihi nomen Joannes* or *Joannis.*

* I beg leave here to obſerve, that I cannot think, that *Eſt mihi nomen Joanni* belongs to this rule; but that *Eſt mihi nomen* is according to rule 25.; and that *Joanni* agrees with *mihi* by appoſition, according to rule 10.

Reg. V.

27

Verbum ſignificans commodum vel incommodum regit dativum; ut,

Rule V.

27

A verb ſignifying advant or diſadvantage governs the tive; as,

Fortuna favet fortibus, Fortune favours the brave. *Ne noceas,* Do hurt to no man.

This is a very general rule, and (when we ſignify a thing to be quired to any perſon or thing) almoſt common to all verbs: but more particular manner, are comprehended under it theſe verbs, w are moſtly neuter.

Verbs ſignifying,

1. To profit or hurt; as, *commodo, proficio, placeo, conſulo;* *officio.* But *lædo* and *offendo* govern the accuſative.

2. To favour, to help, and their contraries; as, *faveo, c arrideo, aſſentior, adſtipulor, gratulor, ignoſco, indulgeo, parco, a plaudo, blandior, lenocinor, palpor, ſtudeo, ſupplico,* &c.; alſo *adminiculor, ſubvenio, ſuccurro, patrocinor, meacor*; alſo *derogo, det invideo,* &c. But *juvo* has the accuſative.

3. To command, obey, or reſiſt; as, *impero, præcipio, mo pareo, ſervio, obedio, obſequor, obtempero, moremgero, morigeror, f lor; pugno, repugno, certo, obſto, reluctor, reniter, reſiſto, adverſor, fragor,* &c. But *jubeo* governs the accuſative: and many of the govern the dative only with the poets; for in proſe-authors we *Certo tecum; Diſto a te; Concurro cum hoſte; Arceo a pecore,* &c.

4. To threaten, or to be angry with; as, *minor, interminor, minor, indignor, iraſcor, ſuccenſeo.*

5. To truſt; as, *fido, confido, diffido, credo.*

6. Verbs compounded with *ſatis, bene,* and *male*; as, *ſatisfacio, facio, benedico, malefacio, maledico.*

7. The compounds of the verb ſum; as, *adſum, proſum, obſum.*

8. Verbs compounded with theſe ten prepoſitions, *ad, ante, con inter, ob, poſt, præ, ſub,* and *ſuper*; as, 1. *adſto, accumbo, acquieſco, a adhæreo, admoveo*; 2. *antecello, anteeo, anteverto*; 3. *conſono, comm condoleo, commorior*; 4. *illudo, immorior, inhæreo, inſideo, inhio, innitor vigilo, incumbo*; 5. *interpono, intervenio, interſero*; 6. *obrepo, obtrecto cumbo*; 7. *poſtpono, poſthabeo*; 8. *præeo, præſtat* for *excellit, præluceo; ſuccedo, ſubmitto, ſubjicio*; 10. *ſuperſto, ſupervenio.* Many of theſe, h ever, govern alſo the accuſative. *See the liſt of neuter verbs below.*

Note 1. That *to,* the ſign of the dative, is frequently underſtood.

Note 2. That *to* is not always a ſign of the dative: for, 1. Verb local motion, as, *eo, venio, proficiſcor*; (the poets, however, often the dative: Virg. *It clamor cœlo*; *Inferret Deos Latio,* — for *ad cœlum Latium*); and, 2. Theſe verbs, *provoco, voco, invito, hortor, ſpecto, tineo, attineo,* and ſuch like, have the accuſative with the prepoſition

I. *Neuter verbs, with the ſame ſignification, variouſly conſtr*

Accedo muris, *Liv.* ad urbem, *Sall.* in oppidum, *Cic.* domos infernas, *Virg.* tibi, i. e. aſſentior, *Quinctil.*

Accidit auribus, *Plin.* ad aures, genibus, *Id.* ad genua, *Suet.* iſthuc verbum, *Ter.*

erbo horreis, *Hor.* ſcortum, *Plaut.* ibi in convivio, *Cic.* apud te, *Id.* *Thus,*
umbo epulis, *Virg.* in epulo, *Cic.*
uieſco aliquâ re, *Cic. but often* in aliqua re.
quito portæ, *Plin.* Syracuſas, *Liv.*
um pugnæ, *i. e.* præſens ſum, *Cic.* in pugna, *Sall.* ad exercitum, *Plaut.* amicis, *i. e.* auxilior, *Cic.*
ereo lateri, *Liv.* ad turrim, *Cæſ.* ne, *Cic.* fronte *for* in fronte, *Virg. Thus,*
ereſco juſtitiæ, *Cic.* ad ſaxum, in hanc materiam, *Id.*
ungio equæ, *Ov.* equam, *Plaut.*
l orationem, *Cic.*
ceo mari, *Liv.* mare, *Nep.*
o navibus, *Liv.* naves, *Cæſ.*
uto inſulæ, *Plin.* ad manum, *Id.*
epo virorum animis, *Tac.* ad tu-
n amicitiam, *Cic.*
o menſis domini, *Mart.* ad A-
illis tumulum, *Cic.* in conſpec-
, *Id.*
repo tibi, *Tac.* aures tuas, *Plin.*
ito vallo, *Sil.* moras portarum, *Stat.*
enio urbem, *Virg.* ad urbem, *Virg. Thus,*
ento ad Italiam, *Cic.*
gilo tibi, *Tib.* ad cuſtodiam ig-
is, *Cic.*
ior tibi, *Curt.* te, *Cic.*
lo rei, *vel* homini, *Plin. Virg.*
l equites, *Liv.* -at roſtra Cato, *Cic.*
o alicui, *Ov.* ad aliquid, *Cic.*
bor oris, *Virg.* ad exta, *Liv.* au-
s tuas, *Virg.*
ro tibi, *Aur. Vict.* te *oftener*, *Cic. Cel. Plin.*
lo tibi, *Plin.* ad mulierem, *Ter.*
ctor haſtæ, *Virg.* ad id, *Cic.* id, *Sil.* conor perficere, *Plin.*
cedo rei, *Cic.* te, *Id.*
rello tibi, *Cic. very rarely* te.
eo tibi, *Cic.* tibi ætate, *Cic.*
nnes gloria, *Sall.* cæteros vir-
te, *Cic.*
evenio rei, *Plaut.* te, *Sall.* tem-
is, *Claud.*
everto tibi, *i. e.* ante te venio, *Ter. So* -damnationem veneno, *i. e.* prævenio, *Tac.*

Appareo tibi, *i. e.* officii aut obſequii causâ præſto ſum; *ut*, Lictores apparent conſulibus, *Liv.* Apparent ad ſolium Jovis, *Virg.*

Appropinquo Britanniæ, *Cæſ.* portam, *Hirt.* ad portam, *Id.* -at tibi pœna, *Cic.*

Arrideo tibi, *i. e.* placeo, *Hor.* — ridentibus, *Id.*

Aſpiro cœptis, *Ov.* ad te, *i. e.* pervenio, *Cic.* ad laudem, *i. e.* contendo, *Id* in curiam, *Id.*

Aſſiſto tibi, *Plin.* ad fores, *Cic.* ſuper te, *Virg.* contra te, *Cic.*

Aſſueſco, aſſuefacio, aſſuefio re aliquâ; Genus pugnæ quo aſſueverant, *Liv.* Puro ſermone aſſuefacta domus, *Cic.* Aſſueſco rei illi, *Liv.* Operi aſſuefecit, *Id.* Aſſueſco ad homines, *Cæſ.* in hoc aſſueſcat, *Quinct.*

Attendo Cæſari, *Plin.* juri, *Suet.* te, *Cic.* res hoſtium, *Sall.* animum, *Ter.* animum ad rem, *Cic.*

Colludo tibi, *Hor.* tecum, *Cic.*

Confido, *Vid.* Fido.

Congruo tibi, *Ter.* cum re, *Cic.* -unt inter ſe, *Id.*

Conſtat ſibi, *Cic.* ſecum, *Id.* inter omnes, *Nep.* Res mihi cum aliis conſtat, *Auct. ad Her.*

Conſueſco tibi, *Ter.* tecum, *Plaut.* libero victu, *Colum.* juvencum aratro, *pro* conſuefacio, *Id.*

Conſulo tibi, *Ter.* famæ tuæ, *Cic.* de ſalute mea, *Id.* duriùs in te, *Tac.* in longitudinem, *Ter.* in commune, in medium, in publicum, *Id.* boni, *Ov.* *See* No. 36. n. 2.

Convenit mihi, *Cic.* cum illa re, *Id.* in eum hæc ſuſpicio, *Id.* Coburnus convenit ad pedem, *Id.* Conveniunt mores, *Ter.* Majeſtas et amor non conveniunt, *Ov.* Id convenit mihi cum adverſariis, *Auct. ad Her.* Convenimus inter nos, *Plaut.* Inter omnes convenit, *Cic.* Sævis inter ſe convenit urſis, *Juv.*

Deficiunt mihi vires, *Cæſ.* me vires, *Cic.*

Derogo tibi, *Cic.* legi, *Auct. ad Her.* de lege, *Cic.* ex æquitate, *Id.* fidem tibi, *Id.* de fide tua, *Id.*

Deſpero ſaluti tuæ, *Cic.* de republica, *Id.* pacem, *Id.* rempublicam, *Id.*

Deſunt verba dolori, *Ov.* In Antonio defuit hic ornatus, *Cic.* Paucæ ei centuriæ ad conſulatum defuerunt, *Id.*

Dominor cunctis oris, *Virg.* in cæteta animalia, *Ov.* in civitate, *Cic.*

Excello tibi dignitate, *Cic.* in illa re, *Id.* ſuper omnes alios, *Liv.* præter cæteros, *Cic.* inter illos, *Id.*

Facit ad id, *for* ptodeſt *or* convenit, *Ov. and others.*

Fido, confido illi rei, *Virg. Cic.* re illâ, *Id.* in re illa, *Hirt.*

Gratulor tibi hanc rem, *Cic.* hâc re, de hac re, in hac re, *Id.*

Hæret lateri, *Virg.* curru, *Id.* tibi in viſceribus, *Cic.*

Ignoſco tibi, *Ter.* vitio, *Ov.* peccatum ſuum illi, *Plaut.*

Illudo tibi, *Virg.* te, *Ter.* id, *Virg.* in illum, *Ter.* in illo, *Id.*

Illabi rei illi, *Virg.* in rem illam, *Cic.*

Illuxit dies tibi, *Liv.* illum, *Plaut.*

Immineo rei illi, *Ov.* in fortunas ejus, *Cic.*

Immori ſtudiis, *Hor.* in vino, *Plin.*

Impendeo tibi, *Cic.* illum, *Ter.* in illum, *Ter.*

Inceſſit cura, cupido, timor tibi, *Liv.* illum. *Id.* in illum, *Ter.*

Incubat ovis, *Col.* ova, *Plin.* pecuniæ, theſauris. *Cic. Liv.*

Incumbo toro, *Virg.* gladium, *Plaut.* in gladium, *Cic.* ad laudem, *Id.* ad ſtudia, *Id.* in ſtudium, curam, cogitationem, *Id.*

Indulgeo illi, *Ter.* me, *Id.* id tibi, *Suet.*

Inhæreo et inhæreſco rei illi, *Ov.* in re illa, *Cic.*

Inhio auro, *Flor.* bona tua, *Virg.*

Inno aquæ, *Liv.* fluvium, *Virg.*

Innaſcor rei illi, *Ter.* in re illa, *Cic.*

Innato flumini, *Plin.* undam, *Virg.* in concham, *Cic.*

Innitor re illa, *Liv.* in re illa, in illum, *Plin.*

Inſidet rei *vel* perſonæ, *Virg.* lem, *Plin.* locum, *Liv.* in me ria, in animo, in medullis, *firmiter inhæret, Cic.*

Inſidunt apes floribus, *Virg.* p inſidunt condensâ arbore, *Pli*

Inſilio rei illi, *Luc.* in equum, tauros, *Suet.* ſupra lignum, *P*

Inſiſto curæ rerum, *Plin.* veſtigi jus, *Cic.* viam, *Ter.* viâ, *Id.* illa, *Cic.* in dolos, *Plaut.* tium, *Id.*

Inſto operi, *Virg.* victis, *Liv.* tam viam, *Plaut.* currum *i. e.* inſtanter fabrico, *Virg.* *i. e.* inſtanter urgeo, *Ter.*

Inſuefco rei illi, *Tac.* re illâ,

Inſulto rei, *vel* perſonæ, *Suet.* fores, *Ter.* patientiam tuam, in miſeriam illius, *Auct. ad* bonos, *Sall.*

Inſum illi rei, *Sen.* in re illa,

Inſurgo regnis illius, *Ov.* in mi *Stat.*

Inſuſurro tibi, *Cic.* in aurem *Id.*

Intercedit mihi tecum amicitia inter nos, *Id.*

Interdico tibi provinciâ, *Suet.* et igni, *Cic.* fœminis uſum p ræ, *Liv.*

Intereſſe rei illi, *Cic.* in re illa

Interjacet ſulcis, *Col.* duas *Plin.* Hæc inter eam et Rh interjacet, *Id.*

Invaſit timor improbis, *Cic.* varitiæ in animos invaſerat urbem, *Virg.* in fortunas *Cic.* in arcem cauſæ, *Id.*

Invideo honori illius, *Cic.* ho tibi, *Hor.* illum, *Ov.* in r *Cic.*

Latet res mihi, *Luc.* — me,

Medeor tibi, *Cic.* cupiditates contra ſerpentum ictus, *Pli*

Medicor tibi, *Virg.* ictum cu *Id.*

Moderor animo, *Cic.* gentibu navim, *Cic.* omnia, *Id.*

Noceo tibi, *Cic. rariſſimè* illum,

Nubo tibi, *Cic.* in clariſſiman

…ſam, *Id.* Nupta cum illo, *Id.* U…xu nupta apud duos, *Gell.*
…ambulo muris, *Liv.* ante portas, …d Ætnam, *Ov.*
…equito caſtris, *Liv.* agmen, *Curt.*
…repo tibi, *Cic.* in animos dormi…entium, *Id.* ad honores, *Id.* Ta…cium te obrepet fames, *Plaut.*
…ecto tibi, *Cic.* laudibus tuis, …iv. -árunt inter ſe, *Nep.*
…mbrat ſibi vinea, *Plin.* -nt ſo…lem nubes, *Id.*
…mbo morti, *Virg.* mortem, *Cic.* …orte, *Liv.*
…eo tibi, *Cic.* labori, *Ter.* pecu…niam, *Plaut.* Ut parcerent ſibi vi…tam, *Gell.* Talenta natis parce …uis, *Virg.* Ut a cædibus parcere…nt, *Liv.* Parcite oves nimium …procedere, *Virg.*
…pigit mihi id, *Ov.* cum illo, *Suet.*
…epigerunt inter ſe, *Auct. ad Her.*
…o, Paciſcor tibi, *Cic.* tecum, *Id.*
…tam a te, *Sall.* vitam pro laude, …*Virg.*
…edunt veſtræ fortunæ meis, *Plaut.*
…æcedo te virtute, *Cæſ.* omnes in …ea re, *Plin.* Præcedo agmen, *Virg.*
…curro tibi, *Cic.* illum, *Id.* ante …mnes, *Cæſ.*
…eo tibi, *Stat. i. e.* præcedo te,
…æeo tibi verba, ſacramentum, …iv. *i. e.* dicto. Præeo verbis, …*Plaut.* voce tibi, *Cic.*
…ſideo urbi imperio, *Cic.*
…eſto tibi, *Cic.* omnibus humani…tate, *Id.* omnes eloquentiâ, *Nep.*
Præſtolor tibi, *Cic.* illum, *Ter.*
Præverto id illi rei, *Liv* uxorem præ republica, *Plaut.* Curſu pedum præverto ventos, *Virg. Et paſſ.* Ut bellum præverti ſinerent, *Liv. Et dep.* Volucremque fugâ prævertitur Hebrum, *Virg.*
Procumbo terræ, *Ov.* genibus tuis, *Id.* ad genua, *Liv.* ante pedes, *Ov.*
Quadro tibi, *Cic.* in te, *Id.* ad multa, *Id.* acervum, *i. e.* in quadrum redigo, *Hor.*
Reſpondeo tibi, *Cic,* his, *Cæſ.* ad hæc, ad poſtulata, *Id.* ad nomen, *Liv.* votis tuis, *i. e.* ſatisfacio, *Virg.* ad ſpem, *Liv.*
Studeo illi rei, *i. e.* operam do, *Cic.* literas, *Id.* aliquid, *i. e.* cupio, *Cic.* tibi, *i. e.* faveo, *Cic.*
Subeſſe rei illi, *Cic.* in re illa, *Id.*
Subire muro, *Virg.* feretro, *Id.* Subeunt mihi cunctarum faſtidia, *Ov.* tecta, *Virg.* limina, *Id.* ad mœnia, *Liv.* ad portas, *Id.* in locum illius, *Ov.* in cœlum, *Plin.* ſub acumen ſtyli, *Cic.* *But,* Subire onus, labores, pœnam, periculum, *&c. likewiſe,* Subiit animum, mentem, *are almoſt always ſaid.*
Succedo penatibus, *Virg.* muro, *Liv.* murum, *Sall.* ad urbem, *Liv.* ſub primam aciem, *Cæſ.* in pugnam, *Liv.* —tibi et in locum tuum, *Cic.*
Supervenio tibi, *Liv.* Unda ſupervenit undam, *Hor.*

II. *Verbs under a different ſignification variouſly conſtrued.*

…ndo tibi, *I agree with you*; like…wiſe, *to be added to, or increaſed.*
…ndo ad te, *I come to you.*
…mulor tibi, *I envy you.*
…mulor te, *I imitate you.*
…nadverto id, *I obſerve that.*
…nadverto in te, *I puniſh you.*
…ſculto tibi, *I obey you.*
…ſculto te, *I hear you.*
…eo tibi, *I take care of you.*
…eo te, *I ſhun you* as an enemy.
…eo de re, *I give ſecurity for it.*
…o tibi, *I give place to you.*
…o de meo jure, *I give up my right.*
Conſulo tibi, *et* in te, *I conſult your good.*
Conſulo te, *I aſk counſel of you.*
Conſulo boni, *I take it in good part.*
Convenit hoc mihi, *This is ſuitable to me.*
Convenit mihi cum illo, *I agree with him.*
Conveniam illum, *I will ſpeak to him.*
Cupio tibi, *I favour you.*
Cupio id, *I deſire it.*
Id Deficit mihi, *I want it.*
Deficit me, *Leaves me.*
Defecit a Cæſare, *He revolted from* —

Detrahit mihi, *He leſſens my reputation.*
Detrahit me, *He draws me down.*
Do tibi literas, *I give you a letter* to carry.
Do ad te literas, *I write to you.*
Fœnero *vel* fœneror tibi, *I lend you money upon intereſt.*
Fœneror abs te, *I get money from you upon intereſt.*
Horreo tibi, *I am ſolicitous for your welfare.*
Horreo te, *I ſhudder for fear you do me harm.*
Impono tibi, *I deceive you.*
Impono id tibi, *I lay it upou you* as a burden.
Maneo, *I ſtay*; — te, *I wait for you.*
Metuo tibi, *I am ſolicitous for your welfare.*
Metuo te, *vel* a te, *I am afraid you do me hurt.*
Peto id tibi, *I deſire it may be given you.*
Peto abs te, *I aſk it of you.*
Peto pœnas de te, *I inflict puniſhment upon you.*
Peto te gladio, *I make a thruſt at you.*
Peto locum, *I go to a place.*
Præeo tibi, *I go before you.*
Præeo verba, *I ſay words to be repeated immediately by another.*
Præſto tibi ſilentium, *I give* or *grant you ſilence.*
Præſto tibi *or* te virtute, *I excel you in virtue.*
Præſto me virum, *I ſhow myſelf a man.*
Præſto culpam, *I take the fault upon myſelf*; — damnum, *I make up the loſs.*

Præſto eum facturum, *I am ſurety f him that he will do it.*
Proſpicio *vel* provideo tuæ ſaluti, *take care of your ſafety.*
Proſpicio *vel* provideo periculum *I foreſee the danger.*
Recipio tibi, *et* recipio in me, *I pr miſe you.*
Recipio me in locum, *I go to t place.*
Refero tibi, *I relate to you.*
Refero ad ſenatum, *I propoſe to t ſenate* for their deliberation.
Refero te, *I am like to you.*
Renuncio muneri, hoſpitio, *I rej the preſent, friendſhip.*
Renuncio te conſulem, *I declare proclaim you conſul.*
Solvo tibi pecuniam, *I pay you m ney.*
Solvo te, *I looſe you* from bonds.
Sufficit mihi, *It is enough to me.*
Sufficit mihi arma, *He furniſhes with arms.*
Sufficit me, *He ſubſtitutes me in place.*
Tempero linguæ, manibus, *I mo rate my tongue, my hands.*
Tempero cædibus, *et* a cædibus, *abſtain from ſlaughter.*
Tempero orbem, vires, ratem, *manage or keep in order the wor my ſtrength, the ſhip.*
Timeo tibi *et* te, *as* Metuo.
Vaco illi rei, *I apply to that affair.*
Vaco in *vel* ad illam rem, *Ov.*
Vaco ab officio, *I am at leiſure, free from buſineſs.*
Vaco culpâ, *I am free from blame*
Vacat mihi, *I am at leiſure.*

Reg. VI.

28

Verbum activè ſignificans regit accuſativum; ut,

Ama Deum, Love God.

Rule VI.

28

A verb ſignifying actively g verns the accuſative; *as*,

Reverere parentes, Reveren your parents.

Note 1. Sometimes the verb is ſuppreſſed. Cic. *Quid multa? ſc. dic* Ter. *Egone illam? Quæ illum*; *Quæ me, ſc. patiar, recepit, excluſit.*

Note 2. Sometimes alſo the accuſative itſelf is omitted. *Obiit, ſc. n tem.* Ter. *Solus Sannio ſervat domi, ſc. res.*

Note 3. Neuter and intranſitive verbs have ſometimes an accuſative after them. (1.) Of their own or the like ſignification; as, *Vivere vitam*; *Gaudere gaudium*; *Sitire ſanguinem*; *Olere hircum.* (2.) When taken in a metaphorical ſenſe; as, *Ardebat Alexin*, i. e. *Vehementer amabat.* (3.) When they have *hoc, id, quid, aliquid, quicquid, nihil, idem, illud, tantum, quantum, multa, pauca, alia, cætera, omnia*; *circa* or *propter* is underſtood. Ter. *Num id lacrumat virgo.* Plaut. *Scio, quid erres.* Hor. *Quicquid delirant reges, plectuntur Achivi.*

* Obſerve when neuter verbs have an accuſative after them, there is an ellipſis: ſo *Imperat frumentum*, i. e. *dari, præberi*, or ſuch like: and though we find, Hor. *Bellum militabitur*; Ov. *Jam tertia vivitur ætas*; Id. *Noctes vigilantur amaræ*; Cæſ. *Frumentum imperatur*; they ſeem to be ſaid by catachreſis.

29

* *Recordor, memini, reminiſcor*, et *obliviſcor*, regunt accuſativum vel genitivum;

29

Recordor, memini, reminiſcor, *and* obliviſcor, *govern the accuſative or genitive*; *as*,

Recordor lectionis vel *lectionem*, I remember my leſſon. *Obliviſcor injuriæ* vel *injuriam*, I forget an injury.

Note. *Recordor*, and *memini* to have in remembrance, have likewiſe the ablative with *de*. Cic. *Velim ſcire, ecquid de te recordere.* Id. *De Planco memini.*

Verba activa alium unà cum accuſativo caſum regentia.

Active verbs governing another caſe together with the accuſative.

30

* 1. Verba accuſandi, damnandi, et abſolvendi, cum accuſativo perſonæ, regunt etiam genitivum criminis; ut,

30

1. *Verbs of accuſing, condemning, and acquitting, with the accuſative of the perſon, govern alſo the genitive of the crime; as*,

Arguit me furti, He accuſes me of theft. *Meipſum inertiæ damno*, I condemn myſelf of lazineſs. *Illum homicidii absolvunt*, They acquit him of manſlaughter.

* Verbs of accuſing are, *accuſo, ago, appello, arceſſo, arguo, alligo, aſtringo, reo, incuſo, inſimulo, poſtulo*, &c.

Verbs of condemning are, *damno, condemno, convinco*, &c.

Verbs of abſolving are, *ſolvo, abſolvo, libero, purgo*, &c.

Note 1. That the genitive may be changed into the ablative, either with or without a prepoſition; as, *Purgo te hâc culpâ*, or *de hac culpa. Damnavit de vi condemnavit.* Cic.

Note 2. That the genitive, properly ſpeaking, is governed by ſome abſtract underſtood, ſuch as, *crimine, pœnâ, actione, causâ*; as, *Accuſare furti*, i. e. *Crimine furti. Condemnare capitis*, i. e. *Pœnâ capitis.* But we ſay, *Damno, or, Punio capite*, never *capitis*.

Note 3. That *crimine, pœnâ, actione, capite, morte,* ſcarcely admit of a preposition.

Note 4. Many of theſe verbs are otherwiſe conſtrued. Thus, *Cu tantam pertinaciam,* not *te pertinacia*; and *Ago tecum furti,* not *te furti.*

31

* 2. Verba comparandi, dandi, narrandi, et auferendi, regunt dativum cum accuſativo; ut,

31

2. *Verbs of comparing, g ving, declaring, and taking way, govern the dative cu the accuſative; as,*

Comparo Virgilium Homero, I compare Virgil to Hom *Suum cuique tribuito,* Give every man his own. *Narras f bulam ſurdo,* You tell a ſtory to a deaf man. *Eripuit morti,* He reſcued me from death.

1. To verbs of comparing belong alſo verbs of preferring or poſt ning.

2. To verbs of giving belong verbs of receiving, promiſing, pay ſending, bringing.

3. To verbs of declaring belong verbs of explaining, ſhewing, de ing, &c.

4. Verbs of taking away are, *aufero, adimo, eripio, eximo, demo, furr detrabo, tollo, excutio, extorqueo, arceo, defendo,* &c.

Note 1. That many of theſe verbs govern the dative, by No. 27.

Note 2. That innumerable other verbs may have the dative with accuſative, when, together with the thing done, is alſo ſignified the ſon or thing to or for whom it is done; as, *Doce mihi filium. Cura hanc rem.*

Note 3. That *comparo, confero, compono,* and *contendo* to compare, moſt frequently the ablative with *cum.* Cic. *Conferte hanc pacem cum bello.* Sall. *Ubi metelli dicta cum factis compoſuit.*

Note 4. Many of theſe verbs are variouſly conſtrued; as, *Circunde pido mœnia,* and *oppidum mœnibus. Dono tibi rem,* and *te re. Imperti ſalutem,* and *te ſalute. Interdico id tibi; tibi ea re,* and *de ea re. I ari, in æs, in ære. Suſpendo id arbori, in arbore, de arbore. Comparo, res inter ſe.*

32

* 3. Verba rogandi et docendi duos admittunt accuſativos, priorem perſonæ, poſteriorem rei; ut,

32

3. *Verbs of aſking and te ing admit of two accuſat the firſt of a perſon, and ſecond of a thing; as,*

Poſce Deum veniam, Beg pardon of God. *Docuit me g maticam,* He taught me grammar.

Note 1. That among the verbs that govern two accuſatives, are reckoned theſe following:

1. *Celo*; as, *Cela hanc rem uxorem.* Plaut. But we can ſay alſo, *de hoc re,* and *Celo tibi hanc rem.*

2. *Moneo*; as, *Id unum te moneo.* But unleſs it is ſome general

hic, illud, id, &c. *moneo, admoneo, commonefacio,* have either the ge-*ive, as, Admoneo te officii*; or the ablative with *de*, as, *De hac re te fa-admonui.*

These verbs have frequently the infinitive or ſubjunctive with *ut* or *ne* after them. Cic. *Pietas officium conſervare monet.* Id. *Te illud admoneo, ut te compares, quotidieque meditere, reſiſtendum eſſe iracundiæ.* Hor. *Immor-tales ne ſperes, monet annus.*

Note 2. That verbs of aſking often change the accuſative of the perſon into an ablative with the prepoſition; as, *oro, exoro, peto, poſtulo hoc a te.* But always; as, *contendo, quæro, ſcitor, ſciſcitor hoc a te.* Finally, ſome have the accuſative of the perſon, and the ablative of the thing with *de*; as, *interrogo, conſulo, percontor te de hac re.*

Note 3. Verbs of teaching have very often the ablative with *de.* Cic. *Verbis divinis collegium pontificum docet.* Id. *Literæ tuæ me erudiant de om-nibus publica.* But *doceo, edoceo,* with *de,* commonly ſignify *to inform, or ac-quaint of*; and we find almoſt always *inſtruo, inſtituo, formo, informo, im-buo artibus,* without a prepoſition.

Of the two accuſatives the laſt (commonly a thing) is generally govern-ed by *quod ad, ſecundum, circa, ob, in,* or *ad,* underſtood.

ANNOTATIO.

33

Quorum activa duos ca-piunt, eorum paſſiva po-trem retinent; ut,

33

The paſſives of ſuch active verbs as govern two caſes, do ſtill retain the laſt of them; as,

Accuſor furti, I am accuſed of theft. *Virgilius comparatur Homero,* Virgil is compared to Homer. *Doceor grammaticam,* I am taught grammar.

Note. *Induor, amicior, accingor, exuor, diſcingor,* have the accuſative in the poets. Virg. *Induitur* (*quod ad*) *faciem.* Id. (*Quod ad*) *inutile ferro cingitur.* But the writers in proſe give them the ablative. Liv. *Ferro cingitur* (*cum*) *enſe.* Cic. *Pallium* (*cum*) *quo amictus*; *Soccos* (*cum*) *quibus indutus eſſet.*

Reg. VII.

34

Pretium rei à quovis ver-o ablativo regitur; ut,

Rule VII.

34

The price of a thing is go-verned in the ablative by any verb; as,

Emi librum duobus aſſibus, I bought a book for two ſhillings. *Vendidit hic auro patriam,* This man ſold his country for gold. *Demoſthenes docuit talento,* Demoſthenes taught for a talent.

Note. This ablative is governed by *pro* underſtood, and ſometimes, though very rarely, expreſſed. Liv. *Dum pro argenteis decem, aureus unus da-retur.*

35

• Excipiuntur hi genitivi, *tanti, quanti, pluris, minoris*, ut,

35

Theſe genitives, tanti, quanti, pluris, minoris, *are excepted; as,*

Quanti conſtitit? How much coſt it? *Aſſe et pluris,* a ſhilling and more.

Note. That if the ſubſtantive be expreſſed, they are put in the ablative; as, *Quanto pretio? Minore mercede.*

36

• Verba æſtimandi regunt hujuſmodi genitivos, *magni, parvi, nihili*, &c.; ut,

36

Verbs of valuing govern genitives as theſe, magni, parvi, nihili, *&c.; as,*

Æſtimo te magni, I value you much.

1. Verbs of valuing are, *æſtimo, pendo, facio, habeo, duco, puto, taxo*
2. The reſt of the genitives are, *minoris, minimi, tanti, quanti, majoris, plurimi, maximi, nauci, flocci, pili, aſſis, teruncii, hujus*; alſo and *boni* after *facio* and *conſulo.*

Note 1. That we ſay alſo, *Æſtimo magno, parvo*, ſupple *pretio.*

Note 2. That Alvarus excludes *majoris*, as wanting authority: but is an example of it to be found in Phædrus, ii. 5. 25.

Multo majoris alapæ mecum veneunt.

Reg. VIII.

37

• Verba copiæ et inopiæ plerumque ablativum regunt; ut,

Rule VIII.

37

Verbs of plenty and ſcarceneſs for the moſt part govern the ablative; as,

Abundat divitiis, He abounds in riches. *Caret omni culpa,* He has no fault.

Note 1. Sometimes they have the genitive; as, Hor. *Eget æris. Adoleſcentem ſuæ temeritatis implet.*

Note 2. That verbs of loading and unloading, and the like, belong to this rule; as, *Navis oneratur mercibus. Levabo te hoc onere. Liberat metu.*

Note 3. Verbs of clothing, *veſtio, amicio, induo, cingo, tego, velo, calceo*, and their contraries, have more commonly the ablative of the thing without a prepoſition; as, *Veſtit ſe (cum) purpurâ. Induit ſe (cum)* Liv. *Exuo hoſtem caſtris, impedimentis; Exuit ſe jugo:* but *induo* and *exuo* have frequently the perſon in the dative, and the thing in the accuſative; as, *Thoracem ſibi induit.* Ter. *Induit ſibi veſtem.*

Note 4. This ablative is governed by ſome prepoſition underſtood, which is found ſometimes expreſſed; as, Liv. *Ne quando a metu et pericula vacarent.* Cic. *Arcem ab incendio et flamma liberavi.* Liv. *Laxo animos laboribus. Solvo belluam catenis*, or *a catenis.*

38

Utor, abutor, fruor, fungor, potior, veſcor, regunt abrum; ut,

Utitur *fraude*, He uſes deceit. *Abutitur libris*, He abuſes

38

Utor, abutor, fruor, fungor, potior, veſcor, *govern the ablative; as,*

To theſe verbs add, *nitor, gaudeo, muto, dono, munero, communico, victi-*
, fido, impertior, dignor, naſcor, creor, afficio, conſto, proſequor, &c.

Note 1. That *potior* ſometimes governs the genitive; as, *Potiri hoſtium.*
rerum, ſc. imperio.

Note 2. *Potior, fungor*, and *veſcor*, ſometimes have the accuſative; and
tur, abutor, fruor, in more ancient authors.

Note 3. Others vary their conſtruction; as, *Dono te equo*, and *tibi equum.*
go ſale carnes, and *ſalem carnibus. Impertio te ſalute*, and *tibi ſalutem.*
unico rem tecum, ſeldom *te re*, and never *rem tibi.*

Note 4. *Conſto, laboro, nitor, glorior*, have often a prepoſition; as, Cic.
ex animo, et corpore. Id. *Graviter ex inteſtinis laboro.*

Note 5. *Epulor* and *paſcor* ſometimes, *depaſco* and *depaſcor* always, have
*cuſative; as, Plin. *Pullos (aſinarum) epulari inſtituit.* Virg. *Paſcuntur*
Id. *Luxuriem ſegetum depaſcit.* Id. *Artus depaſcitur.*

§ 2. *Regimen Verborum Impersonalium.*

Reg. IX.

39

Verbum impersonale regit rum; ut,

Expedit reipublicæ, It is profitable for the ſtate. *Licet nemini peccare*, No man is allowed to ſin.

§ 2. The Government of Impersonal Verbs.

Rule IX.

39

An impersonal verb governs the dative; as,

Note 1. Such as theſe, *accidit, contingit, evenit, conducit, expedit, lubet, licet, placet, diſplicet, vacat, reſtat, præſtat, liquet, nocet, dolet, ſufficit*, together with the dative, they have commonly an infinitive after them, which is ſuppoſed to ſupply the place of a nominative before it.

Note 2. They are ſometimes taken perſonally both in the ſingular and plural, eſpecially with the pronouns *id, hoc, illud, quod*, &c. Cic. *Id tibi licebit*; *Non idem mihi licet.* Ter. *Non hæc te pudent.* Catull. *Marito meo licent.*

Note 3. The dative of the perſon is often underſtood. Ter. *Faciat lubet, ſc. ſibi.*

40

Excep. 1. *Refert* et *intergenitivum poſtulant*; ut,

Refert patris, It concerns my father. *Intereſt omnium*, It is intereſt of all.

40

Excep. 1. Refert *and* interest *require the genitive; as,*

41

* At *mea, tua, ſua, noſtra, veſtra*, ponuntur in accuſativo plurali; ut,

Non mea refert, I am not concerned.

41

But mea, tua, ſua, noſt veſtra, *are put in the accu tive plural*; *as*,

Note 1. *Refert* and *intereſt* admit alſo theſe genitives of quantity; *t quanti, magni, permagni, parvi, pluris*; and theſe adverbs, *magis, max multùm, plurimùm, minùs, minimùm*, or *minimè*; and *tantum, quan parum*. Cic. *Magni intereſt mea*; *Parvi refert*; *Multùm refert*.

Note 2. They take ſometimes not only *quid, quod, id*, &c. but o nominatives. Cic. *Illud mea magni intereſt. Non quo mea intereſſet loci tura.*

Note 3. Inſtead of the genitive, they have ſometimes the accuſ with *ad*: Plaut. *Quam ad rem iſthuc refert*: and more rarely the dat Hor. *Dic, quid referat viventi.*

. Obſerve theſe phraſes, in which *intereſt* ſignifies *to differ*. Cic. *gant illa quidquam a falſis intereſſe.* Ter. *Stulto intelligens, quid intereſt. Hoc pater et dominus intereſt.*

42

* Excep. 2. Hæc quinque, *miſeret, pœnitet, pudet, tædet*, et *piget*, regunt accuſativum perſonæ cum genitivo rei; ut,

Miſeret me tui, I pity you. *Pœnitet me peccati*, I re of my ſin. *Tædet me vitæ*, I am weary of my life.

42

Excep. 2. *Theſe five*, m ret, pœnitet, pudet, tæ *and* piget, *govern the acc tive of a perſon with the g tive of a thing*; *as*,

Note 1. This genitive is frequently turned into the infinitive; as, *nitet me peccáſſe*; *Tædet me vivere*; and ſo they fall in with the follo rule

Note 2. The accuſative is often underſtood: Hor. *Scelerum ſi bene tet, ſc. nos.*

Note 3. Sometimes they are taken perſonally, eſpecially with *hoc quod*, &c. Lucr. *Ipſe ſui miſeret.* Plaut. *Id quod pudet.*

43

* Excep. 3. Hæc quatuor, *decet, delectat, juvat, oportet*, regunt accuſativum perſonæ cum infinitivo; ut,

Delectat me ſtudere, I delight to ſtudy. *Non decet te ari*, It does not become you to ſcold.

43

Excep. 3. *Theſe four*, de delectat, juvat, oportet, *vern the accuſative of the ſon with the infinitive*; *as*

Note 1. Theſe, except *oportet*, are often conſtrued perſonally. *Parvum parva decent.* Ov. *Candida pax homines, trux decet ira feras.*

. *Decet* is found even with the dative: Ter. *Ita nobis decet.*

Note 2. That *oportet* is elegantly joined with the ſubjunctive moo

being underſtood; as, *Oportet facias*, for *Oportet te facere*. *Attinet*, *pertinet*, and *ſpectat*, when uſed impersonally, (which rarely happens), have the accuſative with *ad*, as was obſerved above, No. 27.

* Paſſive impersonals are either taken abſolutely; Ter. *Quid agitur*; Cic. *Agitur*: Or have after them the caſe of the perſonal verbs; Cic. *Ut ſuppliciter miſereatur*. Ov. *Nec mihi parcatur*. But as they are never found with the accuſative, it follows, that no active verb can be made impersonal.

Note 3. Neuter impersonals are ſometimes perſonal with their own or the like ſignification; as, *Curſus curritur*; *Vita vivitur*; *Pugna pugnatur*.

Note 4. *Poteſt*, *cœpit*, *incipit*, *deſinit*, *debet*, *ſolet*, put with impersonals, become impersonals themſelves; as, *Poteſt iri*; *Solet peccari*; *Incipit pudere me peccati mei*; *Cœpit pœnitere me*; *Deſinat pœnitere te tuæ ſortis*; *Debet pœnitere te tui peccati*.

** Paſſive verbs take after them the ablative of the agent with *a*, *ab*, or *abs*; as, *Laudatur ab his*, *Culpatur ab illis*: and this ablative, with the preposition put after the paſſive, becomes (when inverted) the nominative of the active verb, as the accuſative of the active becomes the nominative to the paſſive; as, *Ego laudo te*; *Tu laudaris a me*.

** *A* or *ab* is ſometimes ſuppreſſed; as, Ov. *Deſeror conjuge*; *Colitur deus*.

§ 3. *Regimen infinitivi, participiorum, gerundiorum, et ſupinorum.*

§ 3. The government of the infinitive, participles, gerunds, and ſupines.

Reg. X.

44

Unum verbum regit aliud in infinitivo; ut,

Rule X.

44

One verb governs another in the infinitive; *as*,

Cupio diſcere, I deſire to learn.

Note 1. Sometimes it is governed by adjectives; as, *Cupidus* or *Cupiens dicere*: and ſometimes even by ſubſtantives; as, Cæſ. *Conſilium capit equitatum dimittere*, for *dimittendi*.

Note 2. That the verb *cœpit*, or *cœperunt*, is ſometimes underſtood; as, *Mihi mihi invidere*, (ſupple *cœperunt*.)

Note 3. The verb or noun governing is often ſuppreſſed. Virg. *Mene incepto deſiſtere victam? ſc. decet*, or *par eſt*; *Videre eſt*, *ſc. facultas*, *poteſtas*, *copia*. Sometimes even the infinitive is omitted; as, Cic. *Socratem fidibus canere audivit*, *ſc. canere*. *Male*, *bene*, *audit*, *ſc. dici ſibi*.

Note 4. This infinitive is commonly thought to have the Engliſh of the imperfect of the indicative; *invidere* for *invidebant*.

Note 5. The infinitive was not improperly called by the ancients *nomen verbi*: for an adjective of the neuter termination is joined to it: Cic. *Cum videre ipſum turpe ſit nobis*. And it ſupplies the place of a ſubſtantive in all the caſes: for the nominative, ſee laſt example; for the genitive, Virg. *Scit cantare periti*, for *cantandi* or *cantûs*; for the dative, Sall. *Vos ſervire imperati eſtis*, for *ſervituti*; for the accuſative, Cic. *Si ſcribere oblitus es*, for *ſcribendi peritiam*; for the vocative, *O vivere noſtrum*, for *O vita noſtra*; for the ablative, Virg. *Erat dignus amari*, for *amore*.

Note 6. *Dubito* and *Dubium eſt* take ſometimes the infinitive, but more

frequently the ſubjunctive with *an*, *nàm*, *utrum*, and with *non*, *quin*. N
Non dubito fore. Ter. *Me periiſſe unà haud dubium eſt.* Ter. *Non dub
eſt, quin uxorem nolit filius.*

*** *Dubito an*, *Haud ſcio an*, *Neſcio an*, are commonly taken in an af
mative ſenſe. Nep. *Dubito an hunc primum omnium ponam*, I doubt
but I ſhould, &c.

Note 7. *Timeo*, *metuo*, *vereor*, *paveo*, are taken affirmatively with
but negatively with *ut*, or *ne non*. Ter. *Id paves*, *ne ducas tu illam*; *tu
tem*, *ut ducas*, i. e. You are afraid you be forced to marry her; but y
(are afraid) you do not get her in marriage.

Note 8. *Spero*, *puto*, *affirmo*, *ſuſpicor*, &c. take elegantly *fore*, or *fu
rum eſſe*, and *ut*, with the ſubjunctive, for the future infinitive. Cic. *N
quam putavi fore*, *ut venirem*, for *me venturum fuiſſe.*

*** This periphraſis is neceſſary with verbs that want the ſupines,
conſequently the future participle; as, Cic. *Spero fore*, or *futurum eſſe,
contingat id nobis.*

Reg. XI.

45

Participia, gerundia, et ſupina, regunt caſum ſuorum verborum; ut,

Rule XI.

45

Participles, *gerunds*, *a
ſupines*, *govern the caſe of th
own verbs*; *as*,

Amans virtutem, Loving virtue. *Carens fraude*, Wanti
guile. *Reſiſtendum eſt iracundiæ*, We muſt ſtrive againſt
ger. *Ibo ſervitum matribus*, I will go and ſerve the matro

Note 1. Verbal ſubſtantives, as well as adjectives, take ſometimes
caſe of their verbs. Cic. *Juſtitia eſt obtemperatio legibus.* Sall. *In
conſuli non procedebant.* Ov. *Cum ſit ignis aquæ pugnax.*

So verbals in *bundus*: Liv. *Vitabundus caſtra hoſtium.* But theſe oc
more rarely: Cæſ. *Domum reditionis ſpe ſublatâ.* Ter. *Quid tibi hanc cur
eſt rem.*

*** Some participles have a particular conſtruction; as, *exoſus*, *pero
and ſometimes *pertæſus*. Virg. *Exoſus Trojanos.* *Peroſi lucem.* Suet. *P
tæſus ignaviam.*

Note 2. *Do*, *reddo*, *volo*, *curo*, *facio*, *habeo*, with the participle-perfect
the accuſative, make a periphraſis of that verb, the participle when
they take; as, Ter. *Effectum dabo*, i. e. *efficiam.* *Vos omnes oratos volo*, i
vos oro. *Me miſſum face*, i. e. *mitte.* But there is an emphaſis in the
and more ſaid than the ſimple verb expreſſes.

Note 3. *Curo*, *habeo*, *mando*, *loco*, *conduco*, *do*, *tribuo*, *accipio*, *mitto*,
linquo, &c. inſtead of the infinitive or ſubjunctive, take the future pa
ciple in *dus* as an adjective to the ſubſtantive. Cic. *Funus ei ſatis amp
faciendum curavi*, for *fieri*, or *ut fieret.*

1. *Gerundia.*

46

1. Gerundium in *dum* nominativi caſus cum verbo *eſt* regit dativum; ut,

1. Gerunds.

46

1. *The gerund in* dum, *the nominative caſe*, *with
verb* eſt, *governs the dativ
as*,

Vivendum eſt mihi rectè, I muſt live well. *Moriendum eſt omnibus*, All muſt die.

Note 1. This dative is frequently underſtood; as, *Eundum eſt*, [ſupple *mihi*], We muſt go.

Note 2. This gerund always imports neceſſity, and the dative after it the perſon on whom the neceſſity lies. It may be varied in this manner; *Cavendum eſt mihi*; *Cautio mihi eſt*; *Cautio mea eſt*; *Debeo cavere*; *Neceſſe eſt mihi cavere*; *Neceſſe eſt*, or *Oportet me cavere*; *Neceſſe habeo cavere*; *Caveam oportet*, or *neceſſe eſt*.

47

1. Gerundium in *di* regitur à ſubſtantivis vel adjectivis; ut,

47

2. *The gerund in* di *is governed by ſubſtantives or adjectives; as,*

Tempus legendi, Time of reading. *Cupidus diſcendi*, Deſirous to learn.

1. The ſubſtantives are ſuch as theſe, *amor*, *cauſa*, *gratia*, *ſtudium*, *tempus*, *occaſio*, *ars*, *otium*, *voluntas*, *cupido*, &c.

2. The adjectives are generally verbals, mentioned No. 14.

48

3. Gerundium in *do* dativi caſûs regitur ab adjectivis utilitatem vel aptitudinem ſignificantibus; ut,

48

3. *The gerund in* do *of the dative caſe is governed by adjectives ſignifying uſefulneſs or fitneſs; as,*

Charta utilis ſcribendo, Paper uſeful for writing.

The adjective of fitneſs is often underſtood; as, *Non eſt ſolvendo*, He is not able to pay, [ſupple *aptus* or *par*].

Note, That ſometimes this gerund is governed by a verb; as, *Epidicum operam dabo*, I'll endeavour to find out Epidicus. Plaut.

49

4. Gerundium in *dum* accuſativi caſûs regitur à præpoſitionibus *ad* vel *inter*; ut,

49

4. *The gerund in* dum *of the accuſative caſe is governed by the prepoſitions* ad *or* inter; *as,*

Promptus ad audiendum, Ready to hear. *Attentus inter docendum*, Attentive in time of teaching.

Note 1. That it hath ſometimes, but very rarely, the prepoſitions *ob* and *ante*; as, *Ob abſolvendum munus*, For finiſhing your taſk. Cic. *Ante domandum*, Before they are tamed or broken. *Virg.* ſpeaking of horſes.

Note 2. That what was the gerund in *dum* of the nominative with the verb *eſt*, *fuit*, &c. becomes the accuſative with *eſſe*; as, *Omnibus moriendum eſſe novimus*, We know that all muſt die.

50

5. Gerundium in *do* ablativi caſûs regitur à præpoſitionibus, *a*, *ab*, *de*, *e*, *ex*, vel *in*; ut,

50

5. *The gerund in* do *of ablative caſe is governed by prepoſitions*, a, ab, de, e, *or* in; *as*,

Pœna à peccando abſterret, Puniſhment frightens from ning.

51

* Vel ſine præpoſitione, ut ablativus modi vel cauſæ; ut,

51

* *Or without a prepoſit as the ablative of manne cauſe; as*,

Memoria excolendo augetur, The memory is improved exerciſing it. *Defeſſus ſum ambulando*, I am wearied walking.

52

6. Gerundia accuſativum regentia vertuntur eleganter in participia in *dus*, quæ cum ſuis ſubſtantivis in genere, numero, et caſu, concordant; ut,

52

6. *Gerunds governing accuſative are elegantly tu into the participles in which agree with their ſtantives in gender, nu and caſe; as*,

Petendum eſt pacem, Petenda eſt pax; *Tempus petendi cem*, Tempus petendæ pacis; *Ad petendum pacem*, Ad tendam pacem; *A petendo pacem*, A petenda pace.

Add to theſe the gerunds of *utor*, *abuter*, *fungor*, *fruor*, and *potior*.

Theſe participles in *dus* are commonly called *gerundives*.

Note 1. That the ſubſtantive muſt always be of the ſame caſe th gerund was of.

Note 2. That becauſe of its noiſy ſound, the gerund in *di* is ſe changed into the genitive plural; but either the accuſative is retaine *Studio patres veſtros videndi*, rather than *Patrum veſtrorum videndor* it is turned into the genitive plural, without changing the ger *Patrum veſtrorum videndi ſtudio*. This has place, eſpecially in the nouns *ſui* and *veſtri*. Cic. *Cum multi Româ, non tam ſui conſervandi, tuorum conſiliorum reprimendorum cauſâ, profugerunt*. Liv. xxi. 41. *reor, ne quis me veſtri ad hortandi cauſâ magnificè loqui exiſtimet*. Cæſ. *ſui colligendi hoſtibus facultatem reliquunt*. Id. *In caſtra venerunt ſui pu cauſâ*, &c. &c.

** Though gerunds for the moſt part ſignify actively; yet they ſometimes to be taken paſſively. Sall. *Cum ipſe ad imperandum Ti vocaretur*, i. e. *ut ipſi imperaretur*; Liv. *Ad cognoſcendum*, i. e. *ut ſantur*.

Supina.	Supines.
53	53
1. Supinum in *um* ponitur verbum motûs; ut,	1. *The ſupine in* um *is put after a verb of motion; as,*

Abiit deambulatum, He hath gone to walk.

Note 1. The ſupine in *um* is elegantly uſed with the verb *eo*, when we ify that one ſets himſelf about the doing of a thing; as, *In mea vita idem is quæſitum?* Ter. And this is the reaſon why this ſupine, with *iri* s impersonally, ſupplies the place of the future of the infinitive paſſive.

Note 2. This ſupine may be varied many other ways, viz. *Venit ora-opem*; 1. - *opem orandi cauſâ*; 2. - *opis orandæ cauſâ*; 3. - *ad orandum o-*; 4. - *ad orandam opem*; 5. - *opi orandæ*; 6. - *opem oraturus*; 7. - *qui opem*; 8. - *opem orare*. But of theſe the 2d, 4th, and 6th, are moſt ornate l uſual, and the 8th is only uſed by the poets.

54	54
2. Supinum in *u* ponitur nomen adjectivum; ut,	2. *The ſupine in* u *is put after an adjective noun; as,*

Facile dictu, Eaſy to tell, *or* to be told.

Note 1. This ſupine is alſo put after *fas*, *nefas*, and *opus*; as, *Fas*, *Ne-*, *dictu*; *Opus ſcitu.*

Note 2. It may be varied by the infinitive: Hor. *Vultus lubricus aſpici:* nd by the gerund with *ad:* Cic. *Ad judicandum facillima:* and alſo by ials: Cic. *Cognitione dignis.*

e general remarks on the conſtruction of participles, ge-nds, and ſupines.

Note 1. That participles, gerunds, and ſupines, have a twofold con-ction; one, as they partake of the nature of verbs, by which they go-a certain caſe after them; another, as they partake of the nature of ns, and conſequently are ſubject to the ſame rules with them. Thus, A participle is always an adjective agreeing with its ſubſtantive, by 1.

A gerund is a ſubſtantive, and conſtrued as follows: (1.) That in of the nominative by No. 2. of the accuſative by No. 68. (2.) That d by No. 11. or 14. (3.) That in *do* of the dative by No. 16. of the ive by No. 69. 71. or 55.

A ſupine is alſo a ſubſtantive: (1.) That in *um*, governed by *ad* un-ood, by No. 68. (2.) That in *u*, governed by *in* underſtood, by 71.

Note 2. That the preſent of the infinitive active, the firſt ſupine, and gerund in *dum*, with the prepoſition *ad*, are thus diſtinguiſhed. The e is uſed after verbs of motion; the infinitive after any other verbs; gerund in *dum* with *ad* after adjective nouns. But theſe laſt are fre-ntly to be met with after verbs of motion; and poets uſe alſo the in-ive after adjectives.

Note 3. That the preſent of the infinitive paſſive, and the laſt ſupine, thus diſtinguiſhed: The ſupine hath always an adjective before it; ch the infinitive hath not, unleſs (as I ſaid) among poets.

§ 4. *Conſtructio circumſtantiarum.*

§ 4. The conſtruction of cumſtances.

[Adjective nouns, but eſpecially verbs, have frequently ſome circumſtances going along with them in diſcourſe; the moſt conſiderable whe of, with reſpect to conſtruction, are theſe five: 1. The cauſe or rea why any thing is done; 2. The way or manner how it is done; 3. T inſtrument or thing wherewith it is done; 4. The place where; and, The time when it is done.]

1. *Cauſa, modus, et inſtrumentum.*

Reg. XII.

55

Cauſa, modus, et inſtrumentum, ponuntur in ablativo; ut,

1. The cauſe, manner, a inſtrument.

Rule XII.

55

The cauſe, manner, and ſtrument, are put in the ab tive; as,

Palleo metu, I am pale for fear. *Fecit ſuo more*, He did after his own way. *Scribo calamo*, I write with a pen.

Note 1. That the cauſe is known by the queſtion *Cur?* or *Qua* &c.; the manner, by the queſtion *Quomodo?* and the inſtrument, by queſtion *Quocum?*

Note 2. That the prepoſition is frequently expreſſed with the cauſe manner; as, *Præ gaudio, Propter amorem, Ob culpam, Cum ſummo lab Per dedecus.* But the prepoſition *cum* is never added to the inſtrume for we cannot ſay, *Scribo cum calamo; Cum oculis vidi.* But the poets it *a* or *ab.* Ov. *Ab enſe; Ab hamo.*

Note 3. But here we muſt carefully diſtinguiſh between the inſtrum and what is called the *ablativus comitatûs*, or *ablative of concomitancy*; ſignifying, that ſomething was in company with another; for then the poſition *cum* is generally expreſſed; as, *Ingreſſus eſt cum gladio*, He tered with a ſword, *i. e.* having a ſword with him, *or* about him.

Note 4. That to cauſe ſome refer the matter of which any thin made; as, *Clypeus ære fabricatus.* But (except with the poets) the pre ſition is for the moſt part expreſſed.

Note 5. That to manner ſome refer the adjunct, *i. e.* ſomething joi to another thing; as, *Terra amœna floribus, Mons nive candidus.*

Note 6. That to inſtrument ſome refer *Conficior dolore, inediâ*, &c. *ſequor odio, amore*, &c. *Afficio te honore, contumeliâ*, &c. *Laceſſo verbis ris*, &c.

2. *Locus.*

Reg. XIII.

56

* 1. Nomen oppidi ponitur in genitivo, cùm quæſtio fit per *Ubi*; ut,

2. Place.

Rule XIII.

56

The name of a town is in the genitive, when the ſtion is made by Ubi, [Whe *as,*

Vixit Romæ, He lived at Rome. *Mortuus eſt Londini*, He died at London.

57

* Excep. Si verò ſit tertiæ declinationis, aut pluralis numeri, in ablativo effertur; ut,

57

Excep. But if it is of the third declenſion, or of the plural number, it is expreſſed in the ablative; as,

Habitat Carthagine, He dwells at Carthage. *Studuit Pariſiis*, He ſtudied at Paris.

58

* 2. Cùm quæſtio fit per *Quo*, nomen oppidi in accuſativo regitur; ut,

58

2. *When the queſtion is made by* Quo, [Whither], *the name of a town is governed in the accuſative; as,*

Venit Edinburgum, He came to Edinburgh. *Profectus eſt Athenas*, He went to Athens.

59

* 3. Si quæratur per *Unde* vel *Qua*, nomen oppidi ponitur in ablativo; ut,

59

3. *If the queſtion is made by* Unde, [Whence] *or* Qua, [By *or* through what place], *the name of a town is put in the ablative; as,*

Diſceſſit Aberdoniâ, He went from Aberdeen. *Laodiceâ iter faciebat*, He went through Laodicea.

60

* 4. *Domus* et *rus* eodem modo quo oppidorum nomina conſtruuntur; ut,

60

4. Domus *and* rus *are conſtrued the ſame way as names of towns; as,*

Manet domi, He ſtays at home. *Domum revertitur*, He returns home. *Domo arceſſitus ſum*, I am called from home. *Habitat rure* or *ruri*, He lives in the country. *Abiit rus*, He is gone to the country. *Rediit rure*, He is returned from the country.

61

5. Nominibus regionum, provinciarum, et aliorum locorum, non dictis, præpoſitio ex addituꝛ; ut,

61

5. *To names of countries, provinces, and other places, not mentioned, the prepoſition is generally added; as,*

Ubi? *Natus in Scotia, in Fifa, in urbe*, &c.
Quo? *Abiit in Scotiam, in Fifam, in* [vel *ad*] *urbem*, &c.
Unde? *Rediit è Scotia, è Fifa, ex urbe*, &c.
Qua? *Tranſit per Scotiam, per Fifam, per urbem*, &c.

Note 1. That the prepoſition is frequently added to names of towns, (ſpecially when the queſtion is *Quo? Unde?* or *Qua?*); and ſometimes mitted to names of countries, provinces, &c.

Note 2. That *humi*, *militiæ*, and *belli*, are alſo uſed in the genitiv when the queſtion is made by *Ubi?* as, *Procumbit humi*, He lies down the ground. *Domi militiæque unà fuimus*, We were together both at hom and abroad, *or* in peace and war, *Ter. Belli domique agitabatur*, Was m naged both in peace and war, *Sall.*

Note 3. That when the name of a town is put in the genitive, *in ur* is underſtood; and therefore we cannot ſay, *Natus eſt Romæ urbis nobil* but *Romæ in urbe nobili*, or *in Romæ nobili urbe*, or *in Roma nobili urbe*, *Romæ nobili urbe.*

Note 4. *Domi* has no adjectives but *meæ*, *tuæ*, *ſuæ*, *noſtræ*, *veſtræ*, *alien* for with other adjectives we uſe *domo*; as, *In domo paterna*, *regiâ*. We ſay, *Domi*, or *In domo Cæſaris*. And alſo, *Nihil domum ſuam intulit*, or *domum ſuam*. *Domos*, with *ſuas*, &c. for the moſt part want the prepo tion: Sall. *Suas domos invitant*. But with other adjectives the prepoſiti is generally added; as, *Ov. In ſuperas domos.*

Note 5. *Rura* always has the prepoſition; as, Liv. *Ubi vos dilapſi dom et in rura veſtra eritis.* But *peto* never has it; as, *Ægyptum petiit.*

¶ *Theſe rules concerning names of towns may perhaps be bet expreſſed thus:*

The name of a town after { in *or* at / to *or* unto / from *or* through } is put in the { genitive or ablative †. / accuſative. / ablative.

† *i. e.* When it is of the third declenſion, or of the plural numb But when *at* ſignifies about or near a place, we make uſe of the prepo tion *ad*; as, *Bellum quod ad Trojam geſſerat*, Virg.

ANNOTATIO.

62

* Diſtantia unius loci ab alio ponitur in accuſativo, interdum et in ablativo; ut,

62

The diſtance of one place fr another is put in the accuſati and ſometimes in the ablativ as,

Glaſcua diſtat Edinburgo triginta millia paſſuum, Glaſgow thirty miles diſtant from Edinburgh. *Iter* vel *itinere uni diei*, One day's journey.

Note 1. Sometimes one of the ſubſtantives that ſignifies ſpace or ſtance is ſuppreſſed: Cic. *Nos in caſtra properabamus, quæ aberant bi ſc. iter.*

Note 2. When the place where a thing is done, is expreſſed by a no of diſtance, we muſt uſe either the ablative; as, Cæſ. *Millibus paſſuum a Cæſaris caſtris conſedit*; or the accuſative with *ad*; as, Nep. *Sepultus eſt quintum lapidem.*

Note 3. The exceſs of meaſure or diſtance is put in the ablative; *Hoc lignum excedit illud digito.*

3. *Tempus.*

Reg. XIV.

63

1. Tempus ponitur in ablativo, cùm quæſtio fit per *quando*; ut,

3. Time.

Rule XIV.

63

1. *Time is put in the ablative, when the queſtion is made by* Quando, [When]; as,

Venit horâ tertiâ, He came at three o'clock.

Note 1. *In* or *de* is often put before this ablative: Ter. *In tempore ad* veni. Hor. *Surgunt de nocte latrones.* And ſometimes the accuſative, *ad, per,* or *intra*; as, Cic. *Ad horam deſtinatam. Per idem tempus.* Liv. *per paucos dies moritur.*

Note 2. Theſe phraſes are figurative: *Id temporis, Iſthuc ætatis,* for *Eo tempore, Iſthac ætate.*

64

2. Cùm quæſtio fit per *quamdiu*, tempus ponitur in accuſativo vel ablativo, ſed magis in accuſativo; ut,

64

2. *When the queſtion is made by* Quamdiu, [How long], *time is put in the accuſative or ablative, but oftener in the accuſative; as,*

Manſit paucos dies, He ſtaid a few days. *Sex menſibus abfuit*, He was away ſix months.

Note 1. The prepoſitions *per, ad, in, intra,* or *inter,* are ſometimes added: Cic. - *quem per annos decem aluimus.* Cæſ. - *qui intra annos quatuordecim tectum non ſubierint.*

Note 2. Obſerve theſe phraſes: Cic. *Annos natus unum et viginti, ſc. ante; trecentos annos amplius, ſc. quam per.* Nep. *Minus triginta diebus, ſc. quam.* Ter. *Fere in diebus paucis quibus hæc acta ſunt.*

Note 3. *Abhinc* with the accuſative and ablative is uſed as well in this as the laſt rule: Cic. *Abhinc duo et viginti annos mortuus eſt. Quo tempore? Abhinc annis quatuor.* Ter. *Abhinc triennium.* Cic. *Abhinc triginta diebus.*

** Theſe two rules (63 and 64) may be thus expreſſed:

1. Nouns that denote a preciſe term of time are put in the ablative.

2. Nouns that denote continuance of time are put in the accuſative or ablative.

De ablativo abſoluto.

Reg. XV.

65

Subſtantivum cum participio, quorum caſus à nulla alia dictione pendet, ponuntur ablativo abſoluto; ut,

Of the ablative abſolute.

Rule XV.

65

A ſubſtantive with a participle, whoſe caſe depends upon no other word, are put in the ablative abſolute; as,

Sole oriente fugiunt tenebræ, The ſun riſing [*or*, while the ſun riſeth] darkneſs flies away. *Opere peracto ludemus*, Our

work being finiſhed [*or*, when our work is finiſhed] we v
play.

Note 1. This ablative is called *abſolute* or *independent*, becauſe it is
directed or determined by any other word; for if the ſubſtantive (wh
is principally to be regarded) hath a word before that ſhould govern
or a verb coming after to which it ſhould be a nominative, then the r
does not take place.

Note 2. That *having*, *being*, or a word ending in *ing*, are the ordin
ſigns of this ablative.

Note 3. That (to prevent our miſtaking the true ſubſtantive) whe
participle-perfect is Engliſhed by *having*, we are carefully to adv
whether it is paſſive or deponent. If it is paſſive, we are to change it
to *being*, its true Engliſh. If it is deponent, their needs no change;
having is the proper Engliſh of it. The uſe of this note will appear
the following example:

James having ſaid theſe things, departed. } *Jacobus hæc locutus, abiit.* Dep.
James, theſe things being ſaid, departed. } *Jacobus, his dictis, abiit.* Paſſ.
Having promiſed a great reward. } *Pollicitus magnam mercedem.* Dep
A great reward being promiſed, } *Magnâ mercede promiſſâ.* Paſſ

Note 4. That when there is no participle expreſſed in Latin, *exiſ*
[being] is underſtood; as, *Me puero*, *Saturno rege*, *Civitate nondum libe*

Note 5 That the participle may be reſolved into *dum*, *cum*, *qua*
ſi, *poſtquam*, &c. [while, ſeeing, when, if, after], with the verb, bot
the indicative and ſubjunctive, either in Engliſh or Latin.

Note 6. Sometimes the participle itſelf is only expreſſed: Cæſ. Ex
quid iniquitas loci poſſet, *ſc. negotio.*

Note 7. Ter. *Abſente nobis*, *Præſente nobis*, are not to be imitated.

Note 8. Although this ablative ſeems abſolute, yet it is really gove
by a prepoſition underſtood; as, *ſub*, *cum*, *a*, or *ab*; which is even ſo
times expreſſed; as, Virg. *Sole ſub ardenti.* Liv. *Cum diis bene juvantibu*

III. Conſtructio vocum indeclinabilium.

1. *Adverbiorum.*

66

* 1. Adverbia quædam temporis, loci, et quantitatis, regunt genitivum; ut,

Pridie illius diei, The day before that day. *Ubique*
tium, Every where. *Satis eſt verborum*, There's enough
words.

Note 1. Alſo *interea loci*; *poſtea loci*; *uſquam*, *nuſquam*, *unde terrarum*
gentium, &c.

Note 2. *Pridie* and *poſtridie* have rarely any other accuſative than
kendas, *nonas*, *idus*; and ſeldom *kalendarum*, &c.

III. *The conſtruction of* [w
indeclinable.

1. Of Adverbs.

66

1. *Some adverbs of t*
place, and quantity, govern
genitive; as,

Note 3. As to the reaſon of this conſtruction, *Interea et poſtea loci*, are ...ative: thus, *Inter et poſt ea negotia hujus loci*, &c.

67

• 2. Quædam adverbia de...vata regunt caſum primiti...orum; ut,

67

2. *Some derivative adverbs govern the caſe of their primitives; as,*

Omnium elegantiſſimè loquitur, He ſpeaks the moſt elegantly ...all. *Vivere convenienter naturæ*, To live agreeably to na...ure. *Fit mihi obviam*, He meets me. *Propiùs urbi et ar...*, Nearer to the city. *Proximè caſtris et caſtra*, Next to ...e camp. *Ampliùs opinione*, More than can be imagined.

Ec and *ecce* have either the nominative or accuſative: Cic. *En crimen*, ...), *En cauſa* (*eſt*). Cic. *Ecce nova turba* (*eſt*); *Ecce miſerum hominem* (*vi...*).

Hem for *ecce* has the accuſative; as, Ter. *Hem aſtutias*; *hem Davum tibi.*

2. *Præpoſitionum.*

68

1. Præpoſitiones quæ re...gunt accuſativum, hiſce ver...ibus continentur:

2. Of Prepoſitions.

68

1. *The prepoſitions which govern the accuſative, are comprehended in theſe verſes:*

Ad, penes, adverſum, cis, citra, adverſus, et *extra,*
Ultra, poſt, præter, juxta, per, pone, ſecundum,
Erga, apud, ante, ſecus, trans, ſupra, propter, et *intra,*
Queis addas *contra, circum, circa, inter, ob, infra.* †

69

2. Præpoſitiones autem ab...ivum regentes ſunt hæ:

69

2. *And the prepoſitions governing the ablative are theſe:*

Hæ ſextum poſcunt; *a, cum, tenus, abs, ab,* et *abſque.*
Atque *palam, pro, præ, clam, de, e, ex, ſine, coram.* †

70

3. Præpoſitiones *in, ſub, ſu...er*, et *ſubter*, regunt accuſa...ivum cùm motus ad locum ...ificatur; ut,

70

3. *The prepoſitions* in, ſub, ſuper, *and* ſubter, *govern the accuſative when motion to a place is ſignified; as,*

Eo in ſcholam, I go into the ſchool. *Sub mœnia tendit*, Virg. ...e goes under the walls. *Incidit ſuper agmina*, Id. It fell ...on the troops. *Ducit ſubter faſtigia tecti*, Id. He brings ...im] under the roof of the houſe.

† See p. 93.

71

¶ At ſi motus vel quies in loco ſignificetur, *in* et *ſub* regunt ablativum, *ſuper* et *ſubter* vel accuſativum vel ablativum; ut,

71

¶ *But if motion or reſt a place be ſignified,* in *and* ſu *govern the ablative,* ſuper *an* ſubter *either the accuſative ablative; as,*

Sedeo vel *diſcurro in ſchola,* I ſit *or* run up and down in th ſchool. *Recubo* vel *ambulo ſub umbra,* I lie *or* walk under th ſhadow. *Sedens ſuper arma,* Virg. Sitting above the arm *Fronde ſuper viridi,* Id. Upon the green graſs. *Venæ ſubt cutem diſperſæ,* Plin. The veins diſperſed under the ſki *Subter littore,* Catul. Beneath the ſhore.

Note 1. That *verſus* and *uſque* are put after their caſes; as, *Italiam ve ſus, Oceanum uſque.* But (as we have already obſerved, p. 93.) theſe a properly adverbs, the prepoſition *ad* being underſtood.

Note 2. That *tenus* is alſo put after its caſe; as, *Mento tenus;* yet Li has *Corcyræ tenus.*

Note 3. That *tenus* governs the genitive plural: 1. When the wo wants the ſingular; as, *Cumarum tenus:* 2. When we ſpeak of things which we have naturally but two; as, *Crurum tenus.*

Note 4. That *a* and *e* are put before conſonants, *ab* and *ex* befo vowels and conſonants, *abs* before *t* and *q.*

Note 5. That *ſubter* hath very rarely the ablative, and only amo poets.

Note 6. That in Engliſh *in* is commonly the ſign of the ablative, *to,* of the accuſative.

Note 7. *In* for *erga, contra, per, ſupra, ad,* &c. governs the accuſati as, *Amor in patriam. Quid ego in te commiſi? Creſcit in dies ſingulos. perium regum in proprios greges,* Hor. *Piſces in cœnam empti.* But *in inter* governs the ablative; as, *In amicis habere,* Sall.

Sub for *circa* governs the accuſative; as, *Sub cœnam.*

Super for *ultra, præter,* and *inter,* governs the accuſative; as, *Super ramantas,* Virg. *Super gratiam ſuam,* Sall. *In ſermone ſuper cœnam* Suet. For *de* it governs the ablative; as, *Super hac re nimis,* Cic.

72

4. ¶ Præpoſitio in compoſitione eundem ſæpe caſum regit quem extra; ut,

72

4. ¶ *A prepoſition oft-ti governs the ſame caſe in co poſition that it does without as,*

Adeamus ſcholam, Let us go to the ſchool. *Exeamus ſch* Let us go out of the ſchool.

Note 1. That this rule takes place only when the propoſition may diſſolved from the verb, and put before the caſe by itſelf; as, *Alloquor trem,* i. e. *Loquor ad patrem.* And even then the prepoſition is freque repeated; as, *Exire è finibus ſuis.* Cæſ.

Note 2. Some verbs compounded with *e* or *ex,* and *præ,* have the a

…tive as well as the ablative; as, Cæſ. *Egredi caſtra, - urbem.* Virg. *Erum- …nabem; Prævehor littus; Prælabi mœnia.* Hor. *Qui præſluit regna Dauni;* …tra and *præter* are underſtood. The firſt at leaſt is ſometimes expreſſed; …, Sall. *Ipſe extra vineas egreſſus.* C. Nep. *Ut egredi extra vallum nemo au- …ſit.*

The prepoſitions are often omitted; as, Virg. *Devenere locos lætos, ſc.* …. Ter. *Nunc id prodeo; Ire inficias, ſuppetias, ſc. ob* or *propter.* Virg. *…aria aſpera juro, ſc. per.*

3. *Interjectionum.*

73

* 1. Interjectiones *O, heu, …proh,* regunt vocativum, in- …rdum accuſativum; ut,

O formoſe puer, O fair boy. …at I am!

3. Of Interjections.

73

1. *The interjections* O, heu, *and* proh, *govern the vocative, and ſometimes the accuſative; as,*

Heu me miſerum! Ah wretch

74

* 2. *Hei* et *væ* regunt dati- …m; ut,

Hei mihi! Ah me! *Væ vobis,* Wo to you.

74

2. Hei *and* væ *govern the dative; as,*

4. *Conjunctionum.*

75

* 1. Conjunctiones *et, ac, …que, nec, neque, aut, vel,* …quædam aliæ, connectunt …iles caſus et modos; ut,

4. Of Conjunctions.

75

1. *The conjunctions* et, ac, atque, nec, neque, aut, vel, *and ſome others, couple like caſes and moods; as,*

Honora patrem et matrem, Honour your father and mother. …*ſcribit nec legit,* He neither writes nor reads.

Note 1. To theſe add *quam, niſi, præterquam, an,* and adverbs of like- …. The reaſon of this conſtruction is, becauſe the words ſo coupled …end all upon the ſame word, which is expreſſed to one of them, and …derſtood to the other.

Note 2. If the ſtructure of the words be different, different caſes muſt …neceſſity be connected. Cic. *Mea et reipublicæ intereſt.*

76

2. *Ut, quo, licet, ne, uti- …nam,* et *dummodo,* ſubjuncti- …modo ferè ſemper adhæ- …nt; ut,

76

2. Ut, quo, licet, ne, utinam, *and* dummodo, *are for the moſt part joined with the ſubjunctive mood; as,*

Lego ut diſcam, I read that I may learn. *Utinam ſaperes,* …ith you were wiſe.

Note 1. To theſe add all indefinite words, that is, interrogatives, whe-

ther nouns, pronouns, adverbs, or conjunctions, when taken in a doubtful or indefinite ſenſe, ſuch as, *quis, uter, quantus*, &c.; *ubi, quo, unde*, &c.; *cur, quare, quamobrem, num, an, anne*, &c. (See p. 91. and 96.) They generally become indefinites when another word comes before them in the ſentence, ſuch as, *ſcio, neſcio, video, intelligo, dubito*, and the like; as, *Ubi eſt frater tuus? Neſcio ubi ſit. An venturus eſt? Dubito an venturus ſit.*

Note 2. Likewiſe the relative *qui*, in a continued diſcourſe, is joined with the ſubjunctive more frequently than with the indicative: Cic. *Nihil eſt quod Deus efficere non poſſit.* Id. *Nullæ opes tantæ eſſe poſſunt, quæ ſine amicorum officiis ſtare poſſint.*

Note 3. *Dum, quum, quod, ſi, ſin, ni, niſi, etſi, etiamſi, antequam, priusquam, ſimul, ſimul ac, ſimul atque, ſimul ut, ſiquidem, quandoquidem, ubi ſi, poſtquam*, &c. are joined ſometimes with the indicative, and ſometimes with the ſubjunctive.

With reſpect to *antequam, poſtquam*, and *priuſquam*, it is carefully to be attended to, (1.) that *ante, poſt*, and *prius*, are often elegantly ſeparated from *quàm*, one or more words being put between them; as, Liv. *Ut omnia opportuna loca præoccupari ante ab eo potuerint, quàm exercitus in Græciam trajiceretur.* Id. *Decimo poſt die quàm exercitum acceperat, caſtra movit.* C. *Filius anno poſt Quæſtor fuit, quàm Conſul Mummius.* Ter. *Pergin' iſtuc prius dijudicare, quàm ſcis quid veri ſiet.* Id. *Hic prius ſe indicârit, quàm ego argentum effecero.* (2.) *Antequam* and *poſtquam* are ſometimes ſo ſeparated that *ante* and *poſt* govern their uſual caſe; as, Sueton. *Ante paucos quàm occideretur menſes.* Nep. *Quartum poſt annum quàm ex Peloponneſo in Siciliam redierat.* (3.) We often ſee *quàm* by itſelf for *poſtquam*; as, Liv. *Quadringenteſimo anno quàm urbs Romana condita erat.* Id. *Alterâ die quàm Brindiſio ſolvit.*

Quàm, with *pridie* before it, is alſo put for *antequam* or *priuſquam*; as, Cic. *Pridie quàm exceſſit e vita.* Id. *Pridie quàm hæc ſcripſi.*

Note 4. *Ut* is elegantly ſuppreſſed after *volo, nolo, malo, rogo, precor, cenſeo, ſuadeo, licet, oportet, neceſſe eſt*, &c.; and likewiſe after *ſine, fac, facito*. Ter. *Fac te eſſe patrem (ut) ſentiat.* Id. *(Ut) ducas, volo, uxorem.*

Note 5. *Ne*, the adverb of forbidding, requires the imperative or ſubjunctive; as, *Ne time*, or *Ne timeas*. (See p. 71.) And after *cave* it is often omitted. Cic. *Cave (ne) facias.* Ter. *Cave (ne) ſentiat.*

Note 6. *Næ*, i. e. *profecto*, put before pronouns, has either the indicative or ſubjunctive; as, Ter. *Næ ego homo ſum infelix.*

Note 7. *Utinam, O ſi, ut* for *utinam*, take the ſubjunctive mood. Cic. *(Opto) utinam ea res ei voluptati ſit.* Virg. *O mihi præteritos referat ſi Juppiter annos.* Ter. *(Opto) ut illum Dii Deæque perdant.*

Note 8. *Ut* for *poſtquam*, and *quomodo*, have the indicative mood. Cic. *Ut ſumus in Ponto, ter frigore conſtitit Iſter.* Ter. *Ut falſus eſt animi!*

Note 9. *Quin* for *cur non* requires the indicative. Cic. *Quin continebis vocem indicem ſtultitiæ veſtræ. Quin* for *imo*, takes the indicative or imperative. Ter. *Quin eſt paratum argentum.* Id. *Quin tu hæc audi. Quin*, *ut non, quod non*, or *quo minus*, has the ſubjunctive. Ter. *Nulla eſt tam facilis res, quin difficilis ſiet, quam invitus facias.* Cic. *Non quin rectum ſit, ſed quia*, &c. *Prorſus nihil abeſt quin ſim miſerrimus.*

Note 10. *Ut* and *quod* are commonly thus diſtinguiſhed: (1.) *Ut* marks the final cauſe, and is for the moſt part uſed for a thing future: Ter. *Rectum eſt? Ut ego faciam.* It is uſed alſo after *adeo, ita, ſic, tam, talis, tantus, tot*, &c. Cic. *Vita quidem talis fuit ut nihil poſſet accedere.*

Quod marks the efficient or impulsive cause, and is said of a thing done: Cic. *Gaudeo, quod te interpellavi.*

A Summary of Syntax; or, The true and most necessary Rules of Construction, to which all the rest are reduced.

First Principles.

I. Every speech (or sentence) consists of a noun and a verb.

II. Every nominative hath its own verb expressed or understood.

III. Every finite verb hath its own nominative expressed or understood.

IV. Every adjective has its own substantive expressed or understood.

The Construction of the Six Cases.

I. Every verb of the finite mood expressed or understood, agrees with its nominative expressed or understood, in number and person; as, *Puer legit*, The boy reads. (*Homines*) *aiunt*, They say. *Romani* (*cœperunt*) *festinare*, The Romans made haste.

II. Every genitive is governed by a substantive expressed or understood; as, *Liber fratris*, The book of my brother. *Est* (*officium*) *patris*, It is the duty of a father.

III. The dative of acquisition (i. e. to which any thing is acquired, or from which it is taken) is joined to any noun or verb expressed or understood; as, *Dedi Petro*, I gave it to Peter. *Cui dedisti?* To whom did you give it? (*Dedi*) *Petro*, To Peter. *Utilis bello*, Profitable for war. *Non est* (*aptus*) *solvendo*, He is not able to pay.

IV. Every accusative is governed by an active verb, or a preposition (p. 93.), expressed or understood; *Amo Deum et* (*amo*) *parentes*, I love God and my parents. *Ad patrem*, To the father. *Abiit* (*ad*) *Londinum*, He hath gone to London. Or it is put before the infinitive expressed or understood; as, *Dicit se scribere*, He says that he is writing. *Licet mihi* (*me*) *esse bonum*, I may be good.

V. Every vocative is placed absolutely, the interjection *O* being sometimes added; as, *O Dave*, O Davus. *Heus, Syre*, Come hither, Syrus.

VI. Every ablative is governed by a preposition (p. 93.) expressed or understood; as, *A puero*, From a child. *Exultat* (*præ*) *gaudio*, He leaps for joy.

Appendix.

I. Every adjective agrees with a ſubſtantive expreſſed or u derſtood; as, *Bonus vir*, A good man. *Triſte* (*negotium*), ſad thing.

II. Subſtantives ſignifying the ſame thing, agree in ca as, *Dominus Deus*, The Lord God.

III. Every infinitive is governed by a verb or noun expre or underſtood; as, *Cupio diſcere*, I deſire to learn. *Dig amari*, Worthy to be loved. *Populus* (*cœpit*) *mirari*, T people wondered.

EXPLANATION.

All conſtruction is either true or apparent, or (as grammarians exp it) juſt or figurative.—True conſtruction is founded upon the eſſe properties of words, and is almoſt the ſame in all languages. Appa conſtruction entirely depends upon cuſtom, which, either for elegan diſpatch, leaves out a great many words otherwiſe neceſſary to mak ſentence perfectly full and grammatical.—The firſt is compriſed in t few fundamental rules, and more fully branched out in the larger ſyn The other is alſo interſperſed through the larger ſyntax, but diſtinguiſ from that which is true by an aſteriſk.

The caſes mentioned in the rules of the larger ſyntax, immediately cover the rules of this ſummary to which they reſpectively belong; t that are true, without any ellipſis; thoſe that are figurative, by ha their ellipſis ſupplied as follows, as they are numbered.

To Rule II. are reduced No. 13. ſupple *negotium*. No. 14. and 47. *de cauſa, gratia*, or *in re, negotio*. No. 15. ſup. *& numero*. No. 21. ſup *negotio*. No. 22. and 23. ſup. *officium, negotium*, &c. No. 24. ſup. *cauſa*, &c.; 2. *ſat*, taken from the verb. No. 29. ſup. *memoriam, noti verba*, &c. No. 30. ſup. *de crimine, pœna*, &c. No. 35. and 36. ſup *re*, or *pretio æris*. No. 40. ſup. *inter negotia*, and *res* [*fert*] *ſe ad ne* No. 42. ſup. *res, negotium*, &c. No. 56. ſup. *in urbe*. No. 60. *Domi, in ædibus*. No. 66. theſe adverbs ſeem to be taken for ſubſtantive nou

To Rule III. is reduced No. 73. ſup. *malum eſt*; or theſe interjec are uſed as ſubſtantives.

To Rule IV. belong No. 18. 53. and 62. ſup. *ad*. No. 33. ſup. *qu* No. 41. i. e. *Eſt inter mea negotia*; *Refert* [or *res fert*] *ſe ad mea ne* &c. No. 58. ſup. *ad* or *in*. No. 64. ſup. *per*. No. 73. ſup. *ſentio*, &c.

To Rule VI. belong No. 12. ſup. *e, ex*, or *cum*. No. 19. ſup. *præ*. 20. ſup. *de, e, ex, cum*, &c. No. 21. ſup. *a, ab*, &c.

No. 34. ſup. *pro*. No. 37. 38. ſup. *a, ab, de, e, ex*. No. 51. and 55 *præ, cum, a, ab, e, ex*, &c. No 54. ſup. *in* or *de*. No. 57. ſup *in*. N ſup. *a, ab, e, ex*. No. 62. ſup. *in*. No. 64. ſup. *in* or *pro*. No. 65. *ſub, cum, a, ab*.

Note 1. That under verbs muſt alſo be comprehended participles runds, and ſupines, becauſe the general ſignification of verb is includ them.

Note 2. That as a conſequence of this, a learned grammarian in ouſly ſuppoſes, that the dative and infinitive are always governed

…b; and that when they ſeem to be governed by a noun, the participle …ſt is underſtood; as, *Utilis* [*exiſtens*] *bello. Pollio præſidium* [*exiſtens*] …. *Dignus* [*exiſtens*] *amari.*

Note 3. That the vocative is properly no part of a ſentence, but the …e by which we excite one to hear or execute what we ſay. Therefore …en the vocative is put before the imperative, as frequently happens, the …minative *tu* or *vos* is underſtood; and that even though theſe words be …dy expreſſed in the vocative; as, *Tu Jacobe, lege*, i. e. *O tu Jacobe, tu* ….

Note 4. That the vocative is ſufficient of itſelf, and does not neceſſarily …uire the intejection *O*. See Voſſius, lib. 7. cap. 69. and Sanctius, …4. *De ellipſi verb.* audio *et* narro.

Of Irregular or Figurative Syntax.

There are four kinds of it. For either, 1. Some words are wanting to …plete the ſentence; and this figure is called *Ellipſis*: or, 2. Something …undant, which is called *Pleonaſmus*: or, 3. There is a change either …the parts of ſpeech, or their accidents, which figure is *Enallage*: or, The order of the words is confuſed, which is *Hyperbaton.*

Ellipſis, as the term imports, is when a word or more are wanting; as, …Caſtoris, *ſc. ædes. Sunt quos hoc genus minime juvat, ſc. homines. Quid …is? ſc. dicam. Saturno rege, ſc. exiſtente. Vulnerantur ampliùs ſexcenti, …quam. Pridie nonas, ſc. ante. Me miſerum! ſe. O* or *heu.*——To this be-…,

Appoſition; as, *Urbs Roma*, i. e. *Urbs exiſtens* or *quæ eſt Roma*;

Synecdoche, i. e. when the ablative of the part or adjunct is changed into …accuſative κατὰ, *ſecundum*, or *quod ad*, being underſtood; as, Virg. *Ex-…mentem nequit*; Liv. *Fractus membra*: ſee p. 107. No. 12. *n.* 4.; and *Aſyndeton*; which is the want of the conjunction; as, *Deus optimus, max-…* Cic. *Abiit, exceſſit, evaſit, erupit.*

The *Ellipſes*, in a larger ſenſe, are according to No. 9. and its notes. I …ll therefore only take notice of the

Prolepſis, which happens when its parts, differing from it both in num-…r and perſons, are put after a whole, without the repetition of the verb …ubjective.—In *numbers*; as, Liv. *Principes utrinque pugnam ciebant; ab …nis Mettius Curtius; ab Romanis Hoſtus Hoſtilius.* Sall. *Exercitus hoſtium …, alter ab urbe, alter a Gallia, obſtant.*— In *perſons*, (and *numbers*); as, …. *Ego vapulando, ille verberando, uſque ambo defeſſi ſumus.* Virg. *Boni …nam convenimus ambo, tu calamos inflare leves, ego dicere verſus*, i. e. *Ego …ri, bonus inflare calamos, tu conveniſti, bonus dicere verſus.*

Prolepſis is explicit or implicit. The firſt is when the whole and its …ts are expreſſed; as, Liv. *Conſules, Sulpicius in dextro, Petilius in læva …m conſiſtunt.*

Implicit Prolepſis is when the whole, or parts, are ſuppreſſed; as, Virg. …pulerantque greges Corydon et Thyrſis in unum, *Thyrſis oves, Corydon diſten-…ſſe capellas*, i. e. *Paſtores Thyrſis et Corydon.* Ter. *Curemus æquam uter-… partem, tu alteram, ego item alteram*, i. e. *Nos uterque, ego meam, tu …m partem curemus.* Ov. *Veſtras quiſque redite domos*; i. e. *Vos redite domos, …ſuam, altus ſuam.*

Pleonaſmus is the redundance of a word or words in diſcourſe, but with …emphaſis; as, Ter. *Hiſce oculis vidi*; *Nuſquam gentium*, &c.; *Fac me, …ſiam*, &c. &c. &c.——Under it may be comprehended, 1. *Parelcon. Ege-…, tute, hujuſce, agedum, adeſdum, quiſnam*, &c. 2. *Polyſyndeton.* Virg. *…Eurusque Notuſque ruunt, creberque procellis Africus.* 3. *Hendiadys*, i. e.

Ἐν διὰ δυοῖν. Virg. *Pateris libamus et auro*, for *aureis pateris*. Ter. *rum et veſtem*, for *auream veſtem*. 4. *Periphraſis*. Virg. *Urbs Troja*, *Troja*. Ter. *Vos oratos volo*, for *oro*, &c.

Enallage comprehends, 1. *Antimeria*. Hor. *Si quid in Flacco viri eſt*, *in me*. Ter. *Sic vita erat*, for *talis*. 2. *Enallage* ſtrictly ſo called. *lus*, for *ſceleſtus*. Cic. *Ponit perſonam amici*, *cum induit judicis*, for *de* 3. *Heteroſis*. Ter. *Ego quoque una pereo*, *quod mihi eſt carius*, for *qui ſum carior*. *Hoſtis*, *miles*, *pedes*, *eques*, for *hoſtes*, *milites*, *pedites*, *eq* Ter. *Tu ſi hic ſis*, *aliter ſentias*, for *eſſes*, *ſentires*. 4. *Antiptoſis*. Ter *lum ut vivat optant*, for *Ut ille vivat*. 5. *Syneſis*. Ter. *Scelus poſtquo dificatus eſt virginem*, for *ſceleſtus*, Liv. *Latium Capuaque agro multati Latini et Campani*. Sall. *Pars in crucem acti*, *pars beſtiis objecti*. 6. *A luthon*. Ter. *Nam nos omnes*, *quibus eſt alicunde aliquis objectus labos*, *quod eſt interea tempus*, *priuſquam id reſcitum eſt*, *lucro eſt*. Here there i thing with which *nos omnes* agrees; for the author began as if he w ſay *lucro habemus*, and ended as if he had ſaid *nobis omnibus*. 7. *Hel mus*. *Abſtine irarum*; *Deſine querelarum*, &c. 8. *Archoiſmus*. *Aul aulæ*; *Duint* for *dent*, &c. Cic. *Hanc ſibi rem præſidio ſperant fut* See p. 87.

Hyperbaton is when the uſual order of words and ſentences is conf There are various kinds of it, viz. 1. *Anaſtrophe*. Virg. *Italiam co Spem metumque inter dubii*. Lucr. *Et facit are*, for *arefacit*. 2. *Hy proteron*. Ter. *Valet atque vivit*, for *Vivit atque valet*. Virg. *Mori atque in media arma ruamus*, for *In media arma ruamus*, *et moriamur*. 3 *pallage*. Virg. *Dare claſſibus Auſtros*, for *cloſſes Auſtris*, i. e. *ventis*. *Necdum illis labra admovi*, for *illa labris*. Cic. *Gladium vaginâ vacuum Vaginam gladio vacuam*. 4. *Synchyſis*. Hor. *Namque pilâ lippis inim et ludere crudis*, for *lippis et crudis*. 5. *Tmeſis*. Virg. *Septem ſubjecta* for *ſeptentrioni*. Id. *Super unus eram*, for *ſupereram*. Ter. *Qua mo animo*, for *quacunque*. Cic. *Per mihi gratum feceris*, for *pergratum*. 6 *renthesis*. Virg. *Tityre*, *dum redeo* (*brevis eſt via*) *paſce capellas*. Hor *tera de genere hoc* (*adeo ſunt multa*). 7. *Hyperbaton* ſtrictly ſo called. *Interea reges* ——— *procedunt caſtris*, Virg. Æn. xii. 161.—169.

CHAP. II.

Of Exposition, or Resolution.

Expoſition, or Reſolution is the unfolding of a ſentence, and plac the parts of it, whether expreſſed or underſtood, in their prop der, that the true ſenſe and meaning of it may appear.

I. A ſentence is either ſimple or compound.

1. A ſimple ſentence is that which hath one finite verb in it.

2. A compound ſentence is that which hath two or more ſuch ve it joined together by ſome couples.

Theſe couples are of four ſorts. 1. The relative *qui*. 2. Some co rative words, ſuch as, *tantus*, *quantus*; *talis*, *qualis*; *tam*, *quam*, &c. definite words, [ſee p. 96. and 138]. 4. Conjunctions.

In a ſimple ſentence there are two things to be conſidered; —1. ſential; 2. Its accidental parts.

. The essential parts of a sentence are a nominative and a verb.
. The accidental parts are of four kinds.—1. Such as excite attention, the vocative and exciting particles; as, *O*, *en*, *ecce*, *heus*, &c. 2. Such serve to introduce a sentence, or to shew its dependence upon what was d before; as, *jam*, *hactenus*, *quandoquidem*, *cum*, *dum*, *interea*, &c. 3. Such limit the general and indefinite signification either of the nominative or b, and these are substantive nouns. 4. Such as qualify and explain m, viz. adjectives, adverbs, and prepositions, with their cases. Some- es a part of a compound sentence supplies the place of those two last ds of words.
II. The order of words in a sentence is either natural or artificial.
. Natural order is when the words of a sentence naturally follow one er another, in the same order with the conceptions of our minds.
. Artificial order is when words are so ranged as to render them most reable to the ear; but so as the sense be not thereby obscured.
III. A sentence may be resolved from the artificial into the natural or- by the following rules:
. Take the vocative, exciting, and introductory words, where they are nd.
. The nominative.
. Words limiting or explaining it, i. e. words agreeing with, or govern- by it, or by one another successively (till you come to the verb) where y are found.
. The verb.
. Words limiting or explaining it, &c. where they are found, to the d of the sentence.
. Supply every where the words that are understood.
. If the sentence is compound, take the parts of it severally, as they end upon one another, proceeding with each of them as before.

EXAMPLE.

Vale igitur, mi Cicero, tibique persuade esse te quidem mihi carissimum; sed ulto fore cariorem, si talibus monumentis præceptisque lætabere. Cic. Off. 3.

"Farewell then, my [son] Cicero, and assure yourself that you are indeed y dear unto me; but shall be much dearer, if you shall take delight in h writings and instructions."

This compound sentence is resolved into these five simple sentences.

. *Igitur mi* [fili] *Cicero*, [tu] *vale*, 2. *et* [tu] *persuade tibi te esse quidem ca- mum* [filium] *mihi*; 3. *sed* [tu persuade tibi te] *fore cariorem* [filium mi- i] *multo* [negotio], 4 *si* [tu] *lætabere talibus monumentis*, 5. *et* [si tu læta- re talibus] *præceptis*.

Note 1. That interrogative words stand always first in a sentence, unless preposition comes before them.

Note 2. That negative words stand immediately before the verb.

Note 3. That relatives are placed before the word by which they are verned, unless it is a preposition.

Note 4. That the subjunctive mood is used in compound senten- s.

Note 5. That the parts of a compound sentence are separated from one ther by marks called *interpunctions*. 1. Those that are smaller, na- d *clauses*, by this mark [,], called *comma*. 2. Those that are greater, ed *members*, by this mark [;], called *semicolon*. 3. Those that are still

greater members by this mark [:], called *colon*. But when the senten whether ſimple or compound, is fully ended, if it be a plain affirmat or negation, it is cloſed by this mark [.], called a *point*. And when has place, the next ſentence muſt begin with a capital.

There is yet another interpunction, common in the Latin claſſics, c ed a *ſemiperiod*, or leſſer point, placed at the very foot of the letter, not followed by a capital. This is thought a mean between a colon an full period.

The pauſe to be obſerved in each of theſe is this. The period i panſe in duration double of the colon, the colon is double of the ſemi lon, and the ſemicolon double of the comma: ſo that they are in ſame proportion to one another, as the ſemibref, the minim, the crotch and the quaver, in muſic. The preciſe duration cannot be defined; both in diſcourſe and muſic the ſame compoſition may be rehearſed, i quicker or ſlower time; but as the proportion between the notes rem ever the ſame in muſic, ſo it muſt continue the ſame as to the pauſe be obſerved in diſcourſe.

When a ſentence is thrown in that hath little or no connection with reſt, it is incloſed in what we call *a parenthеſis*, marked thus ( ).—If a q ſtion be aſked, this mark [?], called *a point of interrogation*, is annexed.— wonder, or ſome other ſudden paſſion, is ſignified, this mark [!], ca *a point of admiration*.

A capital, for the ſake of brevity, is often put for a whole word; *A.* denotes *Aulus*; *C. Caius*; *D. Decimus*; *K. Kæſo*; *L. Lucius*; *M. M cus*; *N. Numerius*; *P. Publius*; *Q. Quinctius*; *T. Titus*.

Some have two lettters; as, *Ap. Appius*; *Cn. Cucius*; *Op. Opiter*; *Spurius*; *Ti. Tiberius*. And ſome three; as, *Mam. Mamercus*; *Sex. tus*. So *F.* means *filius*; *N. Nepos*. Thus *P. C.* ſignifies *Patres Conſcri P. R. Populus Romanus*; *R. P. Reſpublica*; *S. C. Senatusconſultum*; *U Urbs condita*; *S. Salutem*; *S. P. D. Salutem plurimam dicit*; *S. P. Q. R. natus populuſque Romanus*; *D. D. D. Dat, dicat, dedicat*; *D. D. C. Q. cat, dedicat, conſecratque*. *H. S.* or *L. L. S.* is *ſeſtertium*, i. e. two aſſes a half; *Imp. Imperator*; *Coſ. Conſul*; *Coſſ. Conſules*; *Aug. Auguſtus*.

There were five letters made uſe of by the Romans inſtead of numb viz. C. I. L. V. X. Their value and place is in this manner: I. ſignifie V. 5; X. 10; L. 50; C. 100; IↃ. 500; IↃↃ. 5000; CCIↃↃ. 10,0 IↃↃↃ. 50,000; CCCIↃↃↃ. 100,000. And of theſe any number may made up. Thus II. is 2; III. 3; VI. 6; XV. 15; LXVII. 67, &c.

Note. If a leſſer number be put before a greater, it is ſubtracted th from; as, IV. makes 4; IX. 9; XL. 40; XC. 90; IC. 99, &c.

PART FOURTH.

Of PROSODY.

PROSODY treats of the quantity of ſyllables, and the art of ma verſe.

A ſyllable with reſpect to quantity is long, ſhort, and common, ſometimes the one, ſometimes the other. A ſhort ſyllable, marked thu is pronounced quick; as, *pĭus*. A long one, marked thus -, has t the time of a ſhort; as, *fēlix*.

If words are polyſyllables, *i. e.* of three or more ſyllables, they are divided into *firſt*, *middle*, and *laſt*; the third from the end is the *antepenultima*, that next to the laſt is the *penultima*.

If the words are diſſyllable, *i. e.* of two ſyllables, they are named the *firſt* and the laſt. Monoſyllables are reckoned as laſt ſyllables.

The quantity of ſyllables is known two ways, *viz.* by authority or the harmony of a good author, and by rules.—Which are general or ſpecial.

General Rules.

1. A vowel before a vowel in Latin words is ſhort; as, *Dĕus*. Alſo *h*; becauſe *h* is not reckoned a letter in verſe.

Exc. ius in the genitive in proſe is long; in verſe common; as, *unius*. *Alius* is always long, and *alterius* always ſhort; *obe* common; *Pompeĭ*, &c. are long; *Diana* common. *Aër*, *dius*, and *eheu*, *aulai*, and the like, are long.

2. Greek words, when a vowel comes before another, are, ſome long, others ſhort. A ſyllable is long by poſition, when a vowel comes before two conſonants: 1. In the ſame word; as, *arma*: or, 2. When one word ends, and the other begins with a conſonant; as, *errabat ſilvâ*: or, 3. When a double conſonant follows a vowel; as, *axis*, *gaza*; even *j*, as *ejicio*, *rejicio*; except the compounds of *jugum*; as, *bĭjŭgus*, &c.

3. When a mute and a liquid (*l* and *r* in Latin, and *m* and *n* only in Greek words are liquids) in the ſame ſyllable, are put after a vowel naturally ſhort, this vowel becomes in verſe common, but in proſe continues ſhort, as the firſt in *agris*, the middle in *volucris*. Three things are required to make this poſition, (called commonly feeble): 1. That the vowel go before the liquid; 2. That it be in the ſame ſyllable with it; and, 3. That the vowel be naturally ſhort.

4. A contraction makes the vowel long; as, *cōgo*, from *coago*; *alīus*, from *aliius*; *tibicen*, from *tibiicen*; alſo *ſis*, for *ſivis*; *ſodes*, for *ſi audes*; *mālo*, for *magis volo*; *nolo*, for *non volo*.

5. Both Greek and Latin diphthongs are long; as, *fœnus*, *Eubœa*.

Exc. Præ before a vowel is ſhort; as, *præeo*.

Special Rules.

Of the firſt and middle ſyllables.

1. Derivatives have the quantity of their primitives; as, *ămicus*, from *amo*. *Exc. ſuſpĭcio*, *ſĕdes*, *hūmanus*, *pēnuria*, *mōbilis*, *hŭmor*, *jūmentum*, *fōmes*, from *ſuſpĭcor*, &c.; but we have *ărĭſta*, *dux dŭcis*, *lŭcerna*, *ſŏpor*, *ſtăbilis*, *fĭdes*, *dĭtionis*, *quăſillus*, &c. ſhort; though we find *āreo*, *dūco*, &c. long.

2. Compounds take the quantity of the ſimple words of which they conſiſt; as, *lĕgo*, *rĕlĕgo*; *legi*, *relegi*; and this even though the vowel or diphthong be changed; as, *cădo*, *incīdo*; *cædo*, *occīdo*. *Exc. Nihĭlum*, *dīco*, &c. *verĭdĭcus*, &c. *agnĭtus*, *cognĭtus*, *innūba*, et *pronūba*; *ambītus*, the participle is long; but *ambĭtus* and *ambĭtio* follow *-ĭtum*, the ſupine of *eo*; *connubium*, from *nūbo* is common.

3. Prepoſitions in compoſition retain their quantity; as, *āmitto*, *ăboleo*; but *admitto*, &c. is long by poſition; and *prŏhibeo*, &c. is ſhort by rule 1.

4. *Pro* is ſhort in Greek but long in Latin compounds; as, *prŏlogus*, *prōcurro*. Exc. *prŏfundus*, *prŏfugus*, *prŏnepos*, &c. *prŏfeſtus*, *prŏfaris*, *prŏ-*

fiteor, *prŏfanus*, *prŏfecto*, *prŏcella*, *prŏtervus*, *prŏpago*, lineage. These a
common: *Propino*, the verb *propago*, *profundo*, *propello*, *procuro*, &c. an
Proserpina.

10. *Se* and *di* are long; as, *sēparo*, *dīluco*. Exc. *dĭtimo*, *dĭsertus*. *
is short; as, *remitto*. Exc. *rĕfert*, impersonal.

11. When, in compound words, *i*, *o*, and *e*, terminate the first wor
they are short both in Greek and Latin words; as, *Omnĭpotens dimete
nĕfas*, *valĕdico*.

Exc. 1. Declined words are long; as, *quīdam*. Also compounds th
may be separated; as, *ludīmagister*, or *magister ludi*.

2. *Īdem* masculine is long; but *ĭdem* neuter is short.

3. Compounds with *dies*, as *biduum*, and words compounded with *int
retro*, *contra*, and *quando*, are long; as, *intrōduco*, &c.; also *aliōquin*; b
quandōquidem is short.

4 Greek nouns with ωμεγα are long; as, *Minōtaurus*.

12. Preterites and supines of two syllables have the first long; as, *l
cāsum*, *vīsum*. Exc. *Bĭbi*, *scĭdi*, *fĭdi*, *tŭli*, *ădi*, *stĕti*, with their co
pounds, and *fero*, *sātum*; *cieo*, *cītum*; *lino*, *lĭtum*; *sino*, *sĭtum*; *sisto*, *stătu
eo*, *ĭtum*; *do dătum*; *obruo*, *obrŭtum*, *queo*, *quĭtum*, *reor*, *rătus*. Doub
perfects have both syllables short; as, *cĕcĭdi*, &c. Exc. *cecīdi*, *pepēdi*

13. The preterites and supines of polysyllables have the quantity
their present. Exc. *pono*, *pŏsui*, *pŏsĭtum*; *gigno*, *gĕnui*, *gĕnĭtum*; *possi
pŏtui*; *Volvo*, *vŏlūtum*; *solvo*, *sŏlūtum*; but the penult in polysyllab
supines in *-atum*, *-etum*, *-utum*, and from the perfect *ivi*,
long; yet *itum* otherwise is short; as, *cubui*, *cubĭtum*.

Of the Crement of Nouns.

The crement is the syllable or syllables by which the oblique cases
ceed the nominative: but when the genitive (which is the rule to all
other cases) exceeds it by one syllable, the penult is the crement;
rex, *rēgis*; *sermo*, *-ōnis*. Note. *iter*, *supellex*, and the compounds of
put ending in *ps*, have a double crement in the singular; as, *iter*, *itĭ
ris*; *supellex*, *supellectĭlis*; *anceps*, *ancĭpĭtis*.

All nouns of the third declension have another crement in the da
and ablative plural; as, *rēgĭbus*, *itĭnĕrĭbus*. For the quantity of the c
ments, see the formation of nouns, p. 19.

Of the Crement of Verbs.

When any tense or person exceeds the second person singular in a
lable or syllables, that verb is said to have one, two, or three cremen
as, *amas*, *amāmus*, *amābāmus*, *amābāmĭni*. For deponent verbs, a seco
person active must be feigned; as, *conor*, *conas*, *conātur*, *conābātur*, *co
bāmĭni*. The quantities are all marked in the conjugations: only
serve, that *do*, and its compounds, shorten *a* of the first crement; as,
mus, *dăbunt*, *dăre*; *circumdāmus*, *venundātio*; and that in verbs of
fourth, when the present and the preterite have the same letters, the
nult of that is long, but of this it is short; as, *venīmus*, *reperīmus*; *v
mus*, *reperĭmus*; and that the poets sometimes shorten *e* before *-runt*;
Virg. *stetĕrunt*; Ov. *dedĕrunt*.

Final syllables.

1. *a* is short in words declinable; as, *musă*, *templă*. Exc. 1. The abla

of the first declenſion is long; as, *pœnā*. 2. The vocative of Greek nouns in *as* is long; as, *Æneā*, *Pallā*.

3. *a* final in verbs and particles is long; as, *amā*, *fruſtrā*. Exc. *Ità*, *quā*, *ejā*, *pută*, (taken as an adverb). * *Contra* and *ultra*, and numerals in *-ginta*, are but rarely ſhort.

3. Words in *e* are ſhort; as, *natĕ*, *currĕ*. Exc. 1. All of the firſt and fifth declenſions are long; as, *Calliopē*, *fidē*, and *famē* (once of the fifth). *Ubi, die*, and the adverbs from them; as, *quarē*, &c. 2. Plural nouns; as, *cetē*, *melē*, *Tempē*. 3. Imperatives; as, *docē*, *manē*; but we find *cave*, *nē*, *vide*, ſhort. 4. *Me, te, ſe*, are long; but the enclitics *que, ve, ne*, and the ſyllabic adjections, *-pte, -ce, -te*; as, *ſuaptĕ*, *hujuſcĕ*, *tutĕ*, are ſhort. 5. Adverbs from nouns of the ſecond declenſion are long; as, *doctē*, &c.; alſo all ſuperlatives; as, *doctiſſimē*; but we find *bene, male, ſuperne, inferne*, ſhort. 6. *Ferme, fere*, and *ohe*, are long.

4. Words in *i* are long; as, *patrī*, *meī*, *docerī*. Exc. 1. Greek vocatives are ſhort; as, *Alexĭ*. 2. Greek datives increaſing in the third declenſion are common; as, *Minoidi*; alſo *mibi, tibi, ſibi*; and *ibi, cui*, (of two ſyllables), *niſi, ubi*, and *quaſi*; but theſe are far more frequently ſhort; which *tuti, necubi*, and *ſicubi*, are always.

5. Words in *o* are common; as, *virgo, amo*. Exc. Monoſyllables are long; as, ō, dō, ſtō, prō; alſo Greek feminine nouns; as, *Didō*, *Sapphō*; and the dative and ablative of the ſecond declenſion; as, *Dominō*, *Deō*, with Greek genitives from the Attic dialect; as, *Athō*. 2. Adverbs from nouns are long; as, *certō*, *crebrō*, *falsō*, *meritō*, *paulō*, &c.; alſo *quo, eo*, and their compounds; and *illo, idcirco, citro, intro, retro, ultrò*: but yet *ſero, ſero, mutuo, poſtremo, vero*, although moſt frequently long, are ſometimes ſhort. *Modo, quomodo, dummodo, poſtmodo*, are ſhort. 3. Theſe are moſt frequently ſhort: *ambo, duo, ſcio, neſcio, illico, imo, cedo*, (ſay or give), *ego, homo*, and *cito*. 4. Gerunds in *do* with Virg. are always long; but with others ſometimes ſhort; as, *vigilando*. *Ergō* (a noun) is long; but common when an adverb.

6. Words in *u* are long; as, *vultu*; and words in *y* are ſhort; as, *molў*.

7. Words in *b, d, l, r*, are ſhort; as, *ab, apud, ſemel, precor*; but *ſal, ſol, nil*; *par*, with its compounds, *far, lar, nar, cur, fur*; alſo nouns having *cris*; as, *crater, Iber, ver*, &c. and *aër, æther*, with *Job*, &c. are long; however *David, Daniel*, &c. alſo *Celtiber*, are common.

Words in *c* are long; as, *ac, ſic, illuc*. Exc. *Nec* and *donec* are ſhort; but the verb *fac*, and *hic* the pronoun, are common.

8. *m* before a vowel is now cut off; but it was retained and ſhort with Ennius, &c.; as, - *militŭm octo*.

9. *n* is long, as, *en, ſplen*. Exc. Nouns in *-en*, *-ĭnis*, are ſhort; as, *carmen*; alſo *Ilion, Orpheon, Alexin, Troaſin*, &c. and *an, in, forſan, forſitan, tamen, attamen, viden'*.

10. *as* is long; as, *mas, pietas*. Exc. Greek nouns, with *ădis* in the genitive; as, *Arcas, lampas*; alſo *anas, -atis*, and *crateras, heroas*, &c. are ſhort.

11. *es* is long; as, *quies, res, doces*. Exc. 1. *Arcades, gryphes*, &c. Greek nouns; alſo *es* from *ſum, abes*, &c. and *penes*, a prepoſition, are ſhort. 2. Greek neuters are ſhort; as, *cacoëthes*. 3. Latin nouns in *es* (of which the penult of the increaſing genitive is ſhort) are alſo ſhort; as, *ales*, &c. but *Ceres, paries, aries, abies, pes*, and its compounds, are long.

12. *is* is ſhort; as, *turris*. Exc. All plural caſes are long; as, *pennis, penis*. 2. *is* in the nominative is long, when the genitive ends in *ītis*,

īnis, or *entis*; as, *lis*, *Samnis*, *Salamis*, *Simois*. 3. *gratis* and *foris*, alſo g and *vis*, (both the noun and the verb) are long. 4. The ſecond perſo ſingular are long, when the ſame perſons plural end in *ītis*; as, *aud -ītis*, &c. 5. *-ris* in the future ſubjunctive is common.

13. *os* is long; as, *flos*, *nepos*. Exc. The Greek genitive in *os* is ſho as *Arcadŏs*; alſo *compŏs*, *impŏs*, *ŏs oſſis*, and *exŏs*; and the Greek no natives and vocatives in *os* of the ſecond declenſion; as, *Clarŏs*, &c.; o ly *Androgeos* in the Attic dialect is long; alſo *chaŏs*, *melŏs*, *epŏs*.

14. *us* is ſhort; as, *annus*. Exc. 1. Monoſyllables are long; as, *gr ſus*, *thus*, *mus*; alſo the genitives of the ſecond declenſion; as, *Cliūs*, & and *fructŭs*, *manŭs*. 2. Likewiſe nouns that have their genitives in -ŭ ūtis, ūdis, *antis*, and ōdis; as, *tellus*, *virtus*, *incus*, &c.; alſo *Panthūs* a *Jesūs*.

15. *ys* is ſhort; as, *chelys*; but *Tęthys* is ſometimes long. 2. The which have alſo *-yn* in the nominative are long; as, *Trachys*, or *Trachy*

16. *t* is ſhort; as, *caput*. The laſt ſyllable of a verſe is always co mon.

VERSIFICATION.

Feet in poetry are of two, three, or four ſyllables. The moſt co mon are theſe:

Of two ſyllables.

Spondeus, two long: *ōmnēs*. Pyrrichius, two ſhort: *Dĕŭs*.

Iambus, a ſhort and a long: *pĭōs*. Trocheus, a long and a ſho *sērvăt*.

Of three ſyllables.

Dactylus, a long and two ſhort: *cārmĭnă*.
Anapæſtus, two ſhort and a long: *ănĭmōs*.
Tribrachys, three ſhort: *mĕlĭŭs*.
Moloſſus, three long: *dēlēctānt*.
Amphimacer, a long, a ſhort, and a long: *īnsĭtō*.
Bacchius, a ſhort and two long: *dolōrēs*.
Amphibrachys, a ſhort, a long, and a ſhort: *bŏnōrĕ*.

Of four ſyllables.

Choriambus, a long, two ſhort, and a long, (a trochee and iambu *nēbĭlĭtās*.

Epitritus ſecundus, a long, a ſhort, and two long, (a trochee and ſp dee): *pœnĭtēntēs*.

Ionicus a minore, two ſhort and two long, (a pyrrichius and ſponde *prŏpĕrābānt*.

There are three things to be conſidered in verſe, viz. *Cæſura*, *Depoſi* and *Scanning*.

Cæſura is when a ſyllable remains in the end of a word after a comp foot; and has its name from *cædo*, to cut; becauſe that ſyllable is cu from the reſt, and often makes the firſt of the next foot. Of this t are four kinds, viz. *Triemimeris*, *Penthemimeris*, *Heptbemimeris*, and *E mimeris*; which names they obtain from their place in the verſe: fo the firſt, the *cæſura* is the ſyllable after the firſt foot or two half-feet; the ſecond, the *cæſura* is after two feet, or four half-feet; the *cæſura*

the third is after three feet, or ſix half-feet; and the *Ennemimeris* is in the ninth half-foot, or in the ſyllable after the fourth foot.

With regard to *Depoſition*, (called alſo *Clauſula*), an Acatalectic verſe is when there are a juſt number of feet, neither more nor leſs; a Catalectic when a ſyllable is wanting; Brachycatalectic when a whole foot is wanting; and Hypercatalectic, or Hypermeter, when there are one or two ſyllables more than enough. One who knows but a little of the Greek, will be at no loſs either for theſe terms that go before the *Cæſuras*, or the names that follow.

Before one ſets about the ſcanning of verſes, he muſt be well acquainted with theſe ſix figures, *Synalæpha*, *Ecthlipſis*, *Synæreſis*, *Diæreſis*, *Syſtole*, and *Diaſtole*.

Synalæpha is when a vowel or diphthong in the end of a word is ſtruck off, becauſe of a vowel or diphthong beginning the next. Thus: *Terra antiqua*, muſt be changed into *Terr' antiqua; Atque ubere*, into *Atqu' ubere; In ordine habetis*, into *Un' ordin' abetis;* (*h* is not accounted a letter); *Dardanidæ infenſi*, into *Dardanid' infenſi.*

Ecthlipſis ſtrikes off *m* final, with its preceding vowel, becauſe of the vowel following; as, *Ferendum eſt*, becomes *Ferend' eſt.*

Both the *Synalæpha* and *Ecthlipſis* are found in the laſt ſyllable of the verſe where the eliſion happens, becauſe of the vowel that begins the next.—*Vulnere cœlumque — adſpicit*, which is ſcanned thus: *Vulnere cœlum — Qu'adſpicit.—Tecta Latinorum — ardua; Tecta Latino—r' ardua.* Such verſes are Hypercatalectic or Hypermeter, becauſe a ſyllable remains to be carried to the next verſe.

Synæreſis is properly the uniting of two vowels into a diphthong; as, *Phaëthon*, into *Phœthon*; *Theſeï*, into *Theſei*; *huic cui*, two ſyllables into one. It is called *ſynecphoneſis*, *epiſynalæpha*, *ſynizeſis*, when there is an eliſion of one of the two vowels in the ſame word; as, *aurâ*, for *aureâ*; *quâd*, for *quoad*; *unâdem*, for *unâ eâdem*; *alvâria*, for *alvearia*; *dêro*, for *deero*; *dinde*, for *deinde*; *unôdem*, for *uno eodem*, &c. &c. &c. Alſo *Genva labant*, for *Genua labant*; *arjetat*, for *arietat*; *abjete*, for *abiete.* Virg, &c.

Diæreſis (called alſo *Dialyſis*) is the diſſolution of one ſyllable into two; as, *aulai*, *aurai*, for *aulæ*, *auræ*; *Orpheüs*, *Naïadum*, for *Orpheus*, *Naiadum*; *Silüæ*, for *Silvæ*; *evolüiſſe*, for *evolviſſe*; *ſuëtæ*, for *ſuetæ*; *relanguït*, for *relanguit.*

Syſtole is the ſhortening of a ſyllable naturally long; as, *ŏrion*, for *ōrion.*

Diaſtole (*Ectaſis*) is the lengthening of a ſyllable naturally ſhort; as, *Priamides*, Virg. though *Priamus* be ſhort; alſo *relligio*, for *religio*, &c.

The figures in ſpeech (ſee p. 87.) belong as much to proſody as to etymology.

Of Scanning.

For the ſake of brevity, this is confined to Hexameter and Pentameter verſe, with the odes of Horace.

Of Hexameter or Heroic Verſe.

1. This conſiſts of ſix feet; of which the fifth is a dactyl, and the ſixth a ſpondee; the other four have the one or the other at the pleaſure of the poet.

O fortunati nimiùm ſua ſi bona nôrint.

Scanned thus:

1.	2.	3.	4.	5.	6.
ō fōr-	tūnā-	tī nĭmĭ-	ŭm sŭă	sī bŏnă	nōrīnt

Sometimes, however, there is a ſpondee in the fifth place; and th it is called a *Spondaic verſe*. The poet uſes this when he wants to expr gravity and majeſty, ſlowneſs, great grief, or the like. It commonly h a dactyl in the fourth place, and the laſt word of four ſyllables; as,

1.	2.	3	4.	5	6.
Cārā Dē-	um sŏbŏ-	les māg-	nūm jŏvĭs	īncrē-	mēntūm.

It gives great grace to a poem, when the verſe is ſo adapted to the ſ ject, that dactyls and ſpondees are uſed as that requires. The difficu in plying the hammers, and thereby the ſlowneſs of the ſtrokes, is no painted by Virgil in this verſe:

1.	2.	3.	4.	5.	6.
īll' ĭn-	tĕr fē-	sē māg-	nā vi	brāchĭă	tōllūnt.

The rapid courſe of a horſe is ſhown by many dactyls, thus:

1.	2.	3.	4.	5.	6.
Quādrŭpĕ-	dāntĕ pŭ-	trĕm sŏnĭ-	tū quătĭt	ūngŭlă	cāmpūm.

				5.	6.
			—*Tum*	sæva ſo-	nare

1.	2.	3.	4.	5.	6.
Verbera,	tum ſtri-	dor fer-	ri trac-	tæque că-	tenæ. VIRG.

A man of an ear will, when he repeats theſe lines, be apt to fancy hears the crack of the *Furies* whips, and the rattling and clank of the fernal chains.

1.	2.	3.	4.	5.	6.
Monſtr' hor-	rend' in-	form' in-	gens cui	lumen a-	demptum

Theſe harſh eliſions, and heavy robuſt ſyllables, in this deſcription the hideous Cyclops, naturally expreſs the enormous bulk and bru fierceneſs of that miſhapen and horrid monſter.

Thoſe verſes in the firſt Georg.

1.	2.	3.	4.	5.	6.
—*Ter*	ſunt co-	nati 'm-	ponere	Pelio	Oſſam,
Scilicet,	atqu' Oſ-	ſæ fron-	dos 'in-	volver' O-	lympum.

are contrived with great art to repreſent the prodigious pains and labour giants underwent in heaping mountains upon mountains to ſcale hea and the ſlowneſs of their progreſs in that unwieldy work.

Of Pentameter Verſe.

1. This is divided into two hemiſtichs: the firſt hath two feet, (a da and ſpondee at pleaſure), with a Cæſura or long ſyllable; the laſt, dactyls and a ſyllable.

1.	2.	½	3.	4.	½
Nīl mihĭ	rēſcrī-	bas;	ātqămĕn	īpsĕ vĕ-	ni.

3. The Aſclepidēan verſe has four feet, viz. a ſpondee, two choriambuſ and a pyrrhichius; or a ſpondee, a dactyl, a Cæſura, and two dacbi; as,

1.	2.	3.	4.	
Mæce-	nas atavis	edite re-	gibus,	or

1.	2.	½.	4	5.
Mæce-	nas ata-	vis	edite	regibus.

This verſe is moſt graceful when every word makes a foot; as,

1.	2.	3.	4.
Quaſſas,	indocilis	pauperiem	pati.

4. The Glyconian has three feet, viz. a ſpondee, choriambus, and a hichius, or, a ſpondee and two dactyls; as,

1.	2.	3.
Nil mor-	talibus ar-	du' eſt.

5. The Sapphic has five feet, viz a trochee, a ſpondee, a dactyl, and o trochees; and after every three verſes, for the moſt part, an Adoi, of a dactyl and a ſpondee. Thus,

1.	2.	3.	4.	5.
Aure-	am quiſ-	quis medi-	ocri-	tatem
Dili-	git, tu-	tus caret	obſo-	leti
Sordi-	bus tec-	ti, caret	invi-	dendà.

1.	2.	
Sobrius	aulà.	Hor.

Note. A Cæſura Penthemimeris adds great beauty to this Sapphic verſe, bove.

There are ſometimes found Hypermeter verſes in this; as,

1.	2.	3.	4.	5.	
Plorat,					
Qu'aureos	et vi-	res, ani-	mumque,	moreſ-	Hor.

It is harſher when the firſt ſyllable of the word belongs to the forego- verſe, and the remaining ones pertain to the next; as,

1.	2.	3.	4.	5.	
Groſphe,	non gem-	mis, neque	purpu-	râ ve-	
-nale, nec	auro.				Hor.

Labitur ripâ, Jove non probant', u-
xorius amnis. Hor.

6. The Phereeratian verſe has three feet, viz. a ſpondee, a dactyl, and a ndee.

1.	2.	3.	
Nigris	æquora	ventis.	Hor.

7. *Of Iambic Verſe.*

There are two kinds of this, Dimeter and Trimeter.
The Dimeter conſiſts of four feet; the Trimeter of ſix. They are ſo

called becauſe the Greeks make two feet but one. The Latins call t
firſt *quaternarius*, and the other *ſenarius*. They conſiſted at firſt of pu
Iambuſes.

	1.	2.	3.	4.	
Dimet.	Inar-	ſit æſ-	tuo	ſius.	HOR.

	1.	2.	3.	4.	5.	6.	
Trimet.	Suis	et ip-	ſa Ro-	ma vi-	ribus	ruit.	SEN.

Afterwards ſpondees were admitted in the uneven places; as,

	1.	2.	3.	4.	
Dimet.	Fŏrtī	sĕqŭe-	mūr pēc-	tŏrĕ.	HOR.

	1.	2.	3.	4.	5.	6.	
Trimet.	Pārs sā	nĭtā-	tīs vĕl-	lĕ sā-	nārī	fŭīt.	SEN.

At length, inſtead of the iambus and ſpondees, they introduced ſo
feet equal to them in quantity, as even the anapæſtus, the dactyl, a
ſometimes the tribrachys, in the uneven places; which they admitted
ſo in the equal places, except in the laſt place, which is always an ia
bus.

8. *Horatian Verſe.*

I will conclude with this one compound verſe. It got its name fr
Horace, who delighted much in it. It conſiſts of four lines; the two
are the greater dactylic alcaic tetrameter hypercatalectic, conſiſting of
iambic penthemimeris, i. e. a ſpondee, or iambus, (but oftener a ſp
dee), an iambus, a ſyllable, and two dactyls; the third is an iambic
chilochian dimeter hypercatalectic: it has in the firſt and third plac
ſpondee, and ſometimes an iambus; in the ſecond and fourth place it
mits only an iambus, with a ſyllable; and the fourth verſe is the le
dactylic alcaic, tetrameter acatalectic, having in the firſt and ſecond p
a dactyl, in the third and fourth a trochæus; thus:

	1.	2.	½	3.	4.
	Vīrtūs	rĕpŭl-	læ	nēsĕĭă	sōrdĭdæ
	Inta-	mina-	tis	fulget ho-	noribus.

	1.	2.	3.	4.	½
	Nĕc sū-	mĭt aūt	pōnīt	sĕcū-	res.

	1.	2.	3.	4.
	ārbĭtrĭ-	ō pŏpŭ-	lārĭs	aūræ.

When a poem has but one kind of verſe, it is called *monocolon*, and
lycolon when it has more. This laſt is either dicolon, i. e. has two kind
verſe, or tricolon, three.

According to the number of verſes in a ſtrophe, or ſtanza, there
theſe kinds; a diſtrophon, when it returns (from which a ſtrophe co
after the ſecond verſe to the firſt; triſtrophon when after the third; te
ſtrophon after the fourth; and after the fifth, a pentaſtrophon, which
ancients never exceeded.

Table, ſhowing the different kinds of verſe in Horace, according to the foregoing numbers.

Ode i. 1.; iii. 30.; iv. 8.; N° 3.——i. 2. 10. 12. 20. 22. 25. 30. 32. 38.; 4. 6. 8. 10. 16.; iii. 8. 11. 14. 18. 20. 22. 27.; iv. 2. 6. 11. Carm. N° 5.——i. 3. 13. 19. 36; iii. 9. 15. 19. 24. 25. 28.; iv. 1. 3.; N° 4. 3.—— i. 4. firſt line, four feet hexameter and three trochees; ſecond , an iambus or ſpondee, an iambus, a ſpondee, two iambuſſes, and a ible.—— i. 5. 14. 21. 23.; iii. 7. 13.; iv. 13. the two firſt lines N° 3. third N° 6. and the fourth N° 4.——i. 6. 15. 24. 33.; ii. 12.; iii. 10. ; iv. 5. 12.; the firſt three N° 3. and the laſt N° 4——i. 7. 28; Epod. the firſt line hexameter; the ſecond, two firſt feet either a dactyl or ndee; the third, a dactyl; and the fourth, a ſpondee.——i. 8. the line, a choriambus, bacchius, or amphimacer; the ſecond, epitritus ndus, two choriambuſes, and bacchius.——i. 9. 16. 17. 26. 27. 29. 31. 33. 37.; ii. 1. 3. 5. 7. 9. 11. 13. 14. 15. 17. 19. 20.; iii. 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 11. 23. 26. 29.; iv. 4. 9. 14. 15. N° 8.——i. 11. 18; iv. 10. a ſpon-, three choriambuſes, and a pyrrichius.——ii. 18. the firſt line, three chees, (a ſpondee ſometimes in the ſecond place), and a ſyllable; ſecond line, an iambus or ſpondee, an iambus, a ſpondee or iam-, two iambuſes, and a ſyllable.——iii. 12. the two firſt lines, tri-er, and the laſt tetrameter, in Latin Octonarius; all ion. a minore pyrrichius and ſpondee.——iv. 7. the firſt line N° 1. the ſecond, two tyls and a ſyllable. Epod. 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10.; an iambic tri-, and an iambic dimeter N° 7.——Epod. 11. the firſt line, an iambic eter N° 7; the firſt part of the ſecond is the laſt hemiſtich of a penta-, and the laſt part an iambic dimeter, N° 7.; but this ſecond line is monly divided into two.——Ep. 13. the firſt line, N° 1.; the ſecond ſiſts of an iambic dimeter, N° 7.; and the third has the laſt half of a ameter.——Ep. 14. 15. the firſt line, N° 1. and the ſecond, an iambic eter, N° 7.——Ep. 16. the firſt line, N° 1.; and the ſecond, an iam- trimeter, N° 7.——Ep. 17. iambic trimeter, N° 7.——Satires, Epi-, and Ars Poet. N° 1.

APPENDIX.

Of TROPES and FIGURES.

RHETORIC is the art or faculty of ſpeaking and writing with elegance , and dignity, in order to inſtruct, perſuade, and pleaſe. Grammar ches only purity and propriety. Rhetoric lays theſe for its foundation, rairs upon them all the graces of *tropes* and *figures*.

Elegance conſiſts in the purity and p ſpicuity of the language. *Purity* ires choice and proper words, neither foreign nor obſolete. This is tained by ſtudying the beſt authors, eſpecially thoſe of the Auguſtan ; and by frequent and careful compoſition. To acquire *perſpicuity*, a knowledge of our ſubject, and frequent meditation upon it, are neceſ-. We muſt likewiſe avoid ambiguous words, a dry brevity, a confu- length of periods, and the crowding together a too large train of es.

Dignity ariſes from ſublime thoughts, noble tropes, and moving figur
Tropes alter and affect ſingle words: *figures* embelliſh and enliven wh
ſentences.

A *Trope* is a word removed from its firſt and natural ſignification, a
applied with advantage to another thing, which it does not origina
mean, but only ſtands for it, as it has a relation to or connection with
as, *Achilles is a lion;* the trope lies in the word *lion*, and makes us aſcri
all the virtues and qualities of the lion to Achilles.

Tropes increaſe the ſtores of language.—By them nothing in nat
wants a name.—They make an agreeable variety, and thereby divert
mind, and revive attention when it begins to flag.—By tropes the wr
is enabled to diverſify his expreſſions, and to intermix plain and figurat
language judiciouſly.—Tropes add wonderful ornament and emphaſis t
diſcourſe, and often give the mind a brighter and ſtronger idea of a th
than proper words.—When Virgil calls the two Scipios *duo fulmina belli*,
repreſents the rapid ſpeed and victorious progreſs of their arms w
more emphaſis than all the plain terms of the Roman language could h
done.

To conclude: Tropes and metaphorical expreſſions are uſed either
neceſſity, emphaſis, or decency:—— for *neceſſity*, when we have not p
per words to declare our thoughts;—for *emphaſis*, when the proper wo
we have are not ſufficiently comprehenſive and ſignificant;—for *dece*
when plain language would give offence and diſtaſte to the reader.

Of the chief Tropes of language.

Metaphor is a trope by which we put a ſtrange word for a pro
one, by reaſon of its reſemblance and relation to it. All tropes
ſtrictly ſpeaking, metaphors or tranſlations; yet this is more particul
called ſo by reaſon of its conſtant uſe and peculiar beauty.—This
may be alſo defined thus. A metaphor is a ſimile, or compariſon, inte
ed to enforce or illuſtrate the thing we ſpeak of, without the ſigns or fo
of compariſon. Thus, if we ſay, *Achilles is a lion*, it is a metaphor,
cauſe the ſign of compariſon is not expreſſed, though the reſemblan
which is the foundation of the trope, is plain. But if the ſentence be
thus, *Achilles is as a lion*, then it becomes a ſimile or compariſon. So,
ſhort, a metaphor is a ſtricter or cloſer compariſon; and a compariſo
looſer or leſs compact metaphor.

This trope may be taken from any thing which is the object of our
ſes; but that is generally the moſt agreeable and ſprightly which ar
from the ſenſe of ſeeing; becauſe, of all the ſenſes, ſeeing is the moſt p
fect and comprehenſive, the moſt unwearied and inquiſitive, the m
deſirable and delightful.—Metaphor is of extraordinary uſe in long
ſcriptions; it keeps the mind pleaſed, and the attention awake. So if
author is obliged to give a long account of things plain and of comm
obſervation, he muſt raiſe and ennoble them by ſtrong and graceful me
phors.

This rule Cicero has obſerved, in his elaborate deſcription of the ſe
ral parts of this habitable world, in his books *De natura Deorum*.—Vi
has likewiſe, in his accurate *Georgics*, made his meaneſt and pooreſt
jects fine and admirable by his judicious uſe of metaphors.—The little
fairs of ſhepherds in his perfect lines appear with dignity. His deſcr
tions make the country a paradiſe; and his touch, as Boileau expreſſes
turns every thing into gold. Thoſe are admirable and very beautiful

phors, when the properties of rational creatures are applied to animals, and thoſe of animals to plants and trees.

Allegory is a continuation of the ſame metaphor through the ſame ſentence or diſcourſe, when one thing is ſaid, and ſomething different is meant; as, Cic. *Equidem cæteras tempeſtates et procellas in illis duntaxat fluctibus concionum ſemper putavi Miloni eſſe ſubeundas.* He might have ſaid plainly, *Equidem multa pericula in populi concionibus ſemper Miloni putavi eſſe ſubeunda.* How great is the difference!—Horace, lib. 1. od. 14. gives us a moſt beautiful allegory, *O navis*, &c. If the ſhip be taken for the ſtate, the boiſterous ſea for the civil wars, and the harbour for peace.—The 80th pſalm, where the vineyard repreſents God's own people the Jews, is an excellent one; as is alſo Iſaiah, vi. 1. *My well-beloved hath a vineyard*, &c.—To this may be referred *Apologue* or *Fable*, which is the aſcribing of the actions, paſſions, and diſcourſe, of mankind, to the irrational or even inanimate creation, with a deſign to inſtruct and affect people with an uſeful moral artfully conveyed.

Metonymy is a trope, whereby one name is put for another, which it may properly ſtand for, by reaſon of the near relation or mutual dependence there is between both. 1. The cauſe is put for the effect; as, *Lego Virgilium*, i. e. *opera Virgilii.* 2. The effect for the cauſe; as, *Pallida mors;—quia homines pallidos efficit.* It is even put for the material cauſe; as, *Homo eſt pulvis,—[utpote ex pulvere creatus].* 3. The ſubject for the adjunct; as, Cic *Teſtis eſt Italia*, for *Itali teſtes ſunt;—Bibe hoc poculum*, i. e. *vinum ex poculo.* 4. The adjunct for the ſubject; as, Virg. *Vina coronant*, i. e. *pocula floribus adornant.*—Juv. ſat. 1. l. 163. *Nulli gravis eſt percuſſus Achilles.* Here the poet is ſaid to do what he deſcribes. This exceeds the common expreſſion, as much as action goes beyond deſcription, and life excels painting.—— A branch of this is *Antonomaſia*, or exchange of names, which puts an emphatical epithet for a common name; as, *Venus*, or *Helena*, for *formoſa*; *Nero* for *crudelis.* This trope is of very great uſe and extent, and gives boundleſs ſcope and liberty to the fancy.

Synecdoche, or Comprehenſion, is a trope which puts the name of the whole for a part, or a part for the whole; a general for a particular of the ſame kind, or a particular for a general; a round and certain number for an uncertain one; as, *ventus* for *Eurus*, and *Eurus* for *ventus.* Cic. *Tu mea chariſſimæ animæ ſæpiſſime ad me ſcribite*, [*ad ſuas filias*]. *Millies audivi*, for *Sæpiſſime. Decem millia hominum cæſi*, [i. e. *circa eum numerum*].—A ſingular for a plural; as, *miles* for *milites*, *pedes* for *pedites.* And the plural for the ſingular: The treacherous Sinon uſes this plural, when he would aggravate his danger of being ſacrificed by his countrymen, and increaſe the horror of their preparations for thoſe inhuman rites: Virg. Æn. ii. 135.—*Vos aræ, enſeſque nefandi Quos fugi*, &c. Sometimes a ſingle collective word expreſſes multitudes with more clearneſs and vehemence than plurals would do; as, Liv. *Teſtis eſt Italia*, taken notice of in Metonymy. But in this, as well as in all the other tropes, there is need of judgement to diſcern, that they be more proper and beautiful than the plain word.

Hyperbole is a trope that goes beyond the bounds of ſtrict truth, in repreſenting things greater or ſmaller, better or worſe, than really they are, in order to raiſe admiration or love, fear or contempt. See what Virg. ſays of Camilla, Æn. vii. 15. from the end. Æn. i. 167. *Gemini minantur in cœlum ſcopuli*; Æn. iii. 619. *Ipſe arduus, altaque pulſat ſidera*; Æn. viii. 691. *Pelago credas innare revulſas Cycladas*; Virg. Ec. iii. 102. *Vix*

oſſibus hærent; Horace, lib. 2. ſat. 3. in the deſcription of the miſer, makes him contemptible and ridiculous to a degree of extravagance.

Irony is a trope whereby a man ſpeaks contrary to his thoughts, that he may ſpeak with more force and advantage. The character of the perſon ironically commended, the air of contempt that appears in the ſpeaker or writer, and the exorbitance of the commendations, ſufficiently diſcover the diſſimulation; as, Ter. *Salve bone vir, curâſti probè*, to a wicked ſlave. When Horace has beautifully deſcribed the tumults, noiſe, and dangers of Rome, he concludes with this irony, lib. 2. epiſt. 2. p. 76. *I nunc et verſus tecum meditare canoros.*

Catachreſis is when a word is licentiouſly transferred from its proper ſignification to another, as *ſtagnum* for *mare*. Virg. Æn. ii. 15. *Equum divinâ Palladis arte ædificant.*

By this ſhort account, it is evident, that there is a general analogy or relation between all tropes, and that in all of them a man uſes a foreign or ſtrange word inſtead of a proper one; and therefore ſays one thing and means ſomething different.—When he ſays one thing and means another almoſt the ſame, it is a *Synecdoche*: When he ſays one thing, and means another mutually depending, it is a *Metonymy*: When he ſays one thing, and means another oppoſite or contrary, it is an *Irony*: When he ſays one thing, and means another like to it, it is a *Metaphor*: A *Metaphor* continued, and often repeated, becomes an *Allegory*: A *Metaphor* carried to a degree of boldneſs is an *Hyperbole*; and when at firſt ſound it ſeems a little harſh or ſhocking, and may be thought to carry ſome impropriety in it, it is a *Catachreſis*.

Of Figures.

A Figure is a manner of ſpeaking different from the ordinary and plain way, and more emphatical; expreſſing a paſſion, or containing a beauty.—The paſſions are as it were the ſoul of an oration; from them it derives that impetuoſity and vehemence which bears down all before them: the orator, by their means, inſpires his auditors with whatever ſentiment he pleaſes; in order to which, the diſcourſe muſt always be founded upon nature and ſenſe, ſupported with ſtrong reaſon and proof. When the hearer is ſatisfied with the argument, he is at leiſure to indulge his paſſions. Cæſar was not able to reſiſt, when he heard Cicero's defence of Ligarius, though he was much upon his guard againſt his eloquence; being determined, when he came out of his own houſe, not to pardon him. Youth ſhould attend well to Cicero's perorations, and endeavour to make the application themſelves of Cicero's and Quintilian's excellent precepts: the moſt important of all is this of Horace, Ars Poet. 102. *Si vis me flere, dolendum eſt primum ipſi tibi.* —— The Figures are theſe.

Exclamation is a figure that expreſſes the breaking out, and vehemence of any paſſion. Virg. Æn. ii. 69. *Heu! quæ nunc tellus*, &c. 283. *O lux Dardaniæ*, &c. 289. *Heu! fuge nate Deâ*, &c. 535. *At tibi pro ſcelere*, &c. Æn. iv. 13. *Heu! quibus ille jactatus fatis*, &c. Cic. *Uſque adeone mori miſerum eſt?*

Doubt expreſſes the debate of the mind with itſelf in a preſſing difficulty. A man in a ſevere ſtrait and perplexity, firſt takes up one reſolution and then lays it aſide; after thinks another method more convenient, and then changes it again. He is toſſed to and fro with ſtrong tides of paſſion; and at laſt, after terrible ſtruggles, ſcarce fixes upon a final determination. Thus *Dido*, upon the departure of her lover, Æn. iv. 53

This figure keeps the ſoul in eager attention, and moves all her tenderneſs and compaſſion for an unhappy ſufferer.

Correction is a figure whereby a man earneſtly retracts what he had ſaid or reſolved. Virg. Æn. i. 35. *Quos ego — ſed præſtat motos componere fluctus.* The height of this figure is, when a perſon having lately declared an inclination to a thing, preſently rejects it with horror, and vows againſt it with imprecations. Æn. iv. 24. *Sed mihi vel tellus optem*, &c.

Suppreſſion is a figure, whereby a perſon in rage, or other diſturbance of mind, ſpeaks not out all he means, but breaks off his diſcourſe abruptly. The gentleman in Terence, incenſed againſt his ſlave, accoſts him with this ſingle word, *Omnium*; — and Neptune, Virg. Æn. i. 135. attacks the winds, thus: *Quos ego —*. The exceſs of their rage choked the voice; but their meaning is readily underſtood.

Omiſſion is when one pretends, that he paſſes over what he declares. Cicero, in his firſt oration againſt Catiline, points this figure (which is related to the irony) with a juſt ſeverity and ſatire, againſt that monſter. *Quid vero? nuper cum morte ſuperioris uxoris*, &c.

Apoſtrophe is when, in a vehement commotion, a man turns himſelf on all ſides, and applies to the living and the dead, to angels and men, to rocks, groves, and rivers. Sall. Jug. bell. cap. 14. *Eheu me miſerum! Huccine, Micipſa pater, beneficia evaſere*, &c.; and a little after, *Jamjam, frater, animo meo cariſſime*, &c. Virg. Æn. iii. 710. Æneas addreſſes his dead father thus: *Hic me, pater optime, feſſum deſeris, heu! tantis nequicquam erepte periclis.* When the poets addreſs a muſe, or ſome god, to aſſiſt and direct them, this kind of apoſtrophe is called *invocation*. Theſe addreſſes they often repeat in the progreſs of their poem; eſpecially when a difficulty ariſes that ſurmounts human power, or a ſecret is to be revealed that could not be found out by human ſagacity. Theſe invocations repeated at ſeaſonable diſtances, and upon proper occaſions, diverſify the ſtyle, and refreſh the reader after a long narration, and gratify him with change and novelty.

Proſopopœia, or *Fiction of a perſon*, has a near reſemblance to the apoſtrophe. It beſtows ſenſibility and voluntary motion upon things inanimate. Cicero, in his firſt oration againſt Catiline, introduces Rome, as a venerable matron, the common mother of all the Romans, expoſtulating with Catiline in a pathetical ſpeech. Virg. Georg. ii. 497. *Aut conjurato deſcendit Dacus ab Iſtro.* Here the loftineſs and majeſty of the poet is diſplayed. Make *conjuratus* to agree with *Dacus*, and all its beauty is loſt. Cic. *Pro Ligario. Quid enim tuus ille, Tubero, diſtrictus in acie Pharſalica gladius agebat? cujus latus ille mucro petebat? qui ſenſus erat armorum tuorum? que tua mens? oculi? manus? ardor animi? quid cupiebas? quid optabas?* All this was only to declare, that Tubero was preſent at the battle of Pharſalia, and fought againſt Cæſar. But what ſtrength does this thought receive from ſo many and ſo lively figures, crouded one upon the other? Do they not ſeem to inſinuate, that Tubero's ſword ſought every where for Cæſar?

This figure communicates action and motion to inanimate things, makes perſons ſpeak whether preſent or abſent, and ſometimes even the dead. It is uſual with the poets to give indignation and wonder to rivers, trees, &c. and ſadneſs to beaſts, &c. Virg. Æn. viii. 728. *Pontem indignatus Araxes.* Georg. ii. 82. *Miraturque novas frondes, et non ſua poma.* Georg. iii. 518. *It triſtis arator, mœrentem abjungens fraternâ morte juvencum.* Eclog. v. 58. *Ergo alacres ſylvas et cætera rura voluptas — tenet.* This figure,

which gives life as it were to inanimate things, adds a prodigious grace and vigour to orations. Cic. *Pro Milone* — *Cum videat aliquando gladium nobis ad occidendum hominem ab ipsis porrigi legibus.* He might have barely ſaid, *Cum videat licere nobis aliquando per leges hominem occidere.* But, inſtead of that, he transforms the laws into perſons, putting a ſword, as it were, into a man's hand to defend himſelf.

By this, even inanimate things are addreſſed. — Cicero, *pro Milone*, after his deſcription of Clodius's death, ſays, that even religion, and the altars of the gods, were affected with it; and afterwards addreſſes his diſcourſe to them thus: *Religiones mehercule ipſæ, aræque.* —— *Vos enim Albani tumuli atque luci, vos, inquam, imploro atque obteſtor: voſque Albanorum obrutæ aræ* —— : *tuque ex tuo edito monte Latialis ſancte Jupiter* ——.

By this figure, ſpeech is given even to things inanimate. Cicero, in his firſt ſpeech againſt Catiline, makes the commonwealth addreſs Catiline, *Quæ tecum, Catilina, ſic agit, et quodammodo tacita loquitur*; — and ſometimes himſelf: *Marce Tulli, quid agis*, &c. Appius introduces the commonwealth addreſſing the ſoldiers: Liv. lib. 5. cap. 4. *An, ſi ad calculos eum reſpublica vocet*, &c. There is an exceſs of paſſion, a degree of enthuſiaſm, in this ſublime figure; and therefore a man of underſtanding will keep his boldeſt flights within the bounds of common ſenſe, and guide himſelf by the rules of probability and decorum in his moſt adventurous ſallies of imagination. — It is very moving, when rivers, groves, and mountains, are introduced in paſtorals, languiſhing for the abſence, or lamenting the loſs of ſome very valuable perſon that formerly frequented them, and cheared them with his preſence. Virg. Ec. v. 27. *Daphni, tuum Pœnos*, &c. Ec. x. 13. *Illum etiam lauri*, &c. and Georg. iv. 462. — *flêrunt Rhodopeiæ arces.*

Image, or *Viſion*, is one of the greateſt oratorial beauties; and conſiſts in giving as it were body and reaſon to the things we are ſpeaking of, and painting them by viſible ſtrokes, which may ſtrike the ſenſes, move the imagination, and preſent a ſenſible object. Virg. Æn. iv. 471. *Aut Agamemnonius ſcenis agitatus Oreſtes, Armatam facibus matrem et ſerpentibus atris Cum fugit, ultriceſque ſedent in limine Diræ.* This noble image raiſes conſternation and terror. Georg. iv. 511. *Qualis populea mœrens Philomela ſub umbra Amiſſos quæritur fœtus, quos durus arator Obſervans nido implumes, detraxit*, &c.

Suſpenſion begins and carries on a period or diſcourſe in ſuch a manner as pleaſes the reader all along, and keeps him in expectation of ſome conſiderable thing in the concluſion. — With what infinite ſweetneſs does Eve carry on, with what grateful ſurpriſe cloſe up, that rapturous ſpeech to Adam! Milton's Par. Loſt, iv. 641. *Sweet is the breath of morn*, — and concludes in the 16th line thus: *without thee is ſweet.* —— *Inverſion* is a branch of this lively figure; when the plain order of a ſentence is advantageouſly tranſpoſed, to give vigour and variety to it, and to keep the mind in an agreeable ſuſpenſe, and expectation of a marvellous turn and concluſion. Virg. Ec. viii. 1. *Paſtorum muſam*, — ends in the fifth line with *Damonis muſam*, &c. Take away this inverſion, ſays the Archbiſhop of Cambray, and place the words in the order of grammar, and you will take away all their majeſty, grace, and harmony.

Interrogation is when the writer or orator raiſes queſtions, and returns anſwers; not as he were in a continued diſcourſe, but in conference with his reader, auditor, or adverſary. "Tell me, will you go about, and "aſk one another what news?" &c. ſays Demoſthenes, as quoted by

Longinus. Cicero, in the beginning of his firſt ſpeech againſt Catiline, *Quouſque tandem abutēre, Catilina, patientiâ noſtrâ? — patere conſilia tua non ſentis?* How much more is the orator inflamed, than if he had ſimply ſaid, *Diu abutēris noſtrâ patientiâ: — tua conſilia patent.* —— *Expoſtulation* is nearly related to this figure. By this the injured perſon urges the offender with all the proper queſtions he thinks can be propoſed, and pleads with him from all the topics of reaſon. See Tacitus, Annal 1. cap. 42. where Germanicus expoſtulates with his mutinous ſoldiers in a noble ſpeech: *Quid enim per hos dies inauſum, intemeratumve vobis?* &c. See likewiſe Scipio's remarkable ſpeech to the mutineers at Sucro, Liv. lib. 28. cap. 27. 28. 29.

Prevention is when an author ſtarts an objection, which he foreſees may be made againſt any thing he affirms, deſires, or adviſes, and gives an anſwer to it. Juv. ſat. x. 346. *Nil ergo optabunt homines?* &c. to the end. Ter. Heaut. act 1. ſc. 1. *At enim dices, quantum hic operis fiat, pœnitet. Quid in opere*, &c.

Conceſſion freely allows ſomething, that yet might bear ſome diſpute, to obtain ſomething that a man would have granted to him, and which he thinks cannot fairly be denied. Sometimes the firſt parts are fretting and ſevere, but the concluſion healing: Ter. Adelph. act 2. ſc. 1. *Leno ſum*, &c. — *tamen tibi a me nulla eſt orta injuria.* Another ſort of Conceſſion is, when fearing we cannot obtain all that we deſire, we give up one part to carry the reſt. Dido ſays to Æneas, Æn. iv. 431. *Non jam conjugium antiquum*, &c. — It is by this figure, that oppreſſed people, in the extremity of their indignation, call to their enemies to proceed ſtill to further degrees of barbarity, that they may at laſt be diſpoſed to relent. Virg. Georg. iv. 329. *Ariſtæus* ſays to his mother, *Quin age, et ipſa manū*, &c. — To this figure may be referred that eloquent inſinuation of Joſhua, Joſ. xxiv. 15. "If it ſeem evil unto you to ſerve the Lord, chuſe you this "day whom you will ſerve." —— We have an ironical Conceſſion in Cato's ſpeech about the puniſhment of the traitors in Catiline's conſpiracy, which is cutting and ſatirical. Sall. *Sint ſane* —, *ne illis ſanguinem noſtrum largiantur*, &c.

Repetition is a figure, which gracefully and emphatically repeats either the ſame word, or the ſame ſenſe in different words. — The nature and deſign of this figure is to make deep impreſſions on thoſe we addreſs. — It expreſſes anger and indignation; full aſſurance of what we affirm, and vehement concern for what we have eſpouſed. Virg. Geor. iv. 465. obſerving how Orpheus lamented for his wife Eurydice, has this beautiful repetition: *Te dulcis conjux, te* —, *te* —, *te* —. Tullus, Liv. lib. 1. cap. 28. expreſſing his indignation at the treachery of Mettus, ſays, *Mettus ille* —; *Mettus idem*; *Mettus* —. To this figure, which has many branches, may be referred the uſing of many words of the ſame ſignification to expreſs one important thing. So Cicero uſes all the ſignificant variety he can recollect, for *Milo. Inſidiator ſuperatus, vi victa vis*, &c.

Periphraſis, or *Circumlocution*. This figure is ſometimes abſolutely neceſſary; as when we have forgot a perſon's name: Virg. Ec. iii. 39. *In medio duo ſigna, Conon; et quis fuit alter, Deſcripſit*, &c.; and when we ſpeak of things that decency will not allow us to expreſs in their own names: Sall. *Ad requiſita naturæ*. It is often uſed for ornament only, and ſometimes to expreſs a thing the more magnificently, which would otherwiſe appear low and mean; or to cover or ſoften the harſhneſs of ſome propoſitions, which would be ſhocking if ſhown in a naked and ſimple

dreſs. Cicero, in his defence of Milo, finding himſelf obliged to own that his ſlaves had killed Clodius, does not ſay, *Interfecerunt, jugularunt Clodium*; but, *Fecerunt ſervi Milonis, neque imperante, neque ſciente, neque præſente domino, quod ſuos quiſque ſervos in tali re facere voluiſſet.*

Amplification is when every chief expreſſion in a period adds ſtrength and advantage to what went before; and ſo the ſenſe all along heightens till the period be vigorouſly and agreeably cloſed. Tillotſon, ſerm. 1. p. 138. "It is pleaſant to be virtuous and good, becauſe that is to excel "many others: it is pleaſant to grow better, becauſe that is to excel "ourſelves," &c. —— There are three very lively ways of expreſſing a Amplification:

1. We amplify and raiſe a diſcourſe, by ſelecting a number of the moſt emphatical and ſtrongeſt words of the language we uſe, every one of which adds ſomething new to the ſentence, and, all joined, heighten it to the utmoſt degree of perfection. That paſſage in Ter. Eun. act 5. ſc. 1. is upon this account univerſally admired: *Hæc verba, mehercule, ... na falſa, lachrymula*, &c.

2. This figure is expreſſed by way of compariſon: Cic. Or. 1. againſt Catiline: *An vero vir ampliſſimus P. Scipio*, &c. — *interfecit: Catilinam v... ro*, &c. *nos Conſules perferemus?*

3. Quintilian excellently obſerves, that Homer, lib. 3. l. 156. gives us a very exalted idea of Helen's charms, when he introduces Priam and his old counſellors owning, that it was not to be reſented, that the Trojans and Greeks had ſuſtained the calamities of a long and cruel war for ſuch a woman; and makes the King himſelf place her by him, call her *Dear child*, and treat her with all poſſible tenderneſs and reſpect.

To this we may refer *Climax* or *Gradation*; that is, when the word which ends the firſt member of a ſentence begins the ſecond, and ſo on till the argument and period be beautifully finiſhed: Cic. *Or. pro Milone*. *Neque vero ſe populo ſolum, ſed etiam ſenatui commiſit: neque ſenatui modo, ſed etiam publicis præſidiis et armis: neque his tantum, verum etiam ejus poteſtati cui Senatus totam rempublicam, omnem Italiæ pubem, cuncta populi Romani arma commiſerit, ſc. Pompeio.*

Omiſſion of copulative is, when the conjunctions are left out, to repreſent haſte, or eagerneſs of paſſion. Virg. Æn. iv. 594. deſcribes Dido's violent rage at Æneas's departure in this rapid line. *Ferte citi flammas! date vela! impellite remos.* Salluſt, bell. Jugurth. cap. 101. excellently and very naturally repreſents the rout and precipitate flight of the Mauri in these words: *Tum ſpectaculum horribile in campis patentibus, ſequi, fugere, occidi capi.*

Multitude of copulatives, the contrary to the former. Liv. lib. 23. cap. 18. has this beautiful paſſage. *Somnus enim et vinum, et epulæ, et ſcorta, balineaque, et otium, conſuetudine in dies blandius, ita enervaverunt corpora, animoſque.* — This makes a diſcourſe ſtrong and ſolemn, fixes an emphaſis upon every word, and points it out as worthy of obſervation.

Antitheſis, or *Oppoſition*, is a figure whereby things very different or contrary are compared and placed near, that they may ſet off each other. Cic. *Orat.* 2. againſt Catiline. *Ex hac enim parte pudor pugnat, illinc petulantia; hinc pudicitia, illinc ſtuprum*, &c. — Salluſt, Cat. bell. cap. 54. gives a beautiful example of this in his character of Cæſar and Cato. Virg. in his fine deſcription of Dido's deſpair, the night before her death, repreſents all the creation enjoying profound tranquillity and ſweet reſt, to render that miſerable Queen's diſquietudes more moving. Æn. iv.

from l. 522. *Nox erat*, &c. to l. 553. This manner of uſing this figure is very agreeable and noble, becauſe the Antitheſis does not lie in words, but things. — In Virgil's ſecond Georgic there is a very pleaſant contraſt, in that fine compariſon between the court and the country. The very manner of his expreſſion, and the turn of his poetry, are with great judgement and dexterity varied, and made ſuitable to his different ſubjects. The pride and ſtatelineſs of the great are drawn to the life, in a variety of very bold tropes, l. 461.—*Ingentem foribus*, &c.—*Varios inhiant*, &c.— But you have the innocence and plainneſs, the ſweetneſs and undiſturbed quiet, of the country, naturally repreſented in proper words, and in the ſmootheſt and ſweeteſt numbers, l. 467. *At ſecura quies*, &c.

Compariſon beautifully ſets off and illuſtrates one thing by reſembling and comparing it to another, to which it bears a manifeſt relation and reſemblance. —— In compariſons theſe things are to be obſerved. The chief and eſſential parts of the compariſon muſt bear an exact and due proportion. They ought generally to be ſhort, and not run into minute circumſtances. Nor need they always be drawn from very noble and lofty ſubjects. Compariſons from leſſer things relieve and refreſh the mind, that had been long kept upon the ſtretch of cloſe intention: ſtrong and ſublime ones heighten and improve a meaner ſubject. See Virg. Georg. iv. 170. &c. and Georg. ii. 279. &c.

Lively Deſcription is ſuch a ſtrong and beautiful repreſentation of a thing, as gives the reader a diſtinct view and ſatisfactory notion of it. — In Deſcriptions a judicious author will omit low and vulgar circumſtances, and beſtow his pains chiefly to complete and beautify all the eſſential and maſterly ſtrokes. Many things muſt be left to the imagination of the reader, and ſeaſonable ſilence has its emphaſis. Virg. Georg. iv. 457. &c. tells his reader, that Euridice was killed by a monſtrous ſerpent, lurking in a bank; but ſays nothing more of that venomous creature, his deſign being only to give a moving example of true conjugal affection, and to ſhew the force of muſic and poetry over the moſt fierce and ſavage tempers.—— But, Æn. ii 203. &c he deſcribes the two ſerpents which deſtroyed Laocoon and his ſons in ſuch particular circumſtances, and paints the devouring monſters in ſuch ſtrong and frightful colours, that they amaze and chill the reader. His only buſineſs here was, to raiſe terror, and give his reader a due notion of the diſpleaſure of the Gods againſt Troy, which was ſo fixed and implacable, that they thus ſignally cut off an innocent man and his family, for giving an advice which tended to the oppoſing their ſevere decree, and the preſervation of that devoted city.

The deſcription of a perſon is called a *Character*; in drawing which the true proof of art and judgement is, to hit a beautiful likeneſs, and with a delicate touch to give thoſe features and colours which are peculiar to the perſon, and diſtinguiſh him from the reſt of mankind. In every good and lively deſcription, a man muſt come to an enumeration of the chief particulars. Generals are often obſcure and faint; but particulars judiciouſly related, ſet every thing in full view, and make a ſtrong and laſting impreſſion upon the reader. See in Salluſt's Cat. cap. 54. his characters of Cæſar and Cato.

Change of Perſon is common, and very natural, in eager conteſt, and ſtrong paſſions. —Turnus, in Virg. Æn. xi. 392. &c. enraged at the malicious harangue of Drances, firſt ſmartly replies to him, and then turns his diſcourſe to King Latinus and his council; then attacks Drances again with variety of ſevere and ſatirical language. — Dido, upon notice of the

departure of Æneas, diſtracted with rage and deſpair, firſt furiouſly falls upon him; then diſdainfully turning from him, ſpeaks of him as an abſent perſon; after exclaims againſt the cruelty of heaven and earth; then reproaches and condemns herſelf for her own credulity and weakneſs; and again, with ſcorn and eager indignation, turns her ſpeech to Æneas. Æn. iv. 365. &c. What a ſtorm is here, and how inimitably painted!

Tranſition is of two ſorts. —— 1. The firſt is when a ſpeech is introduced abruptly, without expreſs notice given of it. After Homer has finiſhed his narration of Hector's ſucceſs, without any notice, he immediately makes the hero utter his own paſſion in an impetuous ſpeech. Iliad, xv. 348. &c.—It is very graceful in ſtories and dialogues, to leave out the heavy formality of *he ſaid*, and *he replied*, and renders the relation clear and full, and the reply quick and lively. Horace is extremely happy in this ſort of tranſition, as indeed he is in every delicacy of turn, and beauty of language.—2. The ſecond ſort of Tranſition is, when a writer ſuddenly leaves the ſubject he is upon, and paſſes on to another, from which it ſeems very different at firſt view, but has a relation and connection with it, and ſerves to illuſtrate and enlarge it. Horace, ode 13. lib. 2. gives us a very lively account of the danger he was in by the fall of a tree, and afterwards makes wiſe and moral reflections on the accident; then he ſallies out into an account of the other world, upon which he was ſo near entering; and beautifully expatiates upon the praiſes of his illuſtrious predeceſſors in lyric poetry, who were heard with pleaſure and wonder even in the Elyſian fields.

Sentence is an inſtructive and lively remark made on ſomething very obſervable, and agreeably ſurpriſing, containing much ſenſe in few words.—Sentences muſt not ſtand awkward and unconnected, but be neatly interwoven with the diſcourſe. They muſt be unaffected and ſignificant, and ſuch as the ſubject eaſily ſuggeſts to a diſcerning man; as,

Haud facilè emergunt, quorum virtutibus obſtat
Res anguſta domi. Juv. ſat iii. 164.

Probitas laudatur et alget. Ib. ſat. i. 74.

Omne in præcipiti vitium ſtetit. Ib. ſat. i. 151.

Quantum quiſque ſuâ nummorum ſervat in arcâ,
Tantum habet et fidei. Ib ſat. iii. 143.

Nil habet infelix paupertas durius in ſe
Quàm quod ridiculos homines facit. Ib ſat. iii. 152.

Nobilitas ſola eſt atque unica virtus. Ib. ſat. xx. 8.

Creſcit amor nummi, quantum ipſa pecunia creſcit. Ib. ſat. xiv. 139.

——— *miſera eſt magni cuſtodia cenſûs.* Ib. ſat. xiv. 304.

Atque hæc perinde ſunt, ut illius animus, qui ea poſſidet;
Qui uti ſcit, ei bona; illi, qui non utitur rectè, mala. Ter. Heaut. act 1. ſc.

Quod in opere faciendo operæ conſumis tuæ,
Si ſumas in illis exercendis, plus agas. Ter. Heaut. act. 1. ſc. 1.

[Having two pages unoccupied, I ſhall give]

A PRAXIS for an exerciſe to the Scholar.

IT has already been ſaid, p. 40. that the learner ſhould *decline an adjective with a ſubſtantive*, and ſome examples have been given:—I ſhall now give ſome hints of a *ſimilar exerciſe* with regard to *a verb, and the ſubſtantive it governs*; for an example of which I have given *Paſcere ovem*, To feed a ſheep.

After the Scholar knows the Engliſh ſigns of the tenſes, p. 44. a little of ſyntax, has conjugated the verb, thus,—*Paſco, pavi, paſtum, paſcere*,—and given the other parts of it, as they are formed from theſe principal notes, according to the formation of verbs, p. 54. the maſter may proceed thus.

ACTIVE VOICE.

[*Maſter.*] I will feed a ſheep: [*Scholar.*] *Paſcam* (*a*) *ovem.* We will feed a ſheep: *Paſcemus ovem.* They feed *or* do feed a ſheep: *Paſcunt ovem.* He had fed a ſheep: *Paverat ovem.* You did feed a ſheep: *Paſcebatis ovem.* He hath fed a ſheep: *Pavit ovem.* Let us feed a ſheep: *Paſcamus ovem.* We may have fed a ſheep: *Paverimus ovem.* He might feed a ſheep: *Paſceret ovem.* Feed thou *or* do thou feed a ſheep: *Paſce* or *Paſcito ovem* *. Let them feed a ſheep: *Paſcant ovem* †. Let us feed a ſheep: *Paſcamus ovem.* He might *or* ſhould have fed a ſheep: *Paviſſet ovem.*—And ſo on through all the tenſes and perſons.

The Infinitive Mood.

I hear (that) he feeds a ſheep: *Audio* (*b*) *illum* (*c*) *paſcere ovem.* I hear (that) he will feed a ſheep: *Audio illum paſturum* (*d*) *eſſe ovem.* I hear (that) ſhe will feed a ſheep: *Audio illam* (*e*) *paſturam eſſe ovem.* He ſays (that) he will feed a ſheep: *Ait ſe* (*f*) *paſturum eſſe ovem.* She ſays (that) ſhe will feed a ſheep: *Ait ſe paſturam eſſe ovem.* He ſays (that) he hath fed a ſheep: *Ait ſe paviſſe ovem.* They ſay (that) they will feed a ſheep: *Aiunt ſe paſturos eſſe ovem,—ſe paſturas eſſe ovem*, of women.

The Supines.

He is gone to feed a ſheep: *Abiit* (*g*) *paſtum ovem, paſturus ovem*, &c. See p. 129. No. 53. n. 2. A ſheep is eaſily fed: *Ovis eſt facilis* (*h*) *paſtu.*

The Participles.

I ſaw him feeding a ſheep: *Vidi illum paſcentem* (*i*) *ovem.* He is about or going to feed a ſheep: *Paſturus eſt ovem.*

* *But* Paſcas ovem (oro ut *being underſtood*) *is better Latin, and more polite; for the imperative mood implies authority, and therefore is commonly uſed only in enacting laws, or when authority is exerciſed.*

† *Rather than* Paſcunto ovem, *except to ſhepherds.*

(*a*) P. 118. No. 28. (*b*) P. 102. No. 4. (*c*) P. 125. No. 44.
(*d*) P. 102. No. 5. (*e*) P. 100. No. 1. (*f*) P. 106. & 107.
(*g*) P. 129. No. 53. (*h*) P. 129. No. 54. (*i*) P. 126. No. 45.

The Gerunds.

In time of feeding a ſheep: *Inter* (*k*) *paſcendum* (*l*) *ovem*, or rather, *paſcendam* (*m*) *ovem*; plural, *Inter paſcendum oves*, or *paſcendas oves*. I muſt feed a ſheep: *Paſcendum eſt* (*n*) *mihi ovem*; rather *Ovis eſt paſcenda* (*o*) *mihi*. (This may be expreſſed by *oportet*, ſee p. 124. No. 43 and n. 2.) The time of feeding a ſheep: *Tempus* (*p*) *paſcendi ovem*, or *paſcendæ ovis*; plural, *Tempus paſcendi oves*, or *paſcendarum ovium* (See p. 128. No. 52. n. 2.) A hill fit for feeding a ſheep: *Collis aptus* (*q*) *paſcendo ovem*, or *ad paſcendam ovem*; plural, *paſcendo oves*, rather *paſcendis ovibus*, and *ad paſcendum oves*, rather *ad paſcendas oves*. I am come from feeding a ſheep: *Veni a* (*r*) *paſcendo ovem*, rather *a paſcenda ove*; plural, *a paſcendo oves*, rather *a paſcendis ovibus*.

Note, *Aptus* is often underſtood; as, Liv. He is not able to bear arms: *Non eſt* (*aptus*) *ferendis armis*.

PASSIVE VOICE.

Paſcor, paſtus, paſci.

A ſheep is fed: *Ovis* (*ſ*) *paſcitur*; plural, *Oves paſcuntur*. A ſheep will be fed: *Ovis paſcetur*; plural, *Oves paſcentur*. A ſheep hath been fed: *Ovis paſta eſt* vel *fuit*; plural, *Oves paſtæ ſunt*, *fuerunt* vel *fuere*. A ſheep had been fed: *Ovis paſta erat* vel *fuerat*; plural, *Oves paſtæ erant* vel *fuerant*. Let a ſheep be fed: *Ovis paſcatur*; plural, *Oves paſcantur*. A ſheep may have been fed: *Ovis paſta ſit* vel *fuerit*; plural, *Oves paſtæ ſint* vel *fuerint*. A ſheep might be fed: *Ovis paſceretur*: plural, *Oves paſcerentur*. A ſheep might have been fed: *Ovis paſta eſſet* vel *fuiſſet*; plural, *Oves paſtæ eſſent* vel *fuiſſent*. A ſheep ſhall have been fed: *Ovis paſta fuerit*; plural, *Oves paſtæ fuerint*.

The Infinitive Mood.

I hear a ſheep is fed: *Audio ovem paſci*; plural, *oves paſci*: See p. 6 n. 2. I hear a ſheep hath been fed: *Audio ovem paſtam eſſe* vel *fuiſſe*; plural, *oves paſtas eſſe* vel *fuiſſe*. I hear a ſheep will be fed: *Audio ovem paſtum* (*t*) *iri*; plural, *oves paſtum iri*. I hear a ſheep muſt be fed: *Audio ovem paſcendam eſſe*; plural, *oves paſcendas eſſe*.

Let the ſcholar alſo be accuſtomed to render the infinitive mood, according to the ſcheme, p. 68. No. 15. where Mr Ruddiman himſelf adviſes that he be exerciſed in the manner I propoſe, and which I have practiſed with great utility to the ſcholar.

(*k*) P. 127. No. 49. (*l*) P. 126. No. 45. (*m*) P. 128. No. 51.
(*n*) P. 126. No. 46. (*o*) P. 110. No. 17. (*p*) P. 127. No. 47.
(*q*) P. 109. No. 16. n. 3. (*r*) P. 128. No. 50. (*ſ*) P. 101. No.
(*t*) P. 129. No. 53. n. 1.

FINIS.